

CAMBRIDGE

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary
reference and
practice

Fourth Edition

Upper-intermediate

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell



Includes ebook
with audio

Experience
Better
Learning

Kitob quyidagi ko'rsatilgan
muddatda topshirilishi shart

Oldingi foydalanishlar
miqdori

--	--

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary
reference and
practice
with answers
and ebook

Fourth Edition

Upper-intermediate

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

 CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

DENOV TADBIRKORLIK
VA PEDAGOGIKA
INSTITUTI ARM
№ 4839

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom
One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi - 110002, India
79 Anson Road, #06-04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.
It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of
education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/elt

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1994
Fourth Edition 2017

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-131663174-4 Edition with answers and ebook
ISBN 978-131663175-1 Edition with answers
ISBN 978-131663177-5 ebook

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy
of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication,
and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain,
accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other
factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but
Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information
thereafter.

Contents

Thanks	Enhanced ebook	Introduction
Effective vocabulary learning		
1 Learning vocabulary	2 Organising a vocabulary notebook	3 Using your dictionary
4 Guessing and explaining meaning		
Topics		
5 Countries, nationalities and languages	6 The weather	7 Describing people: appearance
8 Describing people: personality	9 Idioms describing people	10 Relationships
11 At home	12 Everyday minor problems	13 Global problems
14 Education	15 Higher education	16 Work
17 Business	18 Sport	19 Art and literature
20 Theatre and cinema	21 Music	22 Food
23 Physical geography	24 Environmental problems	25 Towns
26 The natural world	27 Clothes	28 Health and medicine
29 Medicine and technology	30 Health and lifestyle	

31 Travel	32 Holidays	33 Science and technology
34 Computers	35 Communications and the Internet	36 Social media
37 The press and the media	38 Politics and public institutions	39 Crime
40 Money	41 Describing objects	
Feelings and actions		
42 Belief and opinion	43 Pleasant and unpleasant feelings	44 Like, dislike and desire
45 Speaking	46 The six senses	47 What your body does
48 Praising and criticising	49 Emotions and moods	50 Commenting on problematic situations

Basic concepts

51 Number, quantity, degree and intensity	52 Numbers and shapes	53 Time
54 Distances and dimensions	55 Obligation, need, possibility and probability	56 Sound and light
57 Possession and giving	58 Movement and speed	59 Texture, brightness, weight and density
60 Success, failure and difficulty		

Connecting and linking words

- 61 Time: connecting words and expressions
- 62 Condition
- 63 Cause, reason, purpose and result
- 64 Concession and contrast
- 65 Addition
- 66 Referring words
- 67 Discourse markers in spoken English
- 68 Linking words in writing
- 69 Talking and communicating

Word formation

- 70 Suffixes
- 71 Prefixes
- 72 Roots
- 73 Abstract nouns
- 74 Compound adjectives
- 75 Compound nouns 1: noun + noun
- 76 Compound nouns 2: verb + preposition
- 77 Binomials
- 78 Abbreviations and acronyms
- 79 Multi-word expressions

Words and pronunciation

- 80 Words commonly mispronounced
- 81 Onomatopoeic words
- 82 Homophones and homographs

Counting people and things

- 83 Uncountable nouns
- 84 Words that only occur in the plural
- 85 Countable and uncountable nouns with different meanings
- 86 Making uncountable nouns countable
- 87 Collective nouns
- 88 Containers and contents

Phrasal verbs and verb-based expressions

- 89 Expressions with *do* and *make*
- 90 Expressions with *bring* and *take*
- 91 Expressions with *get*
- 92 Expressions with *set* and *put*
- 93 Expressions with *come* and *go*
- 94 Expressions with other common verbs

Varieties and styles

- 95 Formal and informal words 1
- 96 Formal and informal words 2
- 97 Similes
- 98 Proverbs
- 99 The language of signs and notices
- 100 Headline English
- 101 US English

Answer key

Phonemic symbols

Index

Acknowledgements

Thanks

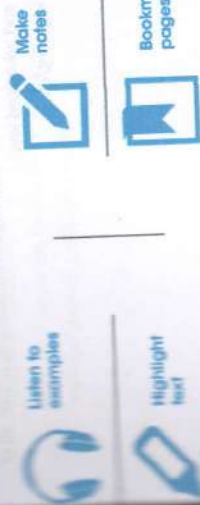
Sabina Ostrowska wrote two new units for the Fourth Edition: Unit 15, *Higher Education*, and Unit 36, *Social Media*. The publishers would like to thank Sabina for her contribution to this new edition.

Enhanced ebook

You can buy this book with or without an ebook. The ebook has the same vocabulary explanations



using the ebook. You can use your ebook on an iPad, Android tablet, PC or Mac. You can listen to the text on the left-hand page to help you with your listening and pronunciation.



How to get your ebook
Follow the instructions in the inside front cover of this book.

Introduction

To the student

This book has been written to help you learn new vocabulary. You already know a large number of English words, but to express yourself more fully and in a more sophisticated way at the intermediate level, you will ideally need about 4,000 words, so increasing your vocabulary is important for your general progress in English. In this book, there are over 2,500 new words and phrases for you to learn. You will find them on the left-hand page of each unit. Every new word has some explanation of what it means. On the right-hand page there are exercises and other activities to help you practise using the words and to help you to remember them. The book has been written so that you can use it yourself, without a teacher. You can do the units in any order you like, but we believe it is a good idea if you do Units 1 to 4 first, as they will help you to work with the rest of the book in the best possible way.

The **Answer key** at the end of the book is for you to check your answers to the exercises after you have done them. The Answer key sometimes has more than one answer. This is because often there is more than one correct way of saying something. Where you are asked to talk about yourself, in the **Over to you** exercises, we do not generally provide answers, since this is your opportunity to work completely independently and in a very personal way, so everyone's answers will be very different.

The **Index** at the end of the book has all the important words and phrases from the left-hand pages. The Index also tells you how to pronounce words. There is a table of phonemic symbols to help you understand the pronunciation on page 258.

You should also have a dictionary with you when you use the book. You can use a paper dictionary or an electronic one, or you can go to Cambridge Dictionaries Online at <http://dictionary.cambridge.org>. Access to a dictionary is useful because sometimes you may want to check the meaning of something, or find a word in your own language to help you remember the English word. Sometimes, you will also need a dictionary for the exercises; we tell you when this is so.

To learn a lot of vocabulary, you have to do two things:

- 1 Study each unit of the book carefully and do all the exercises. Check your answers in the Answer key. Repeat the units after a month, and then again after three months, and see how much you have learnt and how much you have forgotten.
- 2 Develop ways of your own to study and learn new words and phrases which are not in this book. For example, every time you see or hear an interesting phrase, write it in a notebook, and write who said it or wrote it, and in what situation, as well as what it means. Making notes of the situations words are used in will help you to remember them and to use them at the right moment.

We hope you like this book. When you have finished it, you can go to the next book in the series, *English Vocabulary in Use Advanced*. Along with this book, you can also use the more specialised titles: *English Idioms in Use*, *English Phrasal Verbs in Use* and *English Collocations in Use*, all of which are available at intermediate and advanced levels. Find out more at <http://www.cambridge.org/elt>

To the teacher

This book can be used in class or as a self-study book. It is intended to take learners from a lower intermediate level of vocabulary to an upper-intermediate level. The vocabulary has been chosen for its usefulness in everyday situations, and we consulted the Cambridge International Corpus (now known as the Cambridge English Corpus), a written and spoken corpus of present-day English, including a huge learner corpus, to help us decide on the words and phrases to be included for students at B2 (CEFR) level. The new vocabulary (on average 25–30 items per unit) is presented with illustrations and explanations on the left-hand page, and there are exercises and activities on the right-hand page. There is an Answer key and an index with pronunciation for the target vocabulary. The Answer key at the end of the book is for students to check their answers to the exercises after they do them.

The book focuses not just on single words, but on useful phrases and collocations, and the vocabulary is illustrated in natural contexts. The book is organised around everyday topics, but also has units devoted to basic concepts such as time, number and movement, linking words, word formation, multi-word expressions, pronunciation and varieties and style, as well as a set of initial units concerned with ways of learning vocabulary. Typical errors are indicated where appropriate, based on information from the Cambridge Learner Corpus, and the most typical meanings and uses are focused on for each item. The units in the book can be used in any order you like, but we would advise doing the initial units (Units 1 to 4) first, as these lay the foundations for the rest of the book.

The right-hand pages offer a variety of different types of activities, with some traditional ones such as gap filling, but also more open-ended ones and personalised activities which enable learners to talk about their own lives. Although the activities and exercises are designed for self-study, they can easily be adapted for pairwork, groupwork or whole-class activities in the usual way. The Answer key sometimes gives alternative answers to the exercises. This is because often there is not just one correct way of saying something. Where students are asked to talk about themselves, in the **Over to you** exercises, we do not generally provide answers, since these exercises give learners the opportunity to work completely independently and in a very personal way, so everyone's answers will be very different.

When the learners have worked through a group of units, it is a good idea to repeat some of the work (for example, the exercises) and to expand on the meaning and use of key words and phrases by extra discussion in class, and find other examples of the key items in other texts and situations. This can be done at intervals of one to three months after first working on a unit. This is important, since it is usually the case that learners need five to seven exposures to a word or phrase before they can really begin to know it, and no single book can do enough to ensure that words are always learnt first time.

When your students have finished all the units in this book, they will be ready to move on to the higher-level books in this series: *English Vocabulary in Use Advanced*, and the advanced levels of *English Idioms in Use*, *English Phrasal Verbs in Use* and *English Collocations in Use*, by the same authors as this book.

Find more resources for teachers at <http://www.cambridge.org/elt>

We hope you enjoy using the book.

Learning vocabulary

What do you need to learn?

Did you know that there are over half a million words in English but that the average native speaker only uses about 5,000 in everyday speech? You already know many of those 5,000 words. This will help you to learn many of those that you do not yet know and it will help you to use them appropriately and accurately.

What does knowing a new word mean?

It is not enough just to know the meaning of a word. You also need to know:

- which words it is usually used with;
- its grammatical characteristics;
- how it is pronounced;
- whether it is formal, informal or neutral.

So when you learn a word you should make sure that you:

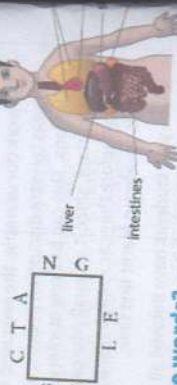
- Learn new words in phrases not in isolation.
- Notice how words commonly go together. These are called **collocations** and include: adjectives + nouns, e.g. *rich vocabulary*, *classical music*, *common sense*; verbs + nouns, e.g. *to express an opinion*, *to take sides*; nouns in phrases, e.g. *in touch with*, *a train set*, *a sense of humour*; words + prepositions, e.g. *at a loss for words*, *in particular*.
- Notice special grammatical characteristics of new words. For example, note irregular verbs, e.g. *undertake*, *undertook*, *undertaken*; uncountable nouns, e.g. *luggage*; or nouns that are only used in the plural, e.g. *scissors*.
- Notice any special pronunciation problems with new words.
- Check if the word is particularly formal or informal in character, in other words if it has a particular register.

How can you help yourself to memorise words?

Research suggests that some students find it easier to learn words if they

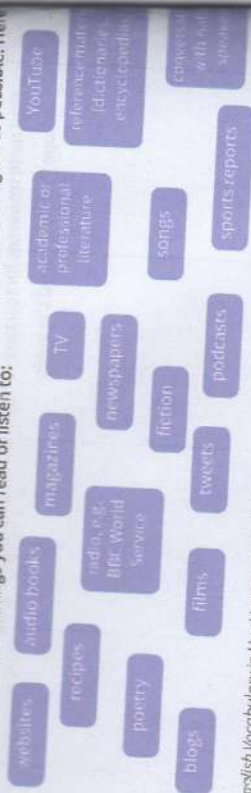
- learn them in groups and
- make use of pictures, as shown here.

You can group words in any way you like – topic, grammatical feature, word root, and so on. The unit titles in this book might give you some ideas.



How can you help yourself learn more words?

This book will help you to learn vocabulary in a systematic way. However, you can also help yourself to learn more words and expressions by reading and listening to as much English as possible. Here are some ideas about things you can read or listen to:



Exercises

Here are some aspects of grammar to be aware of when learning new vocabulary. Give two examples of words that reflect this aspect of grammar.

- 1 a noun only used in the plural *scissors*
- 2 an uncountable noun
- 3 an irregular verb
- 4 a noun with an irregular plural

What aspect of pronunciation should you notice about the following words?

- 1 subtle *this b is silent (not pronounced)*
- 2 chemistry
- 3 answer
- 4 a record / to record
- 5 photograph / photographer / photographic

Read the text. Use words from the box to complete each 'collocations fork'.

English has a remarkable range of words. Thanks to periods of contact with foreign languages and in addition to coin new words out of old elements, English has a particularly large vocabulary. For example, as well as *hugely* (from Anglo-Saxon) we find *total* (from French) and *regal* (from Latin). There are many such sets of words, which make it possible to express subtle shades of meaning.

existence range	difference shade	family suggestion	likeness a term	palace welcome	a phrase new words
--------------------	---------------------	----------------------	--------------------	-------------------	-----------------------

- 1 a remarkable *likeness*
- 2 to coin
- 3 a royal
- 4 a subtle

Write / by the words that are informal and / by those that are formal.

- 1 guys *informal*
- 2 to alight (from a bus)
- 3 to feel gutted
- 4 a felon
- 5 to bug someone
- 6 to zone out

A student learnt each of these sets of words as a group. What is the unifying factor for each group? Can you add one more word to each group?

- 1 king, queen, prince, princess *royalty - duke*
- 2 sunshade, shady, shadow, shade, to shadow, shadowy
- 3 articulate, communicate, convey, express, put across
- 4 noun, verb, adjective, adverb
- 5 subtle, comb, lamb, crumb, debt, plumber

Draw a picture to help you remember each of the following vocabulary items.

- 1 circle
- 2 to coin new words
- 3 screwdriver
- 4 to drip



Over to you

Look at the suggestions in D. Can you think of any other ideas to add to the list? Think about the ways of learning vocabulary that you use now, and think about ways you could use more in the future.

Organising words by meaning

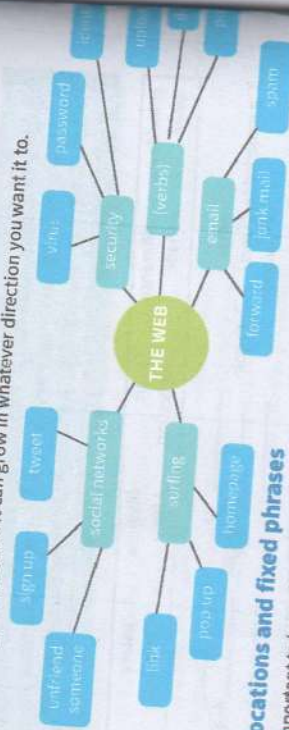
Try dividing your notebook into different broad sections, with sections for **words for feeling**, **to describe places**, **words for movement**, **words for thinking**, etc.

Charts and tables of various kinds can help you organise your vocabulary. Here is an example of words connected with music:

Instruments	Types of music	Verbs	Related words
guitar	classical (not classic)	play	practice (v) practice (n)
cello	folk (not folkloric)	strum (as guitar)	track
piano	world	perform	release (as album)

Building networks of meaning

A network diagram is useful. It can grow in whatever direction you want it to.



Idioms and fixed phrases

It is important to know how a word combines with other words (its collocations). Always record the common collocations of a word as you learn it.

Where a word is often used in a fixed phrase, always record the whole phrase, e.g. *in a hurry out of touch to and fro now and again*

Synonyms and antonyms

When you find a synonym (same meaning) or an antonym (opposite meaning) of a word you already have in your book, enter it next to that word with a few notes, e.g.

urban	≠ rural	stop = cease (cease is very formal)
-------	---------	-------------------------------------

Organising by word class

Make a note of the word class of a new word (whether it is a noun, verb, adjective, etc.). Record words from the same word family together, e.g.

<i>produce</i> (verb or noun)	<i>product</i> (noun)	<i>productive</i> (adjective)
-------------------------------	-----------------------	-------------------------------

Stress

Record where the stress falls on a multi-syllable word, especially if the stress changes between classes, e.g. *produce* (verb) *produce* (noun) *productive* (adjective)

Language help

Note any typical errors you make or which your teacher has mentioned.

Exercises

Organise the words into the topics below. Use a dictionary if necessary.

tabloid	stress	hang out with sb	exhaustion	podcast	overwork
upload a video	burnt out	blogosphere	journalist	snowed under with work	
casual acquaintance	blog	be close to sb	count on sb	be under pressure	

topic	words
working too much / too hard	<i>stress</i>
friendship	
media	

There is a list of words a learner of English made in a vocabulary notebook in class. Organize them in a more efficient way, using the chart.

rush	oversleep	latecomer	alarm clock	set a clock	deep sleep	fast asleep
out of breath	heavy sleeper	In a hurry	breathless	nightmare	dash	yawn
exhausted						

phrases	verbs	adjectives	collocations	fixed phrases
<i>believe</i>				

Change the sentences using a synonym (S) or antonym (A) of the words in bold using words from the box.

glad	spicy	deprive sb of sth	shot	dissatisfied	chilly
------	-------	-------------------	------	--------------	--------

I was pleased *glad* to hear you'd passed your exam. (S)
 I got some excellent **photos** of the Grand Canyon on my trip to the US. (S)
 The wife was **happy** with the conditions they offered her in the new job. (A)
 The prisoners were **supplied with** food and medical care. (A)
 curries. (A)
 It's a **solid** day today. (S)

Fill in the missing word forms. Then mark the word stress for each item.

noun	verb	adjective	person
perfection	perfect	perfect	perfectionist
information	inform		
politics			
economics		*	

Give two adjectives.

Over to you

Think about your own learning style and which ways of organising vocabulary would work best for you.

Using your dictionary

A

What a good dictionary tells you: the basics

A good learners' dictionary (in book form or online) can tell you about:

- Pronunciation: this may mean learning some symbols which are different from the letters of the English alphabet.

th in thick	ð	th in then	ð	ch in church	tʃ
sh in she	ʃ	j in jam	ʒ	s in pleasure	z
ng in ring	ŋ	a in bad	ɒ	o in top	ɒ
or in form	ɔ	u in put	ʊ	a in about	ə
u in up	ʊ	ir in bird	ɜː		

- Word stress: often shown by a mark before the syllable to be stressed or by underlining of bold type, e.g. /əd'venjuəl/ */westən/*, complicated.
- Usage: how a word is used and any special grammatical pattern that goes with it, e.g. **suggest** + clause (not an infinitive) – *I suggest you ring her right away.* (NOT I suggest you to ring her right away.)

B

Additional information

- Synonyms (words of similar meaning) and antonyms (opposites), e.g. **mislay** and **misplace** (synonyms), **friend** ≠ **enemy/foe** (antonyms).
- Collocations (how words go together), e.g. the adjective **firm** is often used in these collocations: **firm commitment**, **firm grip**, **firm believer**.
- Whether a verb is transitive or intransitive: **catch** is transitive and must have an object, e.g. *He caught the ball* and *threw it back to me*; **laugh** is intransitive and does not need an object, e.g. *She laughed* when I told her the news.
- Whether a word is used for people and/or things. In this entry for the adjective **hurtful** in the Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary online, we can see that **hurtful** can be used about what someone says or about someone:
- Word class (often as abbreviations n noun, adj adjective, etc.), and whether a noun is countable or uncountable.

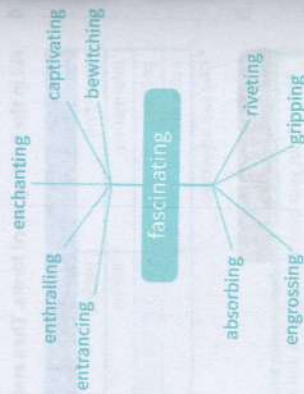
hurtful /hɜːtfl/ adjective

causing emotional pain:

That was a very hurtful remark!

How can you be so hurtful?

- Information about how words are related to one another through meaning. The Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary online allows you to see a visual display of the networks of meaning for a word, as in this display for the adjective **fascinating**. The Visual Thesaurus shows related adjectives.



The adjectives are grouped according to meaning. This can be very useful when you are writing. If you want to vary your use of adjectives, you can look up the related adjectives to see which one(s) most closely express(es) the meaning you need.

Exercises

3.1 Pronunciation. What English words are these?

- 1 /ə'dʒʊkeɪʃən/ education 3 /'hɪmp/ 5 /rə'veɪʃən/
 2 /pə'seɪt/ 4 /'tɪbʊl/ 6 /'brʌðə/

3.2 Underline the stressed syllable of these words. Check your answers in your dictionary.

- 1 urgent 3 urgently 5 record (verb)
 2 elegant 4 eyebrow 6 thermometer 7 extract (noun)
 8 lifestyle

3.3 Look at the grammar patterns which the Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary gives for these words and then correct the sentences that follow.

- 1 **supply** /sə'plaɪ/ + verb [T] to provide something that is wanted or needed, often in large quantities and over a long period of time: *Electrical power is supplied by underground cables.* O
There people have been arrested for supplying arms to the terrorists. O *The company has supplied the road family (= provided them with something they need) for years.* O *At the beginning of term, students are supplied with a list of books that they are expected to read.*

Brazil supplies coffee to many countries.

The officer supplied each soldier a map.

- 2 **deny** /dɪ'naɪ/ verb [T] NOT TRUE 1 to say that something is not true: *He will not confirm or deny the allegations.* O [+ that] *Nell denies that he broke the window, but I'm sure he did.* O [+ -ing verb] *Nell denies breaking the window.*

The Minister denied to have received any money from the oil company. (two answers)

3.4 Put a tick (✓) if these adjectives can be used about a person, or a thing (which could be an event, an object, a fact, an idea, etc.) or both. Use your dictionary if necessary.

	person	thing	person	thing
calm			damp	
lucky	✓		awkward	
content			compulsory	

3.5 A typical dictionary abbreviation for a noun is (n) and for an adjective (adj). What do you think these abbreviations mean?

- (adv) adverb (pron) (conj)
 (prep) noun [C]
 verb [T] noun [U] verb [I or T]

Over to you

Go to Cambridge Dictionaries Online at <http://dictionary.cambridge.org>, select the Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary and look up the adjective **damp**. Click on the Visual Thesaurus. How many of the words do you know? Choose four words you don't know and look them up. Record them in your notebook.

Guessing and explaining meaning

Working out meaning from context

There are a number of clues you can use to help you understand the meaning of an unfamiliar word.

The context in which the word is used

- Visual clues: for example, a picture in a book or film footage in a TV news broadcast.
- Your own background knowledge about a situation: for example, if you already know the city, then you will find it easy to understand the word 'earthquake' when you hear a news broadcast about it.
- The words around the unfamiliar word: for example, 'Tara picked one tall yellow gladiolus to put in her new vase.' Even if you have never seen or heard the word 'gladiolus', it is clear from the context that it is a type of flower.
- Grammatical clues: for example, it is clear that 'superstitious' must be an adjective in the sentence 'Alejandro is very superstitious and would never walk under a ladder', or that 'gingerly' is an adverb in 'Mike came gingerly down the stairs, trying to avoid all the broken glass.'



Similarity to other words you already know in English

A large number of words in English are made up of combinations of other words. You may not have seen the word 'headscarf', for example, but it is easy to work out that it is a scarf worn on the head. Units 74–76 will help you improve your skills in understanding how English uses everyday words to build up new concepts.

Structure

A prefix or suffix may give you a clue: for example, Units 70–72 focus on different aspects of word formation in English and should help you use those clues to make sense of unfamiliar words.

Similarity to a word you know in your own (or some other) language

If your first language is of Latin or of Germanic origin, you will come across many words in English that resemble words in your own language. However, English has taken many words from many other languages too. So make use of any other languages you know. But remember that some words are false friends – they sound as if they mean the same but in fact they have a different meaning. For example, *gift* in English means a present but in German it means poison.

Explaining unknown words

The following expressions are useful when you are trying to explain what a word or expression means:

- It's probably something (a bit) like (a chair) ...
- It's got to be something you use for (painting pictures / cleaning the kitchen floor) ...
- It's a kind of (bird / musical instrument / building) ...
- I think it must / could mean ...

Exercises

Look at the following text. Before you read it, see if you know what the underlined words mean.



A tortoise is a shelled reptile famed for its slowness and longevity. The Giant Tortoise of the Galapagos may attain over 1.5 metres in length and have a lifespan of more than 150 years. Smaller tortoises from Southern Europe and North Africa make popular pets. They need to be tended carefully in cool climates and must have a warm place in which they can hibernate.

Which of the underlined words can you guess from the context or using any other clues? First make a guess and then check your guesses in the Answer key.

Use the context to work out what the underlined words mean. Explain them using one or other of the expressions in B on the opposite page.

- Above the trees at the edge of the meadow, a buzzard hangs for a moment on the wind before soaring towards the hills. *I think a buzzard must be a kind of bird.*
- According to some sources, the water vole is one of the most rapidly declining creatures in Britain and a new survey is now being carried out to determine how serious the threat of extinction really is.
- Using a large chisel and a hammer, Jack managed to knock down the old garden wall.
- A plate carried in a delicious chicken and noodle soup in a large tureen and we enjoyed several bowls each.
- We often used to walk up to the cliff top where we would clamber over the farmer's gate and go right to the edge where the view was better.
- Some people get really ratty when they haven't had enough sleep.

Use your knowledge of other basic English words to help you work out the meanings of the underlined words and expressions. Rewrite them using simpler words or explanations for the underlined words and phrases.

- It says on the can that this drink is sugar-free. *this drink doesn't contain sugar*
- I find Caitlin a very warm-hearted person.
- I've been up to my eyes in work ever since I got back from holiday.
- We walked down a tree-lined street towards the station.
- The little boys were fascinated by the cement-mixer.
- More and more shops now have their own special store cards and offer you a discount if you use one of them.

Use your knowledge of prefixes and suffixes to suggest what these phrases mean.

- to redirect a letter *to send it to a different address*
- uncontrollable anger
- pre-dinner drinks
- bi-monthly report
- my ex-boss
- anti-tourist feelings
- to disconnect the telephone
- undelivered letters

5 Countries, nationalities and languages

A Using 'the'

Most names of countries are used without 'the', but some countries and other names have 'the' before them, e.g. **the United States / the US(A), the United Kingdom / the UK, the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United Arab Emirates / the UAE, the European Union / the EU, the Commonwealth.**

B Adjectives referring to people, countries and languages

With -ish: British Irish Flemish Polish Danish Turkish Spanish
With -(i)an: Canadian Brazilian Latvian Russian Australian
With -ese: Japanese Chinese Vietnamese Portuguese Maltese Taiwanese
With -i: Israeli Iraqi Kuwaiti Pakistani Yemeni Bangladeshi
With -ic: Icelandic Arabic Slavonic

Some adjectives are worth learning separately, e.g. **Swiss, Thai, Greek, Dutch, Cypriot.**

C Nationalities

Some nationalities and cultural identities have nouns for referring to people, e.g. **a Finn, a Swede, a Turk, a Spaniard, a Dane, a Briton, an Arab, a Pole.** For most nationalities we can use the adjective as a noun, e.g. **a German, an Italian, a Belgian, a Catalan, a Greek, an African, a European.** Some need woman/man/person added to them (you can't say 'a Dutch'), so if in doubt, use them, e.g. **a Dutch man, a French woman, an Irish person, an Icelandic man.**

D World regions



E Regional groups and ethnic groups

People belong to **ethnic groups** and **regional groups** such as **African-Caribbean, Asian, Latin American, North African, Scandinavian, Southern African, European, Arabic.** These can be used as countable nouns or as adjectives.

Many **Europeans** enjoy travelling to the Far East to experience **Asian** cultures.

Arabic culture extends across a vast region of North Africa and the Middle East.

People speak **dialects** as well as languages. Everyone has a **native language** or **first language** (sometimes called **mother tongue**); many have **second** and **third languages**. Some people are expert in more than one language and are **bilingual** or **multilingual**. People who only know one language are **monolingual**.

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-Intermediate

Exercises

5.1 Write the related adjectives in the correct columns.

Iceland	Ireland	Latvia	Israel	Switzerland	China	Pakistan
Turkey	Arabia	Brazil	the Netherlands	Korea	Denmark	

(1) an	-ic	-ish	-i	-ese	(other)
Latvian		Irish			

5.2 Match the countries with their world regions.

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Sweden | ☒ c | a the Middle East |
| 2 Cambodia | ☐ | b Southern Africa |
| 3 Nicaragua | ☐ | c Scandinavia |
| 4 Tunisia | ☐ | d East Asia |
| 5 Saudi Arabia | ☐ | e Central America |
| 6 Botswana | ☐ | f North Africa |

5.3 Correct the mistakes in these newspaper headlines.

1 **New James Bond to be played by a Swedish!**

Sweden

2 **BRITAIN'S HAVE HIGHEST TAX RATE IN EUROPE**

3

MALTIH PRIME MINISTER VISITS WASHINGTON

4 **Police arrest Danish on smuggling charge**

5

Iraqian delegation meets Pakistani President

5.4 Famous names. Can you name a famous ...

- 1 Argentinian sportsman or woman? *Lionel Messi*
- 2 Spanish actor?
- 3 South African political leader?
- 4 Australian singer?
- 5 Italian opera singer?
- 6 Irish rock-music band?
- 7 American golfer?

5.5 Over to you

Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

- 1 I am (nationality)
- 2 My first language is
- 3 I speak (number) language(s) fluently, so I am
- 4 My ethnic/ regional group is
- 5 I have visited these countries:
- 6 I would like to travel to
- 7 One language I would like to learn is
- 8 I've never been to these two countries: and

DENOV TADBIRKORLIK
VA PEDAGOGIKA
INSTITUTI ARM
No 4839

A Cold weather

In Northern Europe, **daytime**¹ temperatures are often quite mild, even in **late**² autumn. The days are often **misty**³, foggy and **damp**⁴. Soon, winter arrives, with **frost**⁵, icy roads and **severe**⁶ weather, including heavy snow. As people **expect** the weather to be bad, they try and keep warm so they don't **freeze**! Freezing weather may continue in the far north until May or even June, when the ground starts to **thaw** (thaw) and the ice **melts**⁸ again.

- ¹ during the day ² towards the end of a period of time ³ with clouds of small drops of water in the air, making it difficult to see things in the distance ⁴ slightly wet, and not pleasant or comfortable ⁵ thin, white layer of ice on surfaces when the weather is very cold ⁶ extremely bad ⁷ change from hard, frozen state to softer state ⁸ change from solid to liquid under heat

B Warm/hot weather



In a **tropical**¹ climate, the weather is often **stifling**², **muggy**³ and **humid**⁴. In other hot climates, there may be **boiling**⁵ hot days, and **heatwaves**⁶ may be common.

- ¹ very hot, as in countries near the Equator ² hot, uncomfortable, you can hardly breathe ³ very warm and a little damp ⁴ hot and damp, makes you sweat a lot ⁵ extremely hot ⁶ very hot, dry periods

C Wet weather



This wet weather scale gets stronger from left to right.

shower (noun) → **heavy rain** → **pour down** (verb) / **downpour** (noun) → **torrential rain** → **flood** (noun and verb)

This rain won't last long: it's only a **shower**. [short period of rain]
There was quite **heavy rain** during the night. / It **rained heavily** during the night.
It was absolutely **pouring down** yesterday. / There was a real **downpour**.
In Malaysia there is usually **torrential rain** most days, and the roads sometimes get **flooded**. / There are sometimes **floods** on the roads.
The sky's a bit **overcast**; I think it's going to rain. [very cloudy]
We had a **drought** / **draught** last summer. It didn't rain for six weeks.

D Wind

There was a **gentle breeze** on the beach, just enough to cool us.
There was a very **strong/high wind** and my umbrella blew away.
There was a **gale** that day, so we didn't go sailing. [very high wind]
People stayed indoors because there was a **hurricane** on the way. [extremely high, dangerous wind]

Common mistakes

The noun **weather** is uncountable. We say: *We had **bad weather** that day.* (NOT *We had a **bad weather**.*)

Exercises

6.1 Answer the questions about the words in A opposite.

- Which adjective could you use to describe something that is wet, but not very wet? *damp*
- Which adjective would you use before 'summer' to refer to the end part of it?
- Which verb means the temperature has gone up and there is no longer frost or ice?
- Which word can be used to describe something that happens in the day?
- What happens to ice cream on a very hot day?
- If you see a thin, white covering on everything on a cold day, what is it?
- If you can't see things in the distance, what is the weather probably like?
- Which two adjectives could you use to describe a wind that blows very hard?
- Which adjective can you use to describe very bad weather?

6.2 What types of weather do these pictures suggest?



1 hurricane

2

3

4

6.3 Rewrite the words in bold using words from B opposite.

I think it would be interesting to live in a **hot tropical** climate. However, I don't like weather that is **hot and damp** and makes you sweat **extremely** hot days, and I don't mind **very hot, dry periods** occasionally, but when it's **hot and uncomfortable** and you can **hardly breathe** it's just impossible. Maybe I should stay at home and forget about moving to a hot climate!

6.4 What kinds of weather do you think caused the following to happen? Write a sentence which could go before each of these. Use words from the opposite page.

- The weather was **stifling**. We had to use the air-conditioning every afternoon.
- The sweat was pouring out of us. It just cooled us nicely on the hot beach.
- Cars were sliding everywhere out of control. The postman had to use a boat to get around.
- You couldn't really see the trees in the distance. The earth became rock hard and a lot of plants died.
- It blew the newspaper right out of my hands. My hair and clothes got soaking wet.
- It looked as if it would rain at any minute.

6.5 Over to you

This chart shows anyone who wants to visit the West of Ireland what weather they can expect at different times of the year. Make a similar chart for your country or home region.

Dec-Mar	April-June	July-Aug	Sept-Nov
coldest months; usually wet; heavy rain; snow on high ground	generally cool, often wet and windy but getting warmer	warmest months; sunny, with showers; cool sea breezes	often mild, becoming cold; damp, misty and foggy, often overcast

Describing people: appearance

A

Hair, face, skin and complexion /kəm'plekʃən/



She's got **straight hair** and she's **thin-faced**.
she's got a **thin face**.



She's got **long, wavy hair** and she's **round-faced**.
she's got a **round face**.



She's got **curly hair** and is **black**.



He's got a **crew-cut**.
He's **white**.



He's **bald** and has freckles.



He's got a **beard and moustache** and has a **chubby face**.



He's got **receding hair** and a few **wrinkles**.



He used to have **black hair** but now it's gone **grey**, almost **white**.

What sort of person would you find attractive? **Blonde, fair, dark or ginger-haired / red-haired?**

She has such beautiful **auburn hair**.

Fair and dark can be used for hair, complexion or skin. Some people like **getting a tan** in summer [exposing their skin to the sun so that it goes darker], although the risks of getting **sunburnt** are well known.

B

Height and build

Fat may sound impolite. Instead we can say that someone is rather **plump** or **stout**, or a bit **overweight**. If someone is broad and solid, we can say they are **stocky**. A person with good muscles can be **well-built** or **muscular**. [generally said about men] Someone who is very fat can be described as **obese**, especially when talking in a medical context.

Someone who is thin can be described as **slim** [positive] or **skinny** [negative], if someone has a nice figure, they have an attractive shape. [generally said about women]

C

General appearance

She's a very **smart and elegant** woman, always **well-dressed**; her husband is quite the opposite, very **scruffy** and **untidy-looking / messy-looking**.

Chloe looked **stunning** in her red dress. [very attractive]

He's very **good-looking**, but his friend's rather **unattractive**. [opp attractive]

Her eyes are her best **feature**. [the most attractive part of her face]

Do you think **beautiful** women are always attracted to **handsome** men? I don't. I think **personality** matters most.

First impressions are always important.

[your first reaction to someone]

Language help

The suffix **-ish** is useful for describing people (see Unit 20). She's **tallish**. He has **brownish hair**. He must be **thirtish** / **in his thirties**.

Exercises

7.1

Choose a word from the opposite page to complete these sentences.

- I wish I could get a **tan** like yours but my skin just goes red in the sun.
- My cousin used to have a lovely **build**, but she's put on weight in all the wrong places since she stopped taking much exercise.
- Thomas's eyes are his best **feature** - they're so large and sparkly and such a deep brown.
- Jess is in her thirties but she still has the same lovely fresh **look** as her young daughter has.
- Staff at the bank were told to dress smartly for work so they would always create a good **impression** on customers.
- I'd call her **plump** rather than ginger-haired - her hair's dark brown with just a tinge of red in it.
- George says that the **plump** round his eyes just show that he has smiled a lot in his life.
- Carla looks beautiful in old clothes and without any make-up but when she's dressed up for an evening out she's absolutely **stunning**.

7.2

Answer these remarks with the opposite description.

- A: I thought you said he was the short, chubby one.
B: *No, no, not at all, he's the tall, thin-faced one.*
- A: Was that his brother, the one with wavy hair?
B: No, completely the opposite, his brother's **straight**.
- A: She's always quite well-dressed, so I've heard.
B: What? Who told you that? Every time I see her, she's **casual**.
- A: So Charlene's that rather plump, fair-haired woman, is she?
B: No, you're looking at the wrong one, Charlene's **skinny**.
- A: So, tell us about the new boss: good-looking?
B: No, I'm afraid not; rather **unattractive**.
- A: I don't know why, but I expected the tour guide to be fiftyish or rather plump.
B: No, apparently she's only **thirtish**.

7.3

WANTED! MISSING! Complete the gaps in these police posters with your own ideas.

WANTED FOR MURDER



Ian Prowse
White, height 6ft,
thin-faced,
dark hair,
fair skin

WANTED FOR ARMED ROBBERY



Sandra King
White, height 5ft 4,
fair hair,
fair build,
fair-faced

MISSING



Jamain Kaur, Age 7,
Asian, height 4ft,
thin hair,
fair build

WANTED DEAD OR ALIVE



Jack 'Dagger' Flagstone
White, height 6ft,
thin hair,
fair build

7.4

Over to you

Write a description of each of these people, giving information about their hair and face, their height and build and general appearance:

- you yourself
- your best friend
- a neighbour
- your ideal of a handsome man / a beautiful woman

Exercises

Match the words on the left with their opposites on the right.

44

Do you think that the speaker likes or dislikes the people in these sentences? Reword each sentence to give the opposite impression (negative rather than positive or viceversa).

- 1 Carmen's very thrifty. *Likes - Carmen is very stingy.*
- 2 Molly's usually frank.
- 3 Grace is quite broad-minded.
- 4 Sam can be aggressive.
- 5 Nico's quite bossy.
- 6 I find Marcus self-important.
- 7 Don't you think James is noisy?
- 8 Freya is very original.

8 Freya is very original.

air the words that have similar meanings.

11

cunning frank miserly talented

1997

magazines often publish questionnaires which

...they: look at the words below and match them to the co

argumentative sensitive sociable

DATA SOURCE: **INQUIRY** **FEASIBLE**

If you arrange to meet at 7 pm, do you arrive at 7 pm? *reliable*

When you have a problem, do you think the worst will

Do you always look out of the window if you hear a car draw up?

Do you often buy your friends presents for no particular reason?

Do you frequently disagree with what other people say?

Do you lie awake at night if someone has said something unkind to you?

Do you prefer to be in the company of other people?

Do you lie awake at night if someone has said something unkind to you?

Do you prefer to be in the company of other people?

and give reasons why you chose each adjective.

EXAMPLE *My brother is sociable because he loves his friends.*

did not have any effect on the results.

8.5

Over to you

Choose two people who are

EXAMPLE My brother is *enlightla* because his father is *la*.

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

A

Positive and negative qualities

positive

She has a **heart of gold**. [very kind, generous]
 He's **as good as gold**. [helpful, well-behaved; used generally for children]

negative

She's **as hard as nails**. [no sympathy for others]
 He's a **nasty piece of work**. [unpleasant]

Note also:

Her **heart's in the right place**. [is a good and kind person even though they do not always seem so]
 He's **such an awkward customer**. [difficult person to deal with]
 She's a **pain in the neck**. Nobody likes her. [nuisance, difficult]
 He **gets on everyone's nerves**. [irritates everybody]

B

Idioms based on 'head'

You can learn idioms by associating them with a key word or words. Two of the idioms in A, for example, are based on *gold* and two on *heart*. Here is a set of idioms describing people based on the word *head*.

to have

- your head **screwed on** [be sensible, informal]
- a head **for heights** [not suffer from vertigo]
- a head **like a sieve** [bad memory]
- a good head **for figures** [be good at maths]
- your head **in the clouds** [unaware of reality]

to be head and shoulders above someone [much better than]

to **bury your head in the sand** [refuse to think about a difficult situation in the hope you won't have to deal with it]

to keep your head [stay calm in a difficult situation]



C How people relate to the social norm

She's a bit of an **odd-ball**. [peculiar, strange]
 He's really **over the top**. [very exaggerated in behaviour]
 He's (gone) **round the bend**, if you ask me. [absolutely crazy/mad]
 My politics are very **middle-of-the-road**. [very normal; no radical ideas; neither left- nor right-wing]

D

Who's who in the class? Idioms for people in the classroom

Sam's **teacher's pet**. [teacher's favourite] Laura's **top of the class**.
 Harry's a real **know-all**. [thinks he knows everything]
 Ali's a bit of a **big-head**. [has a high opinion of him/herself] Anna's a **lazy-bones**.

The last three idioms are used of people outside the classroom situation too.

Exercises

9.1

Try to complete these idioms from memory if possible.

- 1 She does a lot of voluntary work; she has a heart ... *of gold*
- 2 Don't expect any sympathy from the boss; she's as hard ...
- 3 I'm sure Ahmed will help you; he's as good ...
- 4 Although Florian sometimes seems a bit bad-tempered his heart is ...
- 5 I don't think you'll like him; he's a nasty ...
- 6 I try to avoid having much to do with Liam. He's rather an ...

9.2

What do we call ...

- 1 an irritating person who knows everything? *a know-all*
- 2 the person who is the teacher's favourite?
- 3 someone who thinks they are the best and says so?
- 4 the one who gets the best marks?
- 5 a person who is very lazy?

9.3

Complete the sentences using an idiom from B.

- 1 I'd better write it in my notebook. I have ... *a head like a sieve*
- 2 Ask Martha to check those sums. She has ...
- 3 Don't ask me to go up that tower. I'm afraid I don't ...
- 4 She's very sensible and knows what she's doing. She ...
- 5 He's quite out of touch with reality. He really ...
- 6 The problem won't go away so there's no point ...
- 7 Max is top of the class, ...
- 8 Even when others around him are panicking Raul always ... *everyone else*

9.4

Which part of the body might a difficult person (a) get on (b) be a pain in?

9.5

Which of the idioms opposite do you think these pictures represent?



1 an odd-ball

2

3

4

9.6

Over to you

Choose five idioms from this unit that you could use to describe people that you know.

A Types of relationship

Are you and Holly **best friends**?

She's a **good friend** – she's not my best friend.

But she's more than just a casual **acquaintance**¹, right?

Oh, yes. We were **housemates**² at university.

Really? So how did you first meet her?

I met her through my **ex**³, Kallum. She wasn't in a **steady**⁴ relationship with anyone at the time, and she was looking for someone to share a room.

Uh-huh. Is that Kallum who's now Olivia's **partner**⁵?

Yeah, that's the one. They're not just partners, they're married and they're **colleagues** too.

They're saving to buy a house now, so Kallum's living with his **parents-in-law**⁶ at the moment.

¹ a person you have met but you don't know well ² **mate** (friend; *infirm*) is used in compound nouns to describe a person you share something with, e.g. classmate, roommate, workmate, flatmate, housemate.

Workmate is common in non-professional or informal contexts; colleague is common among professional people, and sounds more formal. ³ **ex** can be used without (informally) or with another word: ex-girlfriend, ex-husband, etc. ⁴ **fixed** and not changing suddenly ⁵ **partner** is used for someone you live with but are not married to, or for a business relationship where you share the ownership or running of a company ⁶ his wife's parents (his mother-in-law and father-in-law)

B Internet relationships

MyBook

If you join a social network, you can acquire **friends** (people you share personal information with) and build up your list of **contacts**. You can **invite** people to become your friends, and you can choose to **accept** new friends who invite you. You can **interact** with your friends by exchanging messages or posting comments on their page. You can also **share** photos and **tag** your friends (name them in photos that you post). If you want to finish a relationship, you can **unfriend** / **defriend** that person.

C Liking and not liking someone

Core verb

like

respect

attract

be attracted to

fancy (informal)

love

adore

idolise

look up to

admire

negative

dislike

can't stand

loathe (laude)

look down on

despise

leave someone cold

She doesn't just like Ben, she **idolises** him. I **can't stand** him.

I really **fancy** Charlotte, but her friend just **leaves me cold** / **doesn't do anything for me**.

D Phrases and idioms for relationships and dating

Lily and I **get on well** (with each other). [have a good relationship]

Jack and Amelia **don't see eye to eye**. [often argue/disagree]

I've **fallen out** with my parents again. [had arguments]

Carl is **having an affair** with his boss. [a sexual relationship, usually secret]

Let's try and **make it up**. [be friends again after a row/quarrel]

He's dating a Spanish girl. They've been **seeing each other** for a couple of months. [meeting and spending time together]

They met at a party and **got together** soon after. [started a romantic relationship]

Common mistakes

We say: **People make friends**. (NOT get friends or find friends)

It's often difficult to **make new friends** when you move to another city. (NOT It's often difficult to get friends ...)

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-Intermediate

Exercises

10.1

Use words with the suffix **-mate** to rewrite these sentences.

1 This is Jack. He and I share a flat. *This is Jack. He and I are flatmates.*

2 Mike was the person I shared a room with at university.

3 We were in the same class together in 2006, weren't we?

4 She's not really a friend; she's just someone I work with.

5 Abbie is always arguing with the people she shares a house with.

10.2

How many sentences can you write about the relationships between the people in the pictures, using words from the opposite page?

EXAMPLE *Jon and Erica are colleagues.*



10.3

Complete the text messages with the correct form of words from B opposite.

Have you checked your social media this morning? Sam has ¹ you in a really funny photo and ² it with everyone! ³

My grandma has just ³ me to be her friend online! Don't know if I should or not.

I'm going to ⁵ Emma if she keeps posting nasty ⁶ about me online.

10.4

What do you think the relationships between the people below would be? Use the verbs, phrases and idioms opposite.

1 a teenage music fan: (a) parents He/ She might like/ dislike his/ her parents. (b) pop star (c) strict teacher (d) mate

2 a personal assistant: (a) another personal assistant (b) the boss (c) a very attractive workmate

3 a 45-year-old: (a) teenagers (b) ex-husband/wife who was cruel

10.5

Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one mistake.

1 Rosie and Matt don't ~~get on~~ eye to eye.

2 I fell up with my parents last night. It wasn't my fault.

3 We had a quarrel but now we've made it well.

4 Do you think Josh and Nuala are making an affair? I do.

5 I see very well with all my colleagues at work.

6 Jo's attractive, but her mate just makes me cold completely.

7 Maria seems to find it difficult to get friends among her classmates.

8 I met my boyfriend at a party and we became together soon after.

10.6

Over to you

Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

..... is a good friend of mine.

Someone I look up to is is just a casual acquaintance.

Someone I once fancied was A famous person I loathe is

..... Someone I adore is

11 At home

A Types of houses/places people live in



detached house
not joined to any other house



terraced house
joined to several houses to form a row



bungalow
a house with only one storey (no upstairs)



semi-detached house
(informal): joined to one other house

self-contained flat: does not share facilities with any other

cottage: a small house in the country or in a village

studio flat: a small apartment for one or two people, usually with one large room for sleeping and living in, a bathroom and sometimes a separate kitchen

villa: a large house with big gardens or a rented house in a holiday resort / tourist area

B Places in the home

You probably already know the names of most rooms and locations in a typical home. Here are some less common ones and what they are for.

master/main bedroom: the largest, most important bedroom

utility room: usually just for the washing machine, freezer, etc.

shed: small building separated from the house usually for storing garden tools

attic/loft: space in the roof of a house used for storing things; it can also be converted into an extra living space with stairs leading up to it (**attic/loft conversion**)

cellar: room below ground level, no windows, used for storing things

basement: room below ground level, with windows, for living/working

studio: a room in which a painter or photographer works

landing: flat area at the top of a staircase

hall/hallway: open area as you come into a house

porch: covered area before an entrance door

terrace or patio: paved area between house and garden for sitting and eating, etc.

drive: a short road leading from the street to the house or garage; you can drive/park on it

C Everyday objects in the home



remote (control)



chopping board



dustpan and brush



corkscrew



(coat) hanger



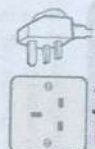
phone charger



ironing board



peeler



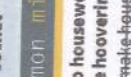
toilet roll



table mat



grater



socket

Common mistakes

You do housework, do the ironing, do the hoovering, do the washing-up. (NOT make-housework)

Exercises

11.1

Where in a typical house would you look for the following things?

- 1 garden tools *in the shed*
- 2 a toilet roll
- 3 table mats
- 4 a hanger
- 5 the remote
- 6 an ironing board
- 7 a socket
- 8 a porch
- 9 a grater
- 10 old empty boxes

11.2

Label the places in the house.



11.3

Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 The old house had a big *cellar*.
- 2 I'll prepare the potatoes and then you can do the cooking. Where's the *grater*?
- 3 Put a *socket* under the coffee pot in case you mark that table. It's an antique.
- 4 Let's open this bottle. Do you know where the *peeler* is?
- 5 We keep our skis up in the *attic*. They're out of the way up there.
- 6 You'll find the garden chairs in the *shed* at the bottom of the garden. Bring them up and we'll have a drink on the *terrace* and watch the sunset.
- 7 The light switch for the stairs is on the *landing* just by your bedroom door.
- 8 Grandma's moved to a *flat* now she can't manage the stairs any more at her age.
- 9 Leave your car in the *garage*, just in front of the garage. It'll be safe there.

11.4

Answer these questions about everyday objects.

- 1 How can you make very small pieces of cheese to sprinkle on a dish? *Use a grater*
- 2 What might you fetch if someone dropped a cup and it broke into small pieces on the floor?
- 3 What do you need if your phone battery is flat?
- 4 How can you switch off the TV without leaving your chair?
- 5 How can you cut vegetables without marking the kitchen work surface?
- 6 What might you offer a visitor if they want to take off their jacket?

11.5

Over to you

Answer these questions about yourself.

- 1 Is your house detached? What sort is it if not?
- 2 Would you like to live in a studio flat? Why (not)?
- 3 Which of these household jobs do you most enjoy and which do you least enjoy - doing the washing-up / the washing / the ironing / the gardening / the hoovering / the dusting / the cooking?

A

Things that go wrong in houses and flats



This pipe's **leaking**.

He kicked the football too hard and it **smashed** a window.

This pot is **cracked**.

The batteries in this torch **have run out / are dead**. I'll have to get some more.

I'm sorry, your cup's **chipped**. Let me get you another one.

The lights aren't **working** – there's been a **power cut**.

The door handle's **come off / fallen off**.

The washing machine **broke down** the other day.

I'm sorry, the biscuits were at the bottom of my bag and they **got crushed** by the potatoes! My computer keeps **crashing** today!

B

Everyday minor injuries



She **twisted** her ankle coming down the stairs. I **bumped/banged** my head against the cupboard door and got a **bruise**. [*bruiz*] dark area on your skin where you have hurt yourself
Kelly **tripped** and **fell down** and **grazed** her knee this morning. [if you trip you almost fall down because you hit your foot against something; if you graze something, it becomes red with broken skin, but no blood]

C

Other everyday minor problems

I've **mislaid** my memory stick. Have you seen it anywhere? [put it somewhere and can't find it]

She **spilt** some coffee on the carpet. I hope it doesn't leave a **stain**. [permanent mark]

The sink is **blocked**. [the water will not run away]

I'm afraid I've **dent**ed your car. I'm really sorry. I'll pay for the repairs. [bent the metal a little bit by hitting something]

My mouse has **stopped working**. It could be a software problem.

I've **locked myself out**. Can I use your phone to ring my wife?

The car **won't start**. I hope it's nothing serious. Perhaps the battery's **flat**.

The kitchen clock's **slow/fast/stopped**. What time d'you make it?

Language help

Words often belong to more than one word class. In this unit, the following words can be used as verbs or as countable nouns:

flood crack chip bump bang bruise graze dent stain lock

Always make a special note of any word that belongs to more than one word class.

Exercises

12.1

What do you think happened to make these people do / say what they did?

- 1 We had to send for a plumber. *Maybe a pipe was leaking.*
- 2 I had to call out a local mechanic.
- 3 Our neighbours let us use their washing machine.
- 4 Don't worry, the handle often does that – I'll fix it back on.
- 5 Luckily, that was all it was; the skin was broken a bit, but there was no blood.
- 6 What type of batteries does it take? I'll get some for you.
- 7 I don't know where you've put them. Try the bedside table.
- 8 I left it in the oven too long. It's all black on the top now!
- 9 I lost all my work – I know I should have saved it more often!

12.2

Odd one out. Which of the three words is the odd one out in each case?

- 1 spill, flood, chip *chip – the other two involve liquids*
- 2 stain, graze, bruise
- 3 run out, bump, flat
- 4 leak, smash, chip
- 5 leak, dent, flood

12.3

Here is a matrix with the names of things and things that can go wrong with them. Put a tick (✓) for things that typically go together.

	car	vase	elbow	clock	printer	sink	a meal
banged							
ruined							
cracked							
broken down							
dented							
stopped				✓			
blocked							

Write five sentences using combinations of words where you wrote a tick.

EXAMPLE This clock has **stopped** – perhaps it needs new batteries.

12.4

Complete these sentences using words and phrases from the opposite page.

- 1 We had to use candles because *there was a power cut*.
- 2 I didn't look where I was going as I walked through the low doorway and
- 3 The wind blew the door shut and I realised I'd
- 4 I would ring her but I'm afraid I've
- 5 I can't take a photo, my camera's
- 6 I tried to run over the rocks but I
- 7 I accidentally sat on my bag of crisps and they

12.5

Over to you

What would you do if ...

- 1 you mislaid your credit card?
- 2 you noticed your guest's glass was chipped?
- 3 one of your coat buttons came off?
- 4 your mobile phone stopped working?
- 5 you bruised your forehead?
- 6 your watch was slow?

Disasters/tragedies



earthquake

[the earth moves/trembles]



flood

[too much rain]



drought

[no rain]



volcano

[hot liquid rock and gases pour from a mountain]

famine /f m n/ [no food] **landslide** [rocks and earth moving suddenly down a slope]
epidemic [disease affecting large numbers of people] **explosion** (e.g. a bomb)
major accident / incident (e.g. a plane crash)
hurricane / tornado / **tropical storm** [violent wind / storm]
war / civil war [civil war is war between people of the same country]
 Disasters not caused by human beings can be called **natural disasters**.

Language help

Injure / nd / is used about people.

Damage / d m d / is used about things.

200 people were **injured**. Many buildings were **damaged**.

Verbs connected with these words

A volcano has **erupted** in Indonesia. Hundreds are **feared dead**. The flu epidemic **spread** rapidly throughout the country. Millions are **starving** as a result of the famine. A big earthquake **shook** the city at noon today. The area is **suffering** its worst drought for many years. Civil war has **broken out** in the north of the country. A tornado **swept** through the islands yesterday.

Words for people involved in disasters/tragedies

The explosion resulted in 300 **casualties**. / k j u l i z / [dead and injured people]
 The real **victims** of civil war are children left without parents. [those who suffer the results]
 There were only three **survivors**. / s v a v z /. All the other passengers were reported dead. [people who live through a disaster]
 Thousands of **refugees** / r e f / d i z / have crossed the border looking for food and shelter. [people who have escaped from their own country because of a war or other disaster]
 Millions of **migrants** enter the country each year, looking for a better life. [people who travel from one country to another, often in order to find work]
 During the battle, the **dead** and **wounded** / w u n d / were flown out in helicopters. [wounded: injured in a battle / by a weapon]

Diseases/epidemics

Here are some headlines from newspapers all connected with diseases and epidemics. Explanations are given.

/ r e b i z / disease
 can be caused by bite from a dog, fox, etc., very serious

Rabies out of control in many parts of Asia

/ m l e r / usually caught because of mosquito bites

New malaria drug tested

New AIDS unit to be opened this month

acquired immune deficiency syndrome; often caused by sexual contact or contact with contaminated blood

Cholera and typhoid injections not needed

says Tourism Minister

/ ' k o l a r a / ' t a f o i d / diseases causing sickness, diarrhoea, etc., caused often by infected food and water

Exercises

13.1

What type of disaster from the list in A opposite are these sentences about? Why?

- The lava flow destroyed three villages. *Volcano - lava is the hot liquid rock from the mountain*
- The aftershock struck at 3.35 pm local time.
- People had boarded up shops and houses during the day before, and stayed indoors.
- Gunfire could be heard all over the town.
- Witnesses said they saw a fireball fall out of the sky.
- People had to stay on the upper floors and sometimes on the roofs of their homes.
- The earth is cracked and vegetation has dried up.
- They quite often happen in this area of the mountains and it can take some time for the roads to be cleared, especially if trees have been brought down too.

13.2

Complete the missing items in this word-class table, using a dictionary if necessary. Where the space is shaded, you do not need to write anything.

verb	noun: thing or idea	noun: person
explode	explosion	
		survivor
injure		
starve		
erupt		

13.3

In these headlines, say whether the situation seems to be getting worse or better, or whether a disaster has happened or has been avoided/prevented.

- Poison gas cloud spreads
getting worse
- POLICE DEFUSE TERRORIST BOMB
- OIL SLICK RECEDES
- Experts warn of cholera time bomb
- All survive plane's emergency landing
- Flood warnings not heeded in time

13.4

Fill the gaps with a suitable word from B opposite. Try to work from memory.

- Another 50 people died today, all *victims* of the famine.
- Over 5 million *have fled* the war and are seeking shelter in neighbouring countries.
- It was the worst road accident the country has ever seen, with over 120 *deaths*.
- A: Were there any *injuries* when the ship sank? B: I'm afraid not.
- The *number* and *amount* were left lying on the battlefield; it was a disgrace.
- The number of economic *problems* entering the country each year has increased sharply.

13.5

Which diseases are these? Try to do this from memory.

- One that can be caused by a mosquito bite. *malaria*
- One you can get by drinking infected water.
- One you can get from an animal bite.
- One caused by a virus which destroys the body's immune system.

A Stages in a person's education (UK system)

The youngest children start their education in a **crèche** /kreʃ/, where they mostly play but also do some early learning activities. After that, they may go to a **nursery school**. Between the ages of five and 11, children attend **primary school**, where they learn the basics of reading, writing, arithmetic, etc. For most children, secondary education begins when they enter a **comprehensive school** or a more traditional **grammar school** (to which they **gain admission** by sitting an exam). The famous UK **public schools** are in fact private, fee-paying schools. Between the ages of 11 and 18, young people take a wide range of subjects in arts, sciences and technical areas. In the UK, pupils can leave school at the age of 16, although many young people choose to remain in full-time education until the age of 18. (In England it is **compulsory** for young people to continue with some form of education or training until they are 18 [they must do it], even if they also have a job.) From 16 to 18 young people may study at secondary school or at a **sixth-form college**, after which they may go on to **higher education**.



B Exams and qualifications

You **take/do/sit** an exam or **resit**¹ an exam. At schools and sixth-form colleges in the UK, students have to take formal **end-of-year exams**. At 18, a lot of students sit their **university entrance exams**, commonly referred to as 'A levels'. Students are usually given marks (e.g. 75%) or grades (e.g. A, B+, C). If you **pass** and **do well**, you get a high grade. If you fail, you don't get the minimum grade. If you **skip classes**², you'll probably do badly in the exam.

¹ take it again if you did badly first time

² miss deliberately; *intend*



Common mistakes

We say: **pass an exam**, e.g. *I passed all my exams and graduated in 2010.* (NOT *I succeeded* or *got all my exams*.)

C Technology

With an **LMS** or a **VLE**¹, students can work online and do more **distance learning** or **blended learning**. Teachers can **monitor**² students' activities and **progress**³; students can choose courses and/or **modules**⁴, **submit**⁵ work, write blogs, access wikis and leave voice messages.

¹ Learning Management System or Virtual Learning Environment; computer system that controls all aspects of teaching and learning ² without attending classes, e.g. from home ³ using a mix of classroom and online learning ⁴ check regularly ⁵ note; *progress* is uncountable ⁶ individual elements or parts of a course

D Talking about education: common questions

What's the **school-leaving age**? It's 18 in a lot of countries. At what age does **compulsory** education begin? [which you must do, by law]

Exercises

14.1

Fill the gaps in this life story of a British woman.

Amy first went to her local ¹ *primary* school at the age of five. The year before that she attended a ² *nursery*, but her parents didn't send her to a ³ *primary* when she was very small. When Amy was ready to go on to secondary school, she passed a special exam and so gained ⁴ *admission* to her local ⁵ *comprehensive* school. Her friends didn't do that exam. Like most children, they went to a ⁶ *grammar* school. Only a few children from very rich families go to famous ⁷ *public* schools and Amy only knew one girl from her class at primary school who did. At the age of 16, Amy went on to ⁸ *study* English, History and Maths. Her ambition is to go on to ⁹ *become* a teacher.

14.2

Rewrite the words in bold in this conversation using words from B opposite.

ALMUT: I've got one more exam tomorrow. I hope I **get the minimum grade** *pass*. I'm worried.

JOE: Really? What makes you think you won't **get a high grade**?

ALMUT: Well, I've **missed** a couple of classes this term.

JOE: Hm. If you **get below the minimum grade**, are you allowed to **take the exam again**?

ALMUT: Yes, but I don't want to. Next year I want to go to university, not **sit my university entrance exams** again!

14.3

Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- In the UK, students between 16 and 18 can go to a *sixth-form college*.
- The school-ending age is 18 in many countries.
- I'm glad you succeeded at your exam.
- She has to sit on a Biology exam next week.
- Is school compulsory till 18 in your country?
- Do we have to admit our work to the teacher by Friday?
- I've made a lot of progresses in my English recently.
- Thanks to the LMS, teachers can mentor their students' activities.

14.4 What do we call ...?

- learning that mixes classes and online work? *blended learning*
- schools which require students to take an exam to gain admission?
- private schools where parents pay fees?
- learning you can do at home, without going to class?

14.5

Over to you

Make a chart in English for the education system in your country. Is it the same as the UK or are there differences? Compare with someone else if possible.

A University studies

Students who attend university in the UK start with **undergraduate studies**, which are usually the studies towards a **bachelor's degree** [a first degree at university]. They follow a **programme of different modules** (parts of the university course). They usually have to complete a certain number of **credits** each year. For example, if the students need 180 credits, they might take two modules of 60 credits each, and their **dissertation** [long piece of writing] might be worth another 60 credits. When they have **graduated** [completed their bachelor's degree], students become **graduates**.

If they want to continue their university education, students can begin **postgraduate studies**. The first stage of this would be a **master's degree**, and after that they can do a **PhD** (doctor of philosophy) [the highest university degree]. Postgraduate studies require students to specialise in a particular field, and they often do **research**. They usually have to write another dissertation (for a master's degree) or a **thesis** (for a PhD).

B People, places, and types of classes



A university campus



A lecture theatre



A tutorial

If you visit a **university campus**, you'll see a **lecture theatre** (or a lecture hall). During **lectures**, students listen to a **lecturer** and take notes. Some modules have **seminars** where smaller groups discuss the subject in detail. The **academic staff** [people who teach] might also include **tutors**, who teach students individually or in small groups, in sessions called **tutorials**. Many students live on **campus** in **halls of residence** (or **halls**).

C Student services



Admissions¹

To apply for one of our postgraduate programmes, check the **entry requirements²** on the programme page. Then click **here** to **submit your application**.



Funding³

Tuition fees⁴ should be paid at the beginning of the academic year. To apply for a **student loan⁵** or a **scholarship⁶** click **here**.



Student Union

Visit our **student union⁷** page to find out more about **student societies** and clubs.

1 a university department that deals with new applications and new students

2 qualifications that are needed to enter a programme

3 money that students can receive

4 money that students have to pay for their course

5 money that a student borrows to pay for their course

6 money that is given to a student to pay for a course (usually for students who are doing well at school)

7 an organization that deals with student issues and student life on campus, and a place where students can meet

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

Exercises

15.1

What do we call ...?

- 1 A first degree at college or university *bachelor's degree*
- 2 The lower level of postgraduate degree
- 3 The highest university degree
- 4 A person who is studying for their first degree
- 5 A person who has completed their first degree
- 6 A person who is studying for a master's or PhD

15.2

Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

- 1 This undergraduate *credit / programme / field* lasts four years.
- 2 To complete the year students need 180 *lectures / credits / modules*. 60 of these are for the thesis.
- 3 After three years, you will *research / credit / graduate* with a bachelor's degree.
- 4 My master's *field / credit / dissertation* on modern English literature was 120 pages long.
- 5 Dr Lewis has been doing *research / thesis / field* into dolphin behaviour and has made a very important discovery.
- 6 Lucy is an expert in the *field / programme / research* of ancient history and has just completed her PhD on Greek art.

15.3

Fill the gaps with words from B opposite.

- 1 A *campus* is a place where the university buildings are located.
- 2 Student accommodation is called *residence*.
- 3 Academic staff, such as professors, tutors and *lecturers*, have offices at the university.
- 4 *Meetings* are meetings (one-to-one or in small groups) with a tutor.
- 5 Students listen to talks in a *lecture hall*.
- 6 Some *courses* are attended by two hundred students.

15.4

Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 There are two types of student *unions*: student loans and scholarships.
- 2 You must pay your entry requirements by 17th September.
- 3 A great way of meeting new people on campus is to join some of the student scholarships and clubs.
- 4 The admissions office helps current students with their problems and life on campus.
- 5 Before you submit your application, read the student loan thoroughly.

15.5

Over to you

Is the system of university studies similar in your country? Make a list of similarities and differences.

Jobs in a workplace

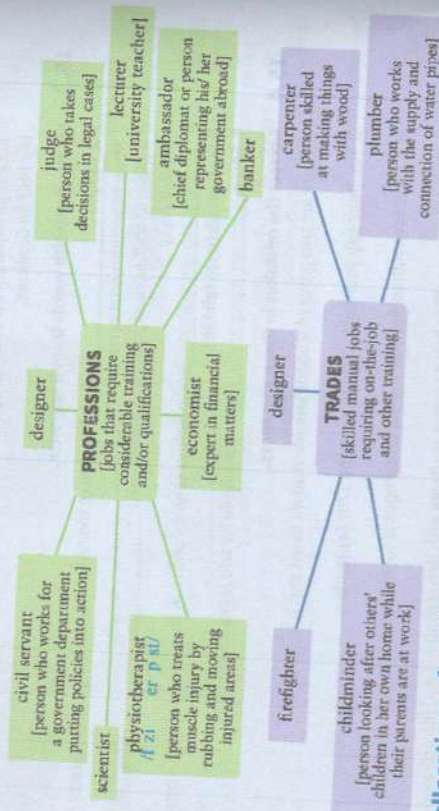
director [member of the board of a company] **executive** / zek / t v / [important person who makes big decisions] **administrator** [person who runs the office day-to-day] **skilled worker** [trained to do specific tasks, e.g. building a computer] **unskilled worker** [doing a job that needs no training] **receptionist** [visitors must check in with them] **public relations officer** [gives information about the company to the media] **union representative** [looks after the staff's interests] **researcher** [investigates and develops new products] **supervisor** [makes sure workers are doing their job properly]

Common mistakes

The best way of getting to **work** (NOT job) depends on where you live.
Wish me luck in my new **job** (NOT work).
Job refers to a particular role or position. Jack's got a new **job** as a researcher.

Work refers to activities that you do. Jack's **work** is very demanding.

Trades and professions



Collocations of words connected with work

It's not easy to **get/find work** round these parts. I've been **offered work / a job** in Paris.
What'd you do for a living? I'm in **publishing/banking**, etc.
It's hard to **make a living** as a freelance writer. [earn enough money to live comfortably]
She's not prepared to **take on that job**. [suggests 'having personal responsibility']

hours of work	to do shiftwork or to work shifts [nights one week, days the next week]
not working	to be on flexi-time [flexible working hours] to work nine-to-five [regular day work]
	to go/be on strike [industrial dispute] to get the sack [thrown out of your job]
	to be fired [more formal than 'get the sack'; often used in direct speech: 'You're fired!']
	to be made redundant [thrown out, no longer needed] to be laid off [more informal than 'made redundant']
	to be on / take maternity [woman] or paternity [man] leave [before/after the birth of a baby]
	to be on / take sick leave [illness] to take early retirement [retire at 55]
other useful expressions	to be a workaholic [love work too much] to be promoted [get a higher position]
	to apply for a job [fill in forms, etc.]

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

Exercises

16.1

Which of the job titles in A opposite would best describe the following?

- The person who represents the workers' interests in disputes with the management in a factory.
union representative
- A person who has a high position in a company and whose job it is to make important decisions.
- An important person in a company who sits on the board.
- A worker whose job requires no special training, for example, an office cleaner.
- A person generally in charge of the day-to-day organisation of a company/department.
- A person whose job it is to keep an eye on the day-to-day work of other workers.

16.2

Choose job or work to complete these sentences.

- I'll pay for the plumbing *work* when it's finished.
- I'd like to apply for a *job* in your office.
- You should delegate more *responsibility* to your personal assistant.
- Let's stop for a coffee on our way home from *work*.
- A *manager* in a museum wouldn't be as tiring as one in a restaurant.

16.3

Using the expressions in C opposite, say what you think has happened / is happening.

- I'm not working now; the baby's due in three weeks. *She's on maternity leave.*
- He's enjoying life on a pension, although he's only 58.
- One week it's six-to-two, the next it's nights.
- They've made her General Manager as from next month!
- I was late so often, I lost my job.
- I get in at nine o'clock and go home at five.
- Your trouble is you are obsessed with work!

16.4

Which jobs do these people have? Would you call the following a trade, a profession or an unskilled job?



16.5

Fill in the collocations.

I'd love to ¹ get/have a job in journalism, but it's not easy without qualifications. Since I have to earn ² somehow, I'll have to get ³ somewhere I can find it. I've been ⁴ it some part-time work editing a new book, but I'm not sure I want to ⁵ it.

16.6

Over to you

Think of five people you know who work for a living. Can you name their jobs in English? If you can't, look them up in a good bilingual dictionary.

Starting a business

Ryan Archer had an idea for a business. He had a computer but it was never just right for all his personal needs, so he went to his bank manager and **put forward**¹ a **business plan**² to sell **custom-built**³ computers on the Internet. He **launched**⁴ his business a year later, offering an individual service making desktop and laptop computers, and two years later **rolled out**⁵ an **expanded**⁶ range, including tablets and other hand-held devices. His **firm**⁷ now **manufactures**⁸ around 200 machines a year and delivers to 26 countries around the world.



Ryan said, 'It's all about personal service and **customer care**⁹. This was our **priority**¹⁰ from the start. We didn't really do any proper **market research**¹¹ and we weren't sure if such machines would sell, especially during a **recession**¹². But I felt there were enough **potential**¹³ customers to make it worth the **risk**¹⁴. I was right. Soon, designers, scientists, academics and other professional people were requesting personalised machines and our **order books**¹⁵ were full.' **Going forward**¹⁶, Archer plans to expand the business further, and a new range of machines will **launch** next year.

¹ offered for people to consider ² a plan of how the business will operate ³ specially made for a particular person or thing ⁴ started, perhaps with a special event to mark the beginning ⁵ make a new product available for the first time ⁶ made bigger ⁷ company ⁸ produces goods in large numbers, usually in a factory ⁹ looking after the customer's needs ¹⁰ something very important which must be dealt with first ¹¹ (uncountable) finding out beforehand what people want or need ¹² period of low economic activity and bad conditions for business ¹³ possible when the conditions are right ¹⁴ possibility of something bad happening ¹⁵ the list of orders waiting to be completed ¹⁶ going into the future

Language help

In business English, some verbs which usually need an object can often be used without an object or with the real object acting as the subject.

with object	real object as subject
We sold 200 instruments last year.	We didn't know if the instruments would sell .
They are launching a new range.	The new range launches next year.
They are rolling out a new range.	The new range will roll out next year.

Common business English phrases and collocations

The **CEO**¹ of a big **corporation**² gave us these tips for success in business:

- **Do business** in the markets you know best before trying to enter new ones.
- It may be difficult to **access new markets**³. **Build contacts**; that's the secret.
- You may not **make a profit** immediately. Be patient. You will probably face **stiff competition**⁴, so make sure your product is the best.
- **Get regular feedback**⁵ from your employees and customers. They know best.

¹ Chief Executive Officer ² a large company or group of companies that is controlled together as a single organisation ³ reach and do business with new groups of customers or parts of the world where something might be sold ⁴ (uncountable) other companies trying hard to be more successful than you ⁵ (uncountable) information/opinions about what people think of a product or service

Common mistakes

Business can be countable or uncountable.

We **hope to do more business** in Asia next year. (uncountable = the activity. NOT We **hope to do more businesses**...)

New **businesses** are **launched** on the Internet every day. (countable = enterprises/companies)

Exercises

17.1

Fill the gaps in the questions with words from A opposite, then complete the answers.

- What did Ryan Archer put **forward** to his bank manager? He presented a
- What is special about the computers his makes? They are
- When did he his business? A
- What did he out two years later? An of computers.
- How many computers does his firm now? About a
- What was Ryan Archer's from the start? Personal service and
- Why didn't he do any research? He felt there were enough customers.
- Why was he not sure if the machines would? There was a at the time.
- Was it all worth the? Yes. His firm's were soon full.
- forward, what are his plans? He's planning a new range of computers, which will next year.

If possible, practise asking and answering the questions with someone else.

17.2

Rewrite the words in bold using words and phrases from A and B opposite.

- The new service will be available for the first time over the whole country next year. **roll out**
- The business didn't make money in its first year.
- There are a lot of possible customers for this product.
- Their list of orders waiting to be completed was full last month.
- It is sometimes difficult to get into new markets if you don't have contacts.
- We should pay attention to the opinions and reactions our clients post on our website.
- Customer care is a most important issue for our company.
- We need to make our business bigger in Latin America.
- It's important to create relationships with local people before you enter a new country.

17.3

Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- She's the **GOE** of a huge corporation.
- The new range of products will launch itself next month. We hope it will be sold!
- The firm specialises in customer-built laptops for business travellers.
- Bringing forward, we expect to increase our sales in Japan and China.
- It's important to get a feedback from our clients.
- We're facing competitions from American firms.
- We hope to do more businesses in North Africa in the future.

17.4

Match the words on the left with the words on the right to make typical collocations. Then write a sentence using each one.

customer	order	market	custom	stiff	built	competition	research	care	books
----------	-------	--------	--------	-------	-------	-------------	----------	------	-------

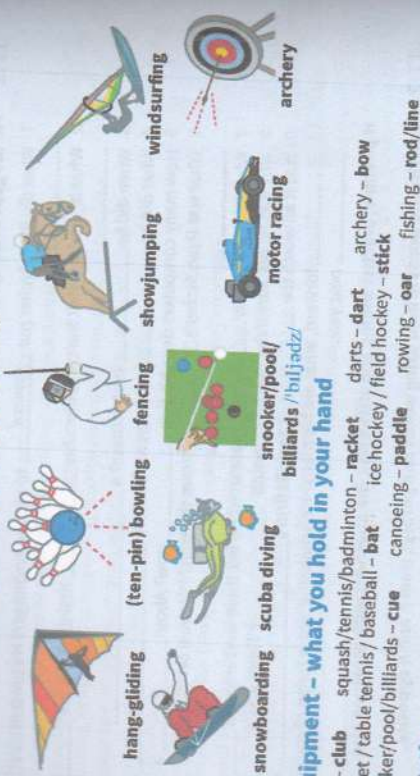
EXAMPLE Customer care should be a priority in any kind of business.

17.5

Over to you

If you could start a business, what would it be? What would you need to do to make it a success? Write a paragraph outlining your ideas. Use words and phrases from this unit.

A Some sports whose names you may not know



B Equipment – what you hold in your hand

golf – club squash/tennis/badminton – racket darts – dart archery – bow
cricket / table tennis / baseball – bat ice hockey / field hockey – stick
snooker/pool/billiards – cue canoeing – paddle rowing – oar fishing – rod/line

C Athletics



She's a great **sprinter**. [fast over short distances]
He's a great **long-distance runner**. (e.g. 5,000 metres) He's doing a **marathon** next month.

D Competition in sport

She **set** a new Olympic **record** last year. He **holds the record** for the 100 metres **breaststroke**.
England **qualified** for the World Cup but **got knocked out** in the third round. [achieved the necessary standard but lost at the third stage and were then excluded from the competition]
Our team **made it to / reached the semi-final** but then we were **beaten**. [won every stage of the competition except the last but one, and so did not enter the final match/event]
Most sports are very **competitive** these days. [involve a strong desire to win and be better than other people]
She felt proud as she held the **trophy** in her hands. [cup or other object that shows she has won]
Players who disagree with the **referee** set a bad example to the **spectators** and to their fans. [people who are present at a sporting event to watch it]

E People who do particular sports

-er can be used for many sports, e.g. **footballer, swimmer**, etc. **Player** is often necessary, e.g. **tennis player, squash player**. Some names must be learnt separately, e.g. **canoeist, mountaineer, jockey, archer** (NOT ~~archerer~~), **gymnast**.

Common mistakes

In British English, the noun **sport** is used in the plural when it describes another noun (e.g. **equipment, facilities, club**). The shop sells **sports equipment**. (NOT ~~sport-equipment~~) However, you will hear the singular **sport** used before another noun in American English.

Exercises

18.1

Which of the sports opposite are these people probably talking about?

- The ball doesn't roll in a straight line on the ground. You have to aim away from the centre of the pins. (ten-pin) *bowling*
- Provided it's not too windy at the top of the hill, there's no problem.
- It is incredibly noisy, fast and dangerous, but it's really exciting to watch.
- The horse has to get over a series of jumps without knocking the posts off.
- It's all a matter of balance. But sometimes you can't help falling in the water.
- You need a good eye and concentration, especially to hit the centre of the board.
- The different ball colours are worth different numbers of points.
- It's a fantastic feeling when the snow flies up into the air around you.

18.2

Name a piece of equipment necessary to do these sports apart from the item given.

- golf: ball, *club*
- archery: arrow, _____
- tennis: ball, _____
- field hockey: ball, _____
- baseball: ball, _____
- darts: dartboard, _____
- canoeing: canoe, _____
- snooker: balls, _____
- rowing: boat, _____

18.3

Fill the gaps with suitable words.

- She's a *long-distance* runner. She won a medal last year for the 1,500 metres. She's won a lot of _____ in the last five years and has them all in a glass cabinet at her house.
- Were many new records _____ at the last Olympics?
- He's doing a _____ next week – running 42 kilometres! That's 26 miles!
- Who _____ the world record for the 1,000 metres these days? Is it a Russian?
- His national team failed to _____ for the World Cup so he's supporting Brazil instead.
- Last year, our team _____ the final for the first time in 10 years but we lost. (two answers)
- My team got _____ in the second _____ of the competition. We were very disappointed it happened at such an early stage.
- All Olympic sports are highly _____; everyone has one ambition – to win gold.
- Thousands of _____ protested loudly at the decision of the _____ to give their team captain a red card.
- The world's best _____ can run 100 metres in less than 10 seconds.

18.4

Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one mistake.

- She was a champion *gymnast* when she was a teenager.
- Are you a good tennis? We're trying to get a local team together.
- My brother is an expert canoeist. He's won medals.
- My father is a good golfer. He's also an expert mountainer.
- Is there a shop near here that sells sport equipment? I need a fishing rode.
- I'd love to be a good archer, but my eyesight isn't very good.
- Are you a sprinter or a long-distant runner?
- My favourite Olympic sports are fence and the height jump.

18.5

Which sport ...?

- covers a long distance in one jump? *long jump*
- throws a heavy disc a long way?
- throws a pole with a sharp point?

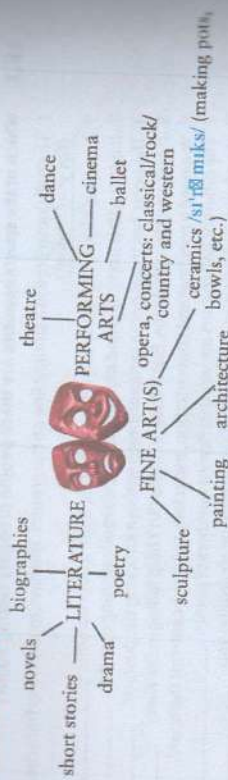
18.6

Over to you

Make a list of (a) sports you have done and (b) sports you would like to do. Then list the equipment you needed / would need for each one. Write sentences about what you liked or disliked about sports you have tried, using vocabulary from this unit.

19 Art and literature

A Art and the arts



The **arts** (plural) covers everything in the diagram above. **Art** (singular, uncountable) usually means **fine art**, but can also refer to technique and creativity. Have you read the **arts page** in the paper today? [that part of the newspaper that deals with all the things in the diagram] She's a great **art lover**. [loves painting and sculpture] Shakespeare was skilled in the **art** of poetry. [creative ability] Ask Sara to help you decorate your room - she's very **artistic**. [shows skill and imagination in creating things]

A **work of art** (plural = works of art) is an object made by a skilled artist - typically a painting, drawing or statue. The phrase **arts and crafts** is used to refer to the skills of making objects such as decorations, jewellery and furniture by hand.

B Types of art and artists

This is a **sculptor** - he's creating a **statue** - his type of art is called **sculpture**.

This is a **potter** - she's throwing a **pot** - her type of art is called **pottery**.

Henry is an **architect** - he's designing a **building** - his type of art is called **architecture**.

An **abstract** painting involves shapes and colours rather than **images** of real people or things. A **portrait** is a painting of a person. A **landscape** is a painting of a scene in the countryside. A **still life** is a painting of a set of objects that do not move, usually fruit or flowers. An **original** painting is one produced by the painter him/herself rather than a copy or **reproduction**.



C Literature

Lisa O'Donnell is one of the country's most popular **novelists**¹. She has written a **series**² of romantic novels all with a historical **setting**³. These have all been **bestsellers**⁴ although the **critics**⁵ complain that her **plots**⁶ are predictable and her **characters**⁷ are not very realistic. Her cousin, Lucy Smith, is a more **literary**⁸ writer and her books tend to get better **reviews**⁹ although they do not sell so well. Both writers have a novel which will be ready for **publication**¹⁰ later this year; they will also be available to download as **ebooks**¹¹. We have received advance **copies** of both novels and it is interesting to compare the opening **passage**¹² from Smith's latest book with an **extract**¹³ from the first chapter of O'Donnell's.

¹ people who write long stories about imaginary people and events (remember a novel is typically at least 150 pages long; anything shorter is a **short story**) ² set of books featuring the same characters
³ background for a story or film ⁴ very popular books that sell in large numbers ⁵ people whose job it is to give their opinion of something, typically books, films or music ⁶ stories ⁷ people in a book or film
⁸ serious rather than popular ⁹ what the critics write ¹⁰ making something available in a printed form
¹¹ electronic book ¹² short piece of text ¹³ part of a book chosen to be used in an article or for discussion

Exercises

19.1

Which branch of the arts do you think these people are talking about?

1 He's created some beautiful vases but I'm not so keen on his other pieces.
pottery

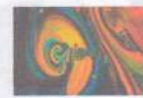
2 It doesn't have to rhyme to be good.

3 Oils to me don't have the delicacy of watercolours.

4 Her design for the new city hall won an award.

5 The first chapter was boring but it got better later.

19.2 What type of painting is each of these?



- 1 *portrait* 2 3 4

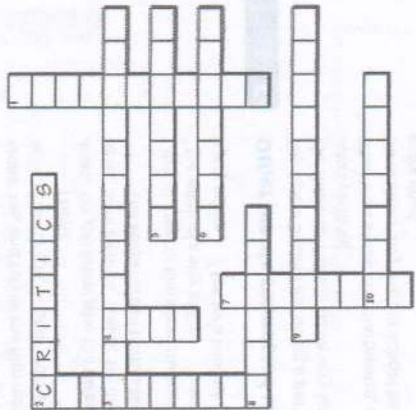
19.3 Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

- 1 A **sculpture** (*sculptor*) is someone who makes statues.
- 2 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **art** / the art of portrait painting.
- 3 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **art** / arts and **craft** / crafts.
- 4 Which would you rather be good at - **art** / the art or **music** / the music?
- 5 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** / **work of arts** at the City Gallery.

19.4 Find the missing words to complete the crossword.

Across

- 2 The have generally been very positive about Kelly's latest novel.
- 3 Do you like this picture? It's only a I could never afford an original.
- 5 The author began his talk by reading a short from his latest book.
- 6 I usually prefer to read books with a modern rather than ones about some unfamiliar period.
- 8 I've loved all the books in this detective I hope they'll publish another one soon.
- 9 Max is, of course, hoping that his first novel will become a of the novel we've got to read for our English class?
- 10 Have you read any of the novel we've got to read for our English class?



Down

- 1 Maria's first novel is due for this summer.
- 2 You know from the first page that the two main in the novel are going to fall in love with each other.
- 4 The novel has a very interesting with some unexpected twists in it.
- 7 Leo's short story is going to be published in the country's leading magazine.

A At the theatre



The people who watch a show are the **audience**. **Viewer** is only used about someone watching a TV programme.

Language help

When we refer to a performing art in general, we can leave out the definite article, e.g. *Are you interested in (the) cinema/ballet/opera/theatre?* But: *Would you like to come to the cinema/ballet/opera/theatre with us next week?* [particular performance]

At the cinema

ANNA: Our local cinema's showing *Spectre* again next week. Do you fancy going to see it?
BETH: Yes, that'd be great. I love the opening **scene**¹ at the carnival in Mexico City. The James Bond films are always **set**² in great locations.
ANNA: Yes, and I think the film really **captures**³ the human side of James Bond.
BETH: That's right. A lot of work went into the **script**⁴ for this, and the **dialogue**⁵ is particularly good, I think.

ANNA: Do you know who the **director**⁶ was?

BETH: Sam Mendes, I think. He didn't write the **screenplay**⁷, though. I'm not sure who wrote that. The **score**⁸ is by Thomas Newman. He also wrote the music for *Skyfall*.

¹ part of a play or film where the action happens in one place ² take place ³ represents very accurately
⁴ the words of a play or film ⁵ conversation written for a book, play or film ⁶ person in charge of making
 a play or film ⁷ text for a film including instructions for actors and camera operators ⁸ music for a film

C Other words connected with events in the arts

The Opera Society are doing a **performance** of *Don Giovanni*.
 The National Theatre has a very large and versatile **stage**. [area above ground level where actors perform]
What's on at the cinema/theatre, etc. next week? (note the two prepositions)
 Sometimes they use our school hall as a **venue** for concerts - it's a little small but is otherwise quite good.
 There was an actor on TV last night **promoting** an interesting new play he's **appearing** in at The Globe. [providing publicity for; noun = promotion] [acting; noun = appearance]

Exercises

20.1

Fill the gaps with the correct form of the word in brackets.

- I thought all the cast gave an excellent *performance* in the play last night. (perform)
- I don't find that *particularly* funny. (comedy)
- It's unusual for a film to have two *directors*, but this one did. (direct)
- Paolo Tomassi is one of the best *actors* of a Shakespearean play I've ever seen. (entertain)
- It was one of the best *films* in the film. (appear)
- My favourite actor makes only a brief *appearance* in the film. (appear)

20.2

Definite article or not? Fill the gap with the if necessary.

- The government doesn't give enough money to *the* ballet.
- She's got a diploma in *the* dance from the Performing Arts Academy.
- I've got some tickets for *the* opera. Interested?
- Shall we go to *the* cinema this evening? There are several good things on.
- I much prefer *the* theatre to *the* ballet, don't you?

20.3

Choose the correct word from the box to fill each gap in this online review. There are some extra words in the box which you do not need.

audience cast costumes critics entertainers performances productions
 reviews scenes screenplay script sets stage venue words

Theatre Review

Last night actors at the Central Theatre put on a new play by Martha Collins. I spoke to several other members of the 1 *audience* and they all loved it. They commented afterwards on the quality of her 2 *script*. They were impressed by the 3 *costumes* the actors wore. They also found the 4 *stage* original and visually interesting. Most importantly of all, the 5 *production* was felt to be first class, with particularly strong 6 *performances* from the two leading actors. There were also positive comments on the 7 *screenplay*, which has been recently refurbished and has a large revolving 8 *set*. The people I spoke to all hope that the 9 *venue* in the national press will write rave 10 *reviews* about the show.

20.4

Ask questions for which these remarks would be suitable answers.

- Yes, it got rave reviews. *Was the play a success?*
- No, I'm not really a concert-goer, but thanks anyway.
- Oh, romantic comedies, I think.
- The cast were all good, but the direction was weak.
- A new Hungarian film; fancy going to see it?

20.5

Over to you

Choose a film and answer these questions about it.

- Who do you think gives the best performance in it?
- Who's the director?
- Where was it set?
- What is your favourite scene in it?
- What's the score like?
- Are there any particularly memorable lines in the dialogue?

A Downloading and managing your music

Downloading music as MP3¹ files is easy.

- You can download a whole **album** or individual **tracks**² onto your phone or computer.
- You can save your favourite albums and tracks in **playlists** so you can find them easily.
- You can **sync**³ (or, more formal, **synchronise**) the music files on your computer with your phone.
- You can also **stream**⁴ music from the Internet or from your computer to other rooms in your home if you have the right equipment.

¹ a popular type of audio file - you can listen to the files on a computer or mobile device of music from an album ³ have exactly the same files and data on more than one device real time from one source to another ² one song or piece ⁴ play music in

B A typical rock band

She's **lead singer** in a rock band. One of her brothers plays **lead guitar** and her other brother is a **keyboard player**, so it's a real family band.

What would you rather play in a band, drums or bass? I could never be a **drummer** but I think I could become a fairly good **bass guitarist**.

C Types of music



My family all have different **tastes** in music. My sister Niki loves **classical** music, my uncle Ben's a **folk** fan and my father loves **jazz**. I like **R&B**¹ and **hip-hop**². I even compose a bit of **rap**³ myself! My older brother is into⁴ 'The Beatles and other 60s music'⁵. My mother loves film **soundtracks**⁶ but I just find them uninteresting. One type of music I can't stand is the **canned music**⁷ you get in supermarkets and airports - It drives me crazy!

¹ Rhythm and Blues, originally a black American form of blues music with a strong rhythm ² a style of popular music where the words are spoken rather than sung ³ the words spoken in hip-hop music (can also be a verb) ⁴ interested in and enthusiastic about ⁵ music from the 1960s ⁶ music from a film or TV show ⁷ artificial or recorded music played in the background

D Collocations for musical activities

She plays the guitar but she doesn't **read music**. She **plays by ear**. She's got a **good ear**^{*}. She can **pick out**^{*} a **tune** on almost any instrument. She's a very **talented musician**. You can **make music** in lots of ways. You don't need to be a **trained musician** to enjoy music to the full.

* informal

Common mistakes

We say: **classical** music. (NOT *classie*) She loves **classical** music. (NOT *classie-musie*) Music is uncountable. They played **fantastic music** for an hour. (NOT *fantastic-musies*)

Exercises

21.1 Fill the gaps in the conversation.

HENRY: I've been listening to some songs from the new **album** by the Hoods. It's great. I downloaded them to my _____ on my phone, so I've got them in both places. I just got six _____, not the whole thing.

ANNA: Oh, right. I download music files but then forget to _____ them with my phone, so I don't have them when I travel! But I can _____ them from the computer in my study to the audio system in the living room, so I do get to listen to them. I've made some good _____ with my favourite tracks.

21.2 In a typical rock band ...

- ... who usually sings the songs? *the lead singer*
- ... who keeps the rhythm using two sticks?
- ... who plays the lowest musical notes?
- ... who plays an electric piano or organ?
- ... who plays the highest notes on the guitar?

21.3 Read the comments and then answer the questions.

Ross 'I must be the only person who actually likes the music in supermarkets.'

Emma 'I love the old original tracks by groups like The Beatles and the Rolling Stones.'

James 'I love the film and I'm going to buy the music from it. I often buy film music.'

Lauren 'I listen to the traditional songs of my country and try to learn them.'

Natalie 'I just love the way they can speak the words so fast - it's so clever.'

Liam 'I've always loved the blues and I like music with a strong rhythm.'

- Who likes soundtracks? *James*
- Who likes hip-hop? *James*
- Who likes 60s music? *James*
- Who is a folk music fan? *Emma*
- Who likes R&B? *James*
- Who likes canned music? *Ross*

21.4 Complete the missing words in this advertisement. You are sometimes given the first letter(s).

HELP WANTED

Do you have a good **ear** for music? Do you play a musical instrument **ear**? Can you **p** out a tune on an instrument you've never played before? We are looking for volunteers to take part in an experiment to investigate people's natural musical abilities. You don't need to be a tr musician and you don't need to be able to r music. If you just friends for fun, whatever kinds of m music, I you are a pop, we want to hear whether it's cl music. We believe there are many ta musicians out there from you. and we want to learn more about how you do it.



CALL 01255 7561447

21.5 Over to you

Write answers that are true for you.

- Can you remember the name of the first album you ever bought? Who was it by?
- How often do you download tracks or whole albums? Which do you prefer to do?
- Which kinds of music mentioned on the opposite page do you particularly like/dislike?
- Can you play any musical instruments and how well do you play them?
- What instrument and what kind of music would you like to be able to play well and why?

Talking about flavours and tastes - adjectives and some opposites (≠)

hot, spicy (e.g. curry) ≠ **mild** **bland** [very little flavour; rather negative]
salty [a lot of salt] ≠ **sugary** [a lot of sugar] **sickly** [too much sugar]
savoury / **savory** [pleasant, slightly salty or with herbs] ≠ **sweet**
sour [sharp, often unpleasant taste, like a lemon, and not sweet]
bitter [with an unpleasantly sharp taste] ≠ **tasty** [has a good taste/flavour] ≠ **tasteless** [no flavour at all]
moreish [having a pleasant taste, so you want to eat more]

I love **spicy** food, especially **curries** - the **hotter** the better! My sister prefers **mild** **curries**.
 Those cakes are too **sugary** for me. They have a **sickly** taste.
 They had some delicious **savoury** snacks at the party. They were very **moreish**.
 The breakfast buffet was very poor quality: the coffee tasted **bitter** and the fruit juice was **sour**.
 The food on the plane was **bland** and **tasteless** - it was like eating cardboard!

Appearance, presentation and quality of food

This meat is **overcooked/overdone** / **undercooked/underdone**.
 I'm afraid this mango is a bit **unripe**. They're not really **in season** at the moment. [not ready to eat; *opp* = *ripe*] [being produced and ready and available]
 This butter **has gone off**. I think we should throw it out. [not good to eat because it is too old]
 I don't feel like anything **heavy**. I just want something **light**; a salad would be fine.
 British cooking can be very **stodgy**. / **stodgy** [heavy, hard to digest]
 Zoe will only buy **organic** fruit and vegetables. [grown without artificial chemicals]
 We should try to have a **balanced diet**, without too much or too little of any particular thing.
 A diet of **junk food** can cause long-term health problems. [food that is unhealthy but easy and quick to eat]
Processed food in general is not good for you. [that has been treated with chemicals to preserve it or give it extra colour or taste]

Eating out



At most good restaurants, you usually have to **book a table** / **make a reservation** beforehand. If something happens, or you are ill, you may need to **cancel the booking/reservation**. In the UK a meal in a restaurant is typically three courses: a **starter**¹, a main course, then a dessert. You can often order **side dishes**². Some restaurants may have a **set menu** [a selection of dishes at a fixed price], or you can order individual dishes (called ordering **à la carte**). Restaurants often have **specials**³ advertised on a board. They often cater for vegetarians, **non-meat-eaters**⁴ and **vegans**⁵.

- ¹ light snack / appetiser
² dishes only available on that day
³ people who don't eat or use any animal products, such as meat, fish, eggs, cheese or leather
⁴ people who don't eat meat but who are not vegetarians
⁵ people who don't eat or use any animal products, such as meat, fish, eggs, cheese or leather

Eating at home

- HOST**:¹ Right, there's more soup. Who wants **seconds**²?
GUEST: Oh, yes, please. It was absolutely delicious.
HOST: There's bread here. Just **help yourself**³.
GUEST: Thanks.
HOST: Be sure to keep a bit of room for some **pudding**⁴.
 Can I **re-fill** your glass?
GUEST: Ah, yes, thank you.
HOST: **Say when**.
GUEST: **When!** That's fine. Thanks.

Exercises

22.1

Which **taste** and **flavour** words **opposite** could you use to describe the following?

- 1 a strong Indian curry **spicy** / **hot**
- 2 a pizza with cheese and herbs
- 3 sea water
- 4 an unripe apple
- 5 a cup of tea with five spoonfuls of sugar
- 6 extremely strong black coffee with no sugar

22.2

Using words from B **opposite**, what could you say to the person/people with you in a restaurant if ...

- 1 you had ordered a mild curry but got the opposite? *This curry is too hot / too spicy for me.*
- 2 the fish you ordered had obviously been cooked too much / too long?
- 3 you ordered melon and it was very hard?
- 4 your dish seemed to have no flavours at all?
- 5 there was too much salt in your soup?
- 6 someone at your table recommended a big steak but you just wanted a salad?
- 7 the dish you ordered was very heavy and difficult to digest?
- 8 a piece of chicken you ordered had not been cooked enough?
- 9 you wonder if the vegetables have been grown without artificial chemicals?

22.3

Read the comments and then complete the sentences with words and phrases from the opposite page.

- 1 Chris: 'I had to call the waiter to bring me a knife and fork.' Chris needed *(some cutlery)*.
- 2 Emma: 'If you want a dish not on the menu there's usually a blackboard with other dishes.' The restaurant usually has some *(some specials)*.
- 3 Oscar: 'The peanuts were free and I just couldn't stop eating them.' Oscar thought the peanuts were *(free of charge)*.
- 4 Tina: 'I needed one because I didn't want to spill food on my new dress.' Tina needed *(a napkin)*.
- 5 Jordi: 'I'm not a vegetarian; I just don't eat meat.' Jordi is a *(non-vegetarian)*.
- 6 Okas: 'I didn't like the set menu. I ordered individual dishes.' Okas ordered *(individual dishes)*.
- 7 Phoebe: 'It's a big student restaurant. You don't need to phone beforehand.' Phoebe said you don't need to *(make a reservation)*.
- 8 Krishnan: 'With my main course I ordered an extra bowl of chips and some mushrooms.' Krishnan ordered a couple of *(side dishes)*.
- 9 Emily: 'Everybody had colds so we phoned the restaurant and said we weren't coming.' Emily and her friends cancelled *(their booking)*.
- 10 Hannah: 'I had some prawns before the main course.' Hannah had *(some starters)*.

22.4

If you were the host at a dinner party, what could you say to your guests if ...

- 1 you offered them another serving of something? Who *wants seconds*?
- 2 you wanted them to serve themselves? Please *help yourself*.
- 3 you started to re-fill their glass? *Can I re-fill your glass?*
- 4 you offered them something sweet after the main course? Would you like *(some dessert)*?

Over to you

Write sentences that are true for you.

- 1 Which words from A and B **opposite** could you use to describe the food of your country or culture? Give some examples of dishes. Which fruit or vegetables are in season at different times of the year?
- 2 Describe your favourite dish, what is in it, how it is prepared, what flavours it has, etc.
- 3 How often do you eat junk food or processed food? Why? Do you have a balanced diet? In what ways?

23 Physical geography

Geographical features

You have to be careful about the use of 'the' with geographical features.

countries	use with 'the'?	example
countries which are in a plural form	no	France
individual mountains	yes	the USA, the Philippines
mountains in the Bernese Oberland	no	Mount Everest
mountain chains	yes	the Jungfrau / 'juŋfʁau/
islands	yes	the Himalayas /hɪmə'leɪjəz/
groups of islands	no	Sicily
rivers	yes	the West Indies
oceans	yes	the Volga
seas	yes	the Pacific
gulfs, bays and straits	yes	the Mediterranean /medɪtə'reɪniəm/
lakes	yes	the Gulf of Mexico, the Bay of Biscay, the Strait of Malacca
currents	no	Lake Erie
	yes	the Gulf Stream

Language help

Although most countries do not take 'the', they do need the definite article when they are followed by a phrase limiting the meaning, e.g. *the Japan of today*, *the France we know from paintings*, *the South America of the past*.

Geographical features in Iceland

Iceland An island republic in the North Atlantic. The landscape consists largely of **barren plains**¹ and **mountains**, with large ice fields particularly in the south west. The island has **active volcanoes**² and is known for its **thermal**³ springs and **geysers**⁴. With less than 1% of the land suitable for growing **crops**⁵, the nation's **economy** is based on fishing, and fish products account for 80% of the exports. **Area**: 103,000 km². **Population**: 318,000. **Capital**: Reykjavik.

- ¹ flat land where little grows
² volcanoes that still erupt
³ hot
⁴ hole in the ground that sends out hot water and steam
⁵ food that is grown

The sea, rivers and mountains

Where land meets sea: **coast**, **shore**, **beach**
Words connected with rivers: **valley**, **gorge** [valley with very steep sides], **stream** [small river]
Words connected with mountains: **foot**, **ridge**, **peak**, **summit**, **glacier** [river of ice]

Exercises

23.1

Find words on the opposite page that match the definitions.

- a movement of water in a particular direction *current*
- the wide part of a river at its mouth
- the top of a mountain (*two words*)
- the place where a river starts
- the land along the edge of a sea or lake
- a narrow stretch of sea between two areas of land
- a long piece of land sticking out into the sea or a lake
- a long narrow high part of a mountain

23.2

In the paragraph below all the instances of **the** have been omitted. Insert them wherever they are necessary.

Brazil is ~~the~~ fifth largest country in world. In north, densely forested basin of River Amazon covers half country. In east, country is washed by Atlantic. Highest mountain chain in South America, Andes, does not lie in Brazil. Brazil's most famous city is Rio de Janeiro, former capital. Today capital of Brazil is Brasilia.



23.3

Can you answer the following general knowledge geography quiz?

- What is the highest mountain in Africa? *Mount Kilimanjaro*
- What is the longest river in Europe?
- Where is the highest waterfall in the world?
- Name another country, apart from Iceland, which has geysers and hot springs.
- What is a delta and which famous river has one?
- Where are the Straits of Gibraltar and the Cape of Good Hope?

23.4

Find 17 more words for geographical features. Words go horizontally or vertically but not diagonally.



23.5

Give two nouns from the opposite page to go with the adjectives below. Try not to repeat any of the nouns you choose.

- sandy *beach*
- steep
- shallow
- rocky
- turbulent
- dangerous

23.6

Over to you

Draw a map of a country or area that interests you. Write the English names of its main geographical features on it. Write a paragraph about the geography of the area.

A The problems and their causes

A variety of environmental problems now affect our entire world. As globalisation¹ continues, local issues become international ones, so today there are few places in the world that do not suffer from environmental problems. Some of the major problems now affecting the world are acid rain², air pollution³, global warming⁴, hazardous waste, ozone depletion⁵, smog⁶, water pollution, overpopulation, and rainforest destruction⁸. People are also worried about the greenhouse effect, where an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide (CO₂) and other gases⁹ in the Earth's atmosphere¹⁰ causes a gradual warming of the surface of the Earth. This global warming is leading to the thawing of the polar ice caps¹¹ and all this is causing concern about climate change. Both human behaviour and climate change have led to many animal and plant species¹² becoming endangered¹³ or even extinct¹⁴.

- ¹ increasing business, cultural and other contacts between countries
² rain which contains harmful chemicals as a result of burning substances such as oil and coal [acid = a type of liquid that reacts chemically with other materials, sometimes dissolving them]
³ damage caused to the air by harmful substances or waste
⁴ rise in the world's temperature
⁵ dangerous
⁶ reduction in the ozone layer [layer of air above the Earth containing ozone which prevents harmful ultraviolet light from the sun from reaching Earth]
⁷ air pollution found in cities caused by a mixture of smoke, gases and chemicals (the word has been formed from smoke + fog)
⁸ destroying (cutting down) forest in a tropical area which receives a lot of rain
⁹ substance in a form that is neither solid nor liquid
¹⁰ the mixture of gases around the Earth
¹¹ ice covering the areas at the North and South Poles
¹² types
¹³ very few in number, at risk of becoming extinct
¹⁴ not existing any longer

Language help

The prefix **over-** means *too much*. **Overfishing** means that people have fished so much that it is having a serious effect on fish populations. **Overpopulated** means there are so many people living in an area that life is difficult there.

B Dealing with the problems

Worldwide efforts are being made to improve the situation. Green parties and green or ecological policies are mainly concerned with **protecting the environment**. Conservation organisations are developing nature reserves where plants and animals are protected. Some farmers produce **organic** food, which avoids the use of harmful chemicals. More companies try to behave in a way that is **environmentally friendly** or **ecologically sound**. Societies attempt to **dispose of waste** in a more responsible way, by, for example, **recycling** as much as possible. People aim to **reduce their carbon footprint** by using cars less so that they cut down on their use of fossil fuels, for example.

C Word families

noun	verb	adjective	adverb
globalisation	globalise	global	globally
environment, environmentalist		environmental	environmentally
pollution, pollutant	pollute	polluting	
destruction	destroy	destructive	
disposal	dispose	disposable	destructively
reduction	reduce	reduced	

Exercises

24.1

Answer each question, using a word or expression from the box.

acid rain carbon dioxide endangered species extinct global warming
 globalisation hazardous waste ozone layer polar ice caps destruction of rainforests
 smog water pollution

- What happened to dinosaurs about 65 million years ago? *They became extinct.*
- What is the name for a special layer in the Earth's atmosphere which helps protect our planet?
- What word can be used to describe the increasing contact between countries that has a major impact on life today?
- What causes problems because it is difficult to dispose of safely?
- What have scientists shown to be melting worryingly fast at the North and South Poles?
- What does the chemical symbol CO₂ represent?
- What has been happening in the Amazon area and in other tropical areas like Indonesia and Malaysia?
- What problem is a type of air pollution?
- What can cause harm to plant or other life when it falls on the land or sea?
- What is the Siberian tiger an example of?
- What has caused much plant and animal life in rivers in industrial areas to die out?
- What is the term for the phenomenon describing the rise in the Earth's average temperature?

24.2

Match words to form compound nouns.

1 acid	fuel	acid rain	6 greenhouse disposal
2 carbon	change		7 nature reserve
3 climate	party		8 organic depletion
4 fossil	footprint		9 ozone effect
5 green	rain		10 waste food

24.3 Choose a word from the opposite page to complete each sentence.

- An *environmentalist* is a person who does what they can to help protect the environment.
- items like plastic cups and paper plates are labour-saving but have a harmful effect on the environment.
- The government says it is aiming for a significant in this country's use of fossil fuels over the next ten years.
- The company plans to part of a nature reserve in order to build its new warehouses.
- Carbon monoxide (CO) is an example of an air Impact on the environment.
- The melting of the polar ice caps will have a of all recyclable items in these green bins.
- Staff can the lives of people with respiratory illnesses.
- Air pollution may friendly policies.
- This company is proud of its

24.4

Over to you

Answer these questions.

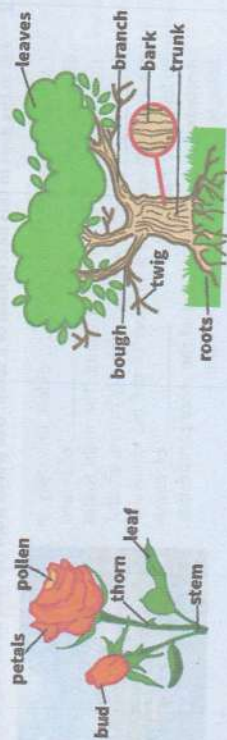
- Which of the environmental problems in A exist in your country?
- Do you think climate change is having any impact in your country?
- How much support do green parties have in your country?
- What could power cars instead of petrol or diesel?
- Suggest three things people can do to reduce their carbon footprint.

Write a description of the town where you live or another town you know well, using as much of the vocabulary from this unit as possible.

A Birds and animals

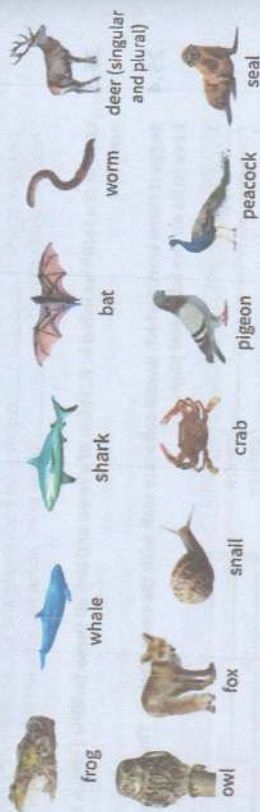


B Flowers and trees



C Specific animals

Here are the English names of some creatures that you may not know.



D Some verbs and collocations for talking about processes in nature

Our apple tree **flowers** / **blossoms** in April.

Let's **pick** some **flowers**.

These birds **lay** their **eggs** on the ground.

Bees collect **pollen** from flowers to make honey.

Some verbs can be intransitive (no object) or transitive (with an object):
These flowers **grow** very quickly. We **grew** some tomatoes in our garden last year.

These animals **breed** in the spring. My neighbour **breeds** Burmese cats and sells them.

Common mistakes

Remember, we **pick** flowers / fruit, we don't say **pick up**.

We **picked** some flowers and **put** them in a vase. (NOT **picked-up**)

We **pick** something up when it has fallen from its normal position or someone drops it.
A woman **dropped** her purse so I **picked it up** and gave it back to her.

Exercises

26.1

Answer the questions about the animals and plants on the opposite page.

- 1 Where does a bird lay its eggs? *in a nest*
- 2 What do bees help to move from one flower to another as they collect nectar to make honey?
- 3 What do we call the hairs that stick out from a cat's face?
- 4 Which part of a flower usually has the brightest colour(s)?
- 5 What do we call a horse's foot?

26.2

Put these words into two groups: 'animal words' or 'plant words'.

mane petal oak willow fox worm thorn horn bark stem claw owl

animal words	plant words
mane	

26.3

Fill in the blanks in the sentences below using words from the opposite page.

- 1 A tree's *roads* go a long way underground.
- 2 A cat can sharpen its against the of a tree.
- 3 Most fruit trees In spring.
- 4 Plants will not unless they get enough water and light.
- 5 Flowers last longer in a vase if you crush the end of their
- 6 A flower that is just about to open is called a
- 7 Take care not to prick yourself. That plant has sharp
- 8 If we pick up those we can use them to start the fire.
- 9 use a kind of radar to find their way around.
- 10 move very, very slowly.

26.4

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1 A large bough fell | ☒ a some herbs to put on our pizza. |
| 2 We picked up | ☐ b its feathers. It was beautiful. |
| 3 The scientists grew | ☐ c into the stream and swam away. |
| 4 The peacock opened | ☐ d from the tree during the storm. |
| 5 A frog jumped | ☐ e some apples that had dropped from the tree. |
| 6 We picked | ☐ f a new type of tomato that was very big. |

26.5

Answer the questions.

- 1 Which moves fastest and which moves slowest: a worm, a snail, or a deer? *a deer, a snail*
- 2 Which is the odd one out: a seal, a whale, or a crab?
- 3 Which of these animals has paws: a frog, a bat, a cat, a pigeon?
- 4 Which is correct? The bird *lay* / *laid* / *lied* three eggs.
- 5 Which is correct: (a), (b), or both? (a) He breeds horses. (b) Rabbits breed very quickly.
- 6 Which is a bird: a bat, a pigeon or both?

26.6

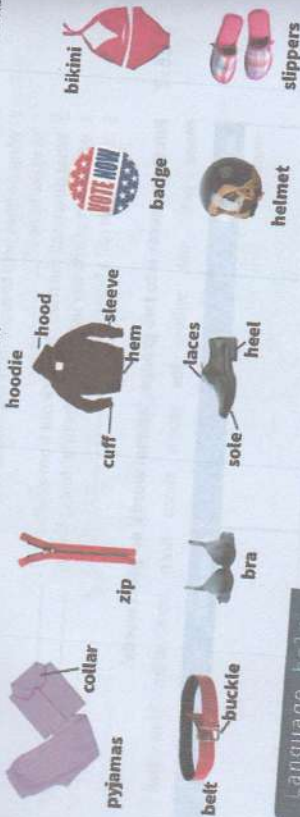
Over to you

A tulip is the national emblem of the Netherlands and a maple leaf represents Canada. What flower or animal is used as the national emblem of your country?
Find out what other plants or animals are national emblems of other countries.



A Some items of clothing

At this level you probably already know most of the everyday words for clothes. Here are some items of clothing or parts of them which are perhaps less familiar.



Language help

Most items of clothing covering the legs are plural words only. If you wish to count them, you need to say, e.g. **six pairs of trousers/shorts/tights/jeans/underpants** or **Jamie's football shorts** are too small for him now. I need to get him **a new pair**.

B Verbs associated with clothing

Can I try on these grey shoes in the window?
I love **dressing up** for parties as I normally wear jeans.
The skirt is too tight and too short - it needs **letting out** and **letting down**.
He **changed out of** his weekend clothes **into** his uniform.
Red usually doesn't **suit** people with ginger hair.
Her black bag **matches** her shoes.
Those shoes don't **fit** my son any more. He's **grown out of** them.

C Adjectives for describing people's clothing

How things fit: **baggy** [loose] **close-fitting** [tight]
Style: **long-sleeved** **sleeveless** **V-neck** **round-neck**
Materials: **denim** [jeans are usually made of this] **woollen**
[made of wool] **suede** [a kind of leather that isn't shiny]



D Other words and expressions useful for talking about clothing

Anna always looks very **elegant** even when she's dressed **casually**. [in a casual or informal way]
I don't think it's worth spending money on **designer** sunglasses. [made by a famous or fashionable designer]
Does your country have a special **national costume**?
Alessandra put her top on **inside out** - I can see the label!
The burglars wore **masks** and hoods as a **disguise** in the hope that no one would be able to recognise them on CCTV.

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

Exercises

27.1

Which words illustrated in A opposite fit best in the following sentences?

- I've eaten too much - I'll have to loosen my *belt*.
- I must get my black shoes repaired. One *heel* is broken and both the *soles* have holes in them.
- Do up your *hood* or you'll fall over.
- It's not very warm today. You should wear a *hoodie* over your shirt.
- Put your *zip* on - this floor is very cold.
- I've almost finished making my dress for the party but I've still got to take up the *hem* and sew on some *laces*.
- It's starting to rain - why don't you put your *slippers* up so you don't get wet.
- Come on, children. It's time for bed. Go and put your *pyjamas* on.
- You must wear a *helmet* when you ride a motorbike.
- Maya went on holiday last week. She packed her beach towel but forgot her *badge* so she couldn't go swimming.

27.2

Complete these sentences with any appropriate word. Use *pair* where it is necessary.

- Josh badly needs to buy a new *pair of jeans*.
- Blue *woollen* are a kind of international uniform for young people.
- It's too cold for *suede*. Put your trousers on.
- Dad needs some new underpants. Can you buy him three *pairs of shorts* today?
- I've got a hole in my tights. I'll have to change into a new *pair of tights*.

27.3

Write two items of clothing that collocate with these adjectives.

- close-fitting *top, jeans*
- baggy *trousers, jacket*
- checked *shirt, skirt*
- woollen *trousers, jacket*
- suede *trousers, jacket*
- denim *trousers, jacket*

27.4 Which words and expressions from D do these pictures illustrate?



27.5

Put the right verb, match, suit or fit, into each of these sentences.

- The blue dress *suits* her perfectly now she's had it taken in.
- The blue of her dress *matches* the blue of her eyes.
- That blue dress *fits* the girl with the blonde hair.
- I can lend you a pair of slippers if you like. I think these ones should *match*.

27.6

Over to you

Describe in as much detail as you can how you are dressed. Use as many words as you can from this unit.

What are your symptoms?



rash



bruise



lump



spots



a black eye

All these noun phrases can be used with the verb **have** (got). I've got ...
 ... a **sore throat** / a **temperature** [a higher temperature than normal] / **high/low blood pressure** / chest pains / **backache** / **earache** / a **pain** in my side / a **rash** on my chest / a **bruise** on my leg (e.g. after playing football) / a **black eye** (e.g. after being hit in the eye) / a **lump** on my arm / **indigestion** (after eating too fast) / **sickness and diarrhoea** / **sunburn** / a **virus**.

Verbs: My back is **aching**. I shouldn't have lifted all those heavy boxes.

My leg is **itching** - I think I've been bitten by an insect. [you want to scratch it all the time]

My hands are **trembling** after the shock of falling down. [shaking slightly]

I had a headache and started **shivering**. I knew it was the flu. [shake because you are cold]

My foot **hurts** from where I knocked it against the table.

I had a cold and it took me two weeks to **get over** it. [to get better; more formal = to recover from it]

Adjectives: I feel **sick** / **breathless** / **dizzy**. [my head is spinning]

I am **depressed** / **exhausted** / **stressed**.

Other expressions: I've **lost** my appetite / **voice**.

I think I've **picked up** a bug somewhere. [*infect* = caught a virus or infection]

I've **broken** my wrist / **sprained** my ankle / **dislocated** my shoulder.

She **died** of a heart attack.

He **contracted** AIDS. [*infect* = 'got']

My uncle **suffered** a stroke. [sudden change in the blood supply to a part of the brain, which can cause a loss of the ability to move particular parts of the body; *infirm* = 'had']

What does the doctor prescribe?

Take a **teaspoonful** of medicine last thing at night.

We'll get the nurse to put a **bandage** on your wrist.

You'll need to have some **injections** before you go to the Amazon.

I'm afraid you're going to need an **operation**.

You'll have to have your leg put in **plaster** until the break mends.

I'm going to give you some **tablets** - take one in the morning and one at night.

Common mistakes

A surgeon **operates on** a patient.

They **decided to operate on** her and **remove the tumour**. (NOT They decided to **operate-her**.)

Exercises

28.1

What problems from A opposite might result if someone ...?

- 1 eats too fast *indigestion*
- 2 kicks someone's leg while playing football
- 3 hits someone in the eye
- 4 eats bad, rotten food
- 5 lies too long in the hot sun
- 6 runs much too fast to catch a bus

28.2

Read the remarks and answer the questions.

Casper 'I must have picked up a bug when I was travelling.'

Delma 'My hand is covered in little red spots from where I touched that strange plant.'

Seth 'It's an unpleasant pain. I hope I haven't got an ear infection.'

Zoe 'The doctor said there's a risk I might suffer from heart disease if it continues.'

Write the people's names. Who has ...?

- 1 a rash? *Delma*
- 2 earache? *Seth*
- 3 a virus? *Casper*
- 4 high blood pressure? *Zoe*

28.3

Match the sentences on the left with the ones on the right.

- 1 My shoulder is itching. ☒ a I've been working too much.
- 2 My head hurts. ☐ b I feel so cold.
- 3 I'm shivering. ☐ c I think I need to see a psychiatrist.
- 4 I'm trembling. ☐ d I can't stop scratching it.
- 5 I'm really stressed and exhausted. ☐ e I banged it as I walked through the low doorway.
- 6 I'm depressed. ☐ f I feel very nervous and scared.

28.4

Match the pictures with the sentences.

A



B



C



D



E



F



- 1 They put a bandage on my ankle.
- 2 I had to have some injections.
- 3 My arm was in plaster for weeks.
- 4 I had to take two teaspoonfuls every night.
- 5 They operated me immediately.
- 6 I have to take two tablets every night at bedtime.

One of the sentences above contains a mistake. Correct it.

28.5

Answer the questions.

- 1 Which is correct? My aunt died (a) *with* (b) *of* a heart attack.
- 2 What is a more formal way of saying these? (a) He got AIDS in 2001. (b) She had a stroke.
- 3 What is an informal way of saying this? I had an infection but I recovered from it.

28.6

Over to you

Make a list of any of the problems mentioned in this unit that you yourself have had. What were the symptoms? What did you do to solve the problem(s)?

A History of health technology

Ancient Egypt Middle Ages	The earliest crutches were in use. Spectacles ¹ , probably invented by Arab scientists, were used to correct vision ² .
1500-1600 1800-1900	The first wheelchairs were developed. 1804: the first general anaesthetic ³ was used in an operation in Japan. 1896: X-rays ⁴ were first used in medicine.
1960-1970	The first contact lenses ⁵ were manufactured ⁶ .

- ¹ a more formal word for glasses ² the ability to see
you unconscious when you have an operation, so that you do not feel any pain
⁴ a type of radiation that makes possible photographs (also called 'X-rays') of hidden objects such as bones and organs in the body ⁵ a small piece of transparent plastic which is worn on the surface of your eye to improve your sight ⁶ made in large numbers, usually in a factory

B The present day

Medical technology has made **rapid**¹ **advances**² in recent **decades**³. Nowadays, a **vast**⁴ range of **devices**⁵ is available: people with heart problems **difficulties** wear **sophisticated**⁶ **hearing aids**⁷; people with heart problems wear **tiny pacemakers**⁸; **Artificial**⁹ **hips**¹⁰ and knees are common, and are **highly**¹¹ efficient. People who have lost an arm or a leg can have a **prosthetic**¹² leg or a modern **robotic**¹³ arm and hand, which they can use to pick things up like a natural hand. Eyesight problems can be corrected by **laser surgery**¹⁴.

¹ very fast ² improvements or developments ³ a period of 10 years ⁴ very wide ⁵ object or machine made for a particular purpose ⁶ clever in a complicated way and able to do complicated tasks ⁷ a small device put inside someone's ear to help them hear better ⁸ a small device put inside someone's chest to help their heart beat correctly ⁹ not natural, a copy made by humans ¹⁰ the joint which connects the leg to the upper part of the body ¹¹ very (more formal) ¹² made to replace a missing arm or leg ¹³ able to be controlled and moved by the user ¹⁴ medical operations using powerful narrow beams of light

C The future

- A recent TV documentary predicted the following **developments** in medical technology.
- **Scanners** which can **identify** health problems **at an early stage**¹ will become more and more sophisticated.
 - **Diagnosing**² illnesses from a distance. Patients will sit at their home computers, describe their symptoms and send information **automatically** to their doctor (for example, their **blood pressure**³ or body temperature) using instruments such as **thermometers** connected to their computer.
 - Computers and huge **databases** will provide doctors with more and more information and the **tools**⁴ to **treat diseases**.
 - **Keyhole surgery**⁵ will become more common. It will not be necessary to cut open a person's body to **operate on** them.

- ¹ during the first period of development ² name the exact character of a disease or a problem, by examining it
³ measure of the strength at which the blood flows through the body ⁴ something that helps you do something
⁵ medical operations in which a very small hole is made in a person's body to reach the organ or tissue inside

Exercises

29.1

Look at A opposite and answer the questions about medical technology.

- What did Arab scientists probably invent? *glasses* (two answers, one more formal)
- What began to be used in 1896 to enable doctors to take photographs of the inside of people's bodies?
- How did the ancient Egyptians help disabled people to walk?
- What alternative to glasses became popular in the 1960s and 1970s?
- How could disabled people move around as early as 1500 to 1600?

29.2

Rewrite the words in bold using words from A and B opposite.

- Medical scanners were **made** *manufactured* at this factory.
- Glasses were invented to correct **problems** with **eyesight**.
- Technology for medicine** has made **very fast progress** in the last **ten years** of **things** that make life better for people with medical problems.
- There is now a **large number** of **hips** that make **Copies of natural** hips are **very** efficient.
- Some disabled athletes can run as fast as able-bodied ones using **arms** that can be controlled directly by the person's brain.
- Scientists are working on **arms** that can be controlled directly by the person's brain.

29.3

Using words from the opposite page, say what each object is for.



1 a device for people with hearing difficulties



2



3



4



5



6

29.4

Complete the missing words. You are given the first letter(s). A preposition is missing in sentence 3. Add it.

- Doctors will be able to **identify** diseases at an early s in the future using sophisticated sc.....
- Doctors will be able to d a patient's illness from a distance. Patients will send information a to their doctor.
- K means doctors no longer need to open a patient's body when they operate them.
- Information on large computer d will help doctors t diseases and give them new t to cure illnesses.

29.5

Over to you

Have you used or experienced any of the examples of medical technology mentioned in this unit? How? When? Write true sentences.

A

Diet

Some types of food are **considered** to be **good** for our health. Others can cause **long-term**¹ health problems if they are **consumed**² in **large quantities**. Here are some examples.

healthy...	not so healthy...
oily fish (e.g. salmon)	sugary foods (e.g. fizzy ³ drinks)
fruit and nuts ⁴	food with a high fat or high salt content ⁵
wholemeal ⁶ bread	processed ⁷ food

- ¹ lasting a long time into the future ² eaten (m) ³ with a lot of bubbles ⁴ dry fruits of some trees with a hard shell ⁵ amount that is in the food ⁶ containing all the grain, with nothing taken out ⁷ treated with chemicals to preserve the food or to add taste or colour

Some foods are considered to be **superfoods** – foods that may prevent diseases and improve **mental**¹ as well as **physical**² health. Foods that are often **listed** as superfoods include:

- Blueberries: may improve **short-term**³ memory and **slow**⁴ the **ageing process**⁵.
- Apples: a good **source**⁶ of **vitamin C**; they can also **lower**⁷ **cholesterol**.
- Spinach: high in **vitamin A**; it can **boost**⁸ the **immune system**.
- Vegetable juice (especially tomato): can **reduce** the **risk**⁹ of heart disease.

- ¹ of the mind ² of the body ³ lasting a short time ⁴ make it happen more slowly
⁵ the changes to our body and mind by which we grow old ⁶ the place it comes from
⁷ reduce/take the level down ⁸ improve or increase ⁹ make less likely that it will happen

B

Lifestyle

Read the magazine extracts about lifestyle issues. Note the use of the adjective and noun forms of the same word.

There has been a **sharp rise**¹ in the number of children who are **obese**². Childhood **obesity** is now a **major**³ problem. Children often take too little exercise.

People often do not realise how stressful their jobs are. Stress can cause high blood pressure, increased risk of heart attacks and depression⁴.

- ¹ an increase that is sudden and quick ² extremely fat ³ very big and serious ⁴ a mental illness when someone is extremely unhappy and anxious for a long period ⁵ keep (m) ⁶ injury or damage

Language help

The nouns **food** and **fruit** can be both uncountable and countable. When we refer to food and fruit in general we use the uncountable form (e.g. *That restaurant serves good food / I love fruit*). The plural forms, **foods/fruits**, are used to refer to individual types or examples of food (e.g. *fatty foods, citrus fruits*). We always use **fish** in the singular.

Keeping fit need not be difficult. You can **maintain**⁵ a good level of **fitness** with a simple routine of daily exercise. Start exercising now!

Bad habits can cause serious **harm**⁶ to the body. Alcohol and tobacco are particularly **harmful** if consumed in large quantities over a long period.

Exercises

30.1 Rewrite the words in bold using words from A opposite.

- 1 If people eat these foods in **big amounts** *large quantities*, it may be dangerous.
 2 Certain foods are **thought** *by scientists to have a positive effect on* our bodies.
 3 Foods with a **lot of fat in them** *may cause health problems*.
 4 Some foods may cause *health problems that last long into the future*.

30.2 Match the adjectives and nouns to make five collocations to fill the gaps in the sentences below.

adjectives		nouns
oily	processed	wholemeal
		mental
		fizzy
		drinks
		bread
		fish
		health
		foods

- 1 *Wholemeal bread* is usually considered to be healthy because it contains the complete grain, with nothing taken out.
 2 *sugar content* may taste good when you're very thirsty, but they often have a high sugar content.
 3 Types of *Include salmon*.
 4 *often contain artificial colours to make them look more attractive*.
 5 Some foods can be good for our *as well as our bodies*.

30.3 Verb-noun collocations. Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- 1 Certain foods can slow ☒ a cholesterol.
 2 Some foods can boost ☐ b the risk of heart disease.
 3 Some foods can lower ☐ c the immune system.
 4 Other foods can reduce ☐ d the ageing process.

30.4 Can you remember which positive effect each of these foods may have? Choose your answers from 30.3 (a-d).

- 1 spinach ☒ 2 vegetable juice ☐ 3 apples ☐ 4 blueberries ☐

30.5 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one.

- 1 Blueberries can improve short-time memory. *term*
 2 Many fruits are a good source of vitamin C and provide mayor health benefits.
 3 Oily fishes should form part of a healthy diet.
 4 Which do you prefer to eat as a snack if you're hungry, fruits or nuts?
 5 A: There's a new Chinese restaurant in town. B: Good! I love Chinese foods.
 6 There has been a sharp raise in the number of people suffering from depression.

30.6 Complete the two versions of each sentence. Use related word forms, as in the example.

- 1 Tobacco and alcohol can cause a lot of *harm* / can be *harmful* to our health.
 2 Children who are *who suffer from* need to exercise more.
 3 Her job is very *causes her a lot of* and is very tiring.
 4 How can we *keep* / *maintain* a good level of *regularly*? The answer is to get regular / to /

30.7 Over to you

List the foods that you eat most regularly. How many are (a) healthy (b) not so healthy? Do you consume any superfoods? Why? Why not?

A

Here is some basic vocabulary for different kinds of travel

transport	kinds of vehicle	parts of vehicle	people working with it	associated words
road	car, bus, coach, tram, van, lorry	boot, steering wheel	driver, motorist, mechanic, chauffeur	petrol station, break down, breakdown service
rail	high-speed train, express	sleeping car, buffet, coach	ticket collector, conductor	platform, seat reservation
sea	liner, ferry, yacht	deck, bridge, gangway	captain, steward(ess)	port, cabin, cruise
air	aircraft, jumbo jet, helicopter	cockpit, wings, aisle /aɪəl/	ground staff, cabin crew, air traffic controller	duty-free shop, terminal, runway, security

B

Journey, trip, travel, voyage

A **trip** is usually shorter than a **journey**. We had a **long journey** by coach from the north to the south of the country. We usually say **business trip** (NOT **business journey**). We took a **trip** / **went on a trip** to the beach last weekend. (Go on a **trip** suggests an organised short excursion, whereas **take a trip** or **have a trip** could be something you do yourselves in your own car.)

Travel is a general word. It is an uncountable noun and a verb. **Travel** broadens the mind. How did you **travel** round Australia? We hitch-hiked.

Voyage means a long journey usually by sea, though this use is quite formal. It is often used in other contexts with 'discovery'. Learning English is a **voyage** of discovery!

C

Collocations and expressions connected with travel

ELENA: 'My flight from New York to Tokyo was **severely delayed**¹ because of bad weather, then later it was cancelled and I was **stuck at the airport**. The airline **put me up**² in a hotel overnight, and they **put me on standby**³ for the **early morning flight** the next day. Luckily, I managed to **get a seat** and the flight left on time⁴ at 7.00 am. There was quite a lot of **turbulence**⁵ during the flight, which was scary at times. When we finally got to Tokyo, the weather was bad and we had a **bumpy landing**⁶. Luckily, I don't **get airsick**⁷ but I had terrible **jetlag**⁸ for days afterwards.'

¹ delayed for a very long time ² unable to move from ³ paid for me to stay ⁴ promised me a seat if one became available ⁵ punctually ⁶ strong, sudden movements while the plane was in the air ⁷ we landed in a way that was not smooth ⁸ feel sick because of the movement of the plane; more formal = **suffer from airsickness** ⁹ had a feeling of tiredness caused by moving quickly from one time zone to another

Pieter: 'I'd always wanted to **sail** across the Mediterranean, though I was worried I might **get seasick**. Anyway, I volunteered to work as a **crew member on board** a yacht and it was an amazing experience. Everything **ran very smoothly**, even when the sea was **rough**¹, and I never **suffered from seasickness**².'

¹ rough = a calm sea ² less formal = I never got seasick

Common mistakes

We don't say 'a travel'. **Travel** is an uncountable noun. After we left the airport, we had a **long journey** by car. (NOT we had a long travel) Remember, we say on time, not in time when we mean 'punctually'. The train arrived on time and I picked her up at the station. (NOT The train arrived in time)

Exercises

31.1 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 The customs officer stopped the car | ☒ a and they couldn't get a cabin. |
| 2 The car broke down | ☐ b and they had nothing to eat. |
| 3 The air traffic controllers went on strike | ☐ c and they had a wonderful cruise. |
| 4 The buffet was closed | ☐ d and the driver had to open the boot. |
| 5 The ferry was full | ☐ e and a mechanic came to help them. |
| 6 The liner was very modern | ☐ f and their flight was cancelled. |

31.2 Sort the words according to the type of transport. One of the words fits in two places. Which is it?

jumbo jet port express steering wheel coach helicopter gangway runway tram wing chauffeur platform ground staff van cockpit lorry liner deck

road	rail	air	sea
steering wheel			

31.3 Choose the best word flight, journey, trip, travel or voyage to fit these gaps.

- I would love to **travel** round the world in a balloon.
- The liner *Titanic* sank on its very first **voyage**.
- How long does the **journey** from New York to Rio take?
- She says her hobbies are reading, golf and **travelling**.
- When they were in Cairo they took a **trip** to see the Pyramids.
- Getting from London to the north of Scotland involves a long overnight train **journey**.

31.4 Read these travel blogs and fill the gaps with words from the opposite page.

Erik's Blog (24 June)

The flight from Huacabo to Puerto Arango was **severely delayed** (six hours). I was worried I'd get **seasick** at the airport (and hoped that the airline would **put me up** in a nice hotel) but anyway the flight wasn't **so bad** and we finally took off. The weather was awful, and we experienced a lot of **turbulence**. In fact, the flight was so **bumpy** that I got a **headache** (very unpleasant). But the **crew** were very friendly and helpful, which made me feel better. The **flight** was not so bad and soon we were at the **destination** collecting our baggage. I slept well last night - I think I've got over the **jetlag**. I had after my 12-hour flight from Europe.

Mona's Blog (5 July)

I didn't have a reservation for the Eurostar train from Paris to London, but they put me on **standby** and I got a **seat** on a later train. It was a good journey, everything ran **smoothly** and it arrived **on time**. In London, I enquired if there was a **transfer** to Scotland so I could travel overnight. The alternative was a hotel and the **train** at 6.30 am (too early for me). When I got to Scotland I want to go to some of the islands. I hope the sea is **calm**. I hate **rough** seas - I always get **seasick**!

31.5

Over to you

Give answers that are true for you, and reasons.

- How often do you travel by train? Have you ever been on a high-speed train?
- Which do you prefer on a plane, a window or an aisle seat? Why? Do you usually visit the duty-free shop? What do you look for? What do you do before going through security?

A

Places to stay and types of holiday

campsite: a place where you can **pitch** a tent or park a **caravan**

self-catering flat/apartment: a flat which you rent; you cook for yourself

youth hostel: cheap accommodation like a hotel but cheaper and with fewer services

sleeping in **bunk beds** in one room

package holiday: a holiday in which you pay for travel, accommodation and food (even occasionally excursions) in advance

cruise: a holiday spent touring (or **cruising**) on a boat, stopping off to go sightseeing at different ports

an adventure holiday: a holiday involving unusual, exciting and possibly dangerous activities - suitable for **adventurous** people

B

Holiday messages



Dear Zara

Having a wonderful holiday. It's so nice to **get away**¹. We're staying at an amazing **campsite** up in the mountains. It's very **remote**² and we had to drive up an unbelievably **winding**³ road to get here. But once we made it, the views over the **surrounding**⁴ countryside made the **terrifying**⁵ drive worthwhile. I'm sending a photo of our camping spot.

Love, Sami



Dear Nico

This is turning out to be probably the most **memorable**¹ holiday I've ever had. The town is absolutely **fascinating**² with lots of very **impressive**³ buildings. Our hotel is **delightful**⁴ - if a little **inconvenient**⁵ from the transport point of view - and the food in this area is **exceptional**⁶. These are some of the old buildings in the town. Wish you were here too!

Francesca

- 1 one that will always be remembered (a **memorable** holiday) is a strong collocation) 2 extremely interesting 3 grand, making an impact 4 charming 5 hard to get to 6 unusually good



C

Holiday brochures

These are often written in quite exaggerated language. Here are some typical adjectives with nouns that they collocate with.

breathtaking views / scenery / pikes (ski slopes) [breathtaking (like **stunning**) suggests that something is so magnificent that it takes your breath away]

exclusive access / club / shops [only the most special people can use the facilities]

exhilarating feeling / ride / walk [makes you feel excited and full of energy]

exotic beauty / charm / location [unusual and more exciting than your everyday reality]

glamorous surroundings / film star / hotel [especially exciting and attractive]

luxurious cruise ship / accommodation / lifestyle [provides great comfort]

picturesque streets / villages / cottage [very pretty; attractive to look at - as pretty as a picture]

unspoilt charm / villages / woodland [still in a beautiful and natural state]

unique opportunity / charm / facilities [so special it does not exist anywhere else]

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

Exercises

32.1

Complete this table. Use a dictionary to help you, if necessary.

adjective	noun	verb
fascinating	fascination	
delightful		
exhilarating		
glamorous		
luxurious		

32.2

Fill in the gaps in this holiday message with appropriate adjectives from the opposite page.



Hi,

Am having a wonderful holiday here. The town here is very old and quite 1 *fascinating*. The guidebook says it is remarkable for its 2 *charm* and it is right! It is surrounded by magnificent mountains and yesterday I went for an 3 *climb*. Even though it isn't too expensive, the hotel is quite 4 *delightful* and the view from my balcony is 5 *glamorous*.

Wish you were here!

Love, P

32.3

Complete these sentences with a word from the opposite page.

- At the youth hostel Anya insisted on sleeping in the top *bunk*.
- As soon as we got to the campsite we *access* to our own private beach.
- Visitors to our hotel have *exclusive* our tent.
- It's often cheaper to go on a *holiday*, where everything is paid for in advance.
- I'd love to hire a boat and spend an month *round* the Mediterranean, wouldn't you?
- I wouldn't recommend that hotel. It's extremely *terrifying*; it's seven miles to the nearest beach and ten miles to the town.
- Our trip to South Africa was undoubtedly the most *exclusive* holiday I've ever had.
- A narrow *road* led up the mountain to the cottage we'd rented.

32.4

Which of the adjectives from C could describe each of these?

- a club which only a select group of members can go to *an exclusive club*
- a hotel with very expensive facilities and very attentive staff *exclusive*
- a village with very pretty buildings and lots of flowers *picturesque*
- a view from the top of a mountain over a magnificent landscape *glamorous*
- the opportunity to go on a once-in-a-lifetime holiday *unique*
- a walk along a windswept beach *exclusive*

32.5

Over to you

Answer these questions. Write sentences.

- Which of the holiday places and types of holiday in A have you or your friends experienced?
- Which would you prefer and why - a holiday in the centre of a historic city or one in a remote village with spectacular surrounding countryside?
- What's the most memorable holiday you've ever had?
- Which would you say is the most impressive city you've visited?
- What would you say is the most fascinating place you've been to?
- Have you ever had a holiday experience you'd describe as terrifying?

33 Science and technology

A New sciences

You are probably familiar with the **traditional branches** of science, e.g. chemistry, physics, botany and zoology. But what about these more recently **established fields**?

field	definition / applications
genetic engineering	Works with genetic material (DNA) of living things to alter ¹ features ² . GM foods (genetically modified foods) are grown in some parts of the world.
ergonomics	Studies the design of physical working spaces and how people interact ³ with them.
molecular biology	The study of the structure ⁴ and function ⁵ of the molecules ⁶ associated ⁷ with living things.
voice technology	Technology which enables ⁸ machines to interpret ⁹ speech, e.g. voice-to-text software.
stem cell research	The study of the use of human cells ¹⁰ to treat diseases and injury and to repair the body.
cloning	The creation ¹¹ of exact copies of plants or animals with the same genes as the original plants or animals.
hydroponics	The science of growing plants without using soil ¹² .

- ¹ change, usually slightly ² typical qualities or important parts ³ communicate with or react to
⁴ the way that parts of a system are organised ⁵ purpose ⁶ the basic chemical units / groups of atoms
⁷ connected in our mind ⁸ makes possible ⁹ decide the intended meaning of ¹⁰ smallest basic part
of a plant or animal ¹¹ making something new that did not exist before ¹² the top layer of the earth's
surface, in which plants grow

B Everyday technology



C Verbs used in science and technology

Note the collocations in **bold**.
He **experimented** with different materials before **utilising**¹ the most suitable one.
The technician **pressed a button** and **lights started flashing**.
When she **pulled the large lever**², the wheel began to **rotate**³.
The zoologist **dissected**⁴ the animal and **extracted**⁵ its organs.
When they were combined, the two chemicals **reacted** violently with each other.
After **analysing** the problem, she **concluded** that there was a **flaw**⁶ in the theory.
Insert⁷ the disk into the DVD drive to **install**⁸ the software or visit the website to download it.
¹ use (for technical/scientific) ² bar or handle that moves in order to control something (e.g. a machine)
³ turn (for technical/scientific) ⁴ cut open (usually a dead body or plant) to study its parts ⁵ took out (for technical/scientific)
⁶ fault, mistake or weakness ⁷ put in (for technical/scientific) ⁸ make it ready to use

Exercises

33.1

Fill the gaps with words from A. Then say what branch of science each person is probably talking about.

- We grow the plants in liquids, without using *oil*. Science: *hydroponics*
- The software I your speech and e you to turn it into text. Science:
- We're interested in workplaces and how people i with their working environment. Science:
- People are often worried. They feel that the c of an exact copy of an animal is not morally right. Science:
- We study how human c can be used to rebuild our bodies and to repair them when they are injured. Science:
- My work is concerned with the s and f of the organic molecules a with living organisms. Science:
- Many people refuse to eat g m foods. They consider GM foods to be unnatural. Science:
- By manipulating DNA, we can a hereditary f Science:

33.2 What item do you think each person needs from B?

1

'I keep losing my way and I'm not good at reading maps.'

2

'My phone is so old I can't take any videos with it.'

3

'I'd love to be able to look at my photos any time I want to.'

4

'My old camcorder doesn't produce really sharp movies.'

5

'It was a fantastic film. I didn't mind wearing the special glasses. It was so realistic. I'd love to be able to do that at home.'

6

'I want something like a laptop with a touch screen that I can watch films on or read ebooks.'

33.3

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1 These chemicals | ☒ a that button, it turns the printer on. |
| 2 If you pull | ☐ b to flash after a few seconds. |
| 3 The zoologist extracted | ☐ c react with each other. |
| 4 When you press | ☐ d in the theory. |
| 5 They experimented | ☐ e that lever, it starts the machine. |
| 6 I believe there is a flaw | ☐ f the animal to see why it died. |
| 7 They had to dissect | ☐ g the organs from the animal. |
| 8 A red light started | ☐ h with different liquids. |

33.4

Use technical/scientific words from C instead of the words in bold.

- The wheel began to **turn** very quickly.
- Put in** the disk to **get the software ready to work**
- We can **put these chemicals together**
- You should **use** the strongest material.
- We **looked into** the problem and **decided** that it was a computer virus.

A Hardware [computer equipment or machinery]

personal computer / PC / desktop computer: a computer that fits on a desk, used by individuals at work or at home

laptop (computer): a lightweight portable computer that usually fits in a briefcase

tablet: a portable personal computer operated by a touch screen

hard disk: a **device** [piece of equipment] inside a computer that stores large amounts of information

disk drive: a device that allows information to be read from a disk

scanner: a device for transferring pictures and texts into a computer

memory stick: a small device that lets you carry computer data anywhere conveniently; you can then **plug the stick into** any machine

RAM (random access memory / memory): the **memory** available on a computer to store and use information temporarily; can be measured in **gigabytes**

(micro) chip: a very small piece of semiconductor, especially in a computer, that contains extremely small electronic circuits and devices, and can perform particular operations

network: when a number of computers, for example in one office, are connected together (or **networked**) so that they can share information

B Software [computer programs that you install]

An **application** is a piece of software designed for a specific purpose. This is often shortened to **app**. You can get mobile phone apps for all sorts of things these days.

word-processing: writing and storing printed text on a computer

spreadsheet (program): a program, or the grid you create with it, to perform mathematical operations

database: a large amount of information stored in a computer system in such a way that it can be easily looked at or changed

(computer) graphics: pictures, images and symbols that you can form on a computer

virus: hidden instructions in a program designed to destroy information

display: what you see on the screen of an electronic device

A computer shows a range of **icons** on its **display**. You put the **cursor** on the one you want to use and click on it to open it.

C Some computing verbs

You probably **store** a lot of important information on your computer. So, it's sensible to **back up** all your files on a regular basis. Then it'll be less of a problem if you **delete** something accidentally or if your computer **crashes**.

A particularly useful feature of most applications is the one that allows you to **undo** what you have just done - just **click** on Undo and it's quick and easy to correct anything that you have **keyed in** by mistake. After a few years you may want to **upgrade** your computer as they are always developing machines which are faster and more powerful. If you don't do this you may not be able to **run** all the software you need. You can usually just **download** upgrades to your computer's operating system or to your applications from company websites.

Exercises

34.1

Match the words in the box to the pictures below.

laptop cursor spreadsheet desktop computer tablet icon scanner memory stick microchip



34.2

Fill in the blanks with appropriate words from the opposite page.

- 1 It's so easy to use a **scanner** when you want to send a handwritten document to someone by email. It's just like using a photocopy.
- 2 I've lost a lot of data. I wonder if my computer has a **cursor**.
- 3 A lot of people carry their **memory sticks** on aeroplanes and work on them during the flight.
- 4 I've got such a lot of photos, music and videos stored on my computer that my **hard disk** is almost full.
- 5 That computer game you gave me has got amazing **graphics** - the people just look so realistic!
- 6 One of my most important tasks at work is to keep the **database** up to date so that customers' contact details are always accurate.
- 7 If you put the **spreadsheet** in the middle of a paragraph of text and double click, you select the whole paragraph.
- 8 I downloaded a fantastic **application** the other day - it tells me where the nearest cash machine is to wherever I am in the world.
- 9 **Software** programs make it very easy to write text and to format it.
- 10 It's miraculous how much data can be stored on that tiny little computer inside your mobile phone.

34.3

Answer the questions using a verb from C opposite.

- 1 What do you do when you want to add new information to, for example, a database? *You key it in.*
- 2 If you don't want to lose computer data, what must you do?
- 3 If you notice you've repeated a paragraph in an essay, what can you do?
- 4 You want to open your spreadsheet program, so what should you do?
- 5 If your computer is old and working very slowly, what might you consider doing?
- 6 If you accidentally delete some text you've just been working on, what can you do?
- 7 What can you do to immediately get hold of music or a film from an Internet store?
- 8 If you buy new software when you have an old operating system, what may you find?

34.4

Over to you

Answer these questions.

- 1 Do you use a desktop, a laptop or a tablet?
- 2 How much RAM do you have?
- 3 Which apps do you use most frequently?
- 4 How often do you back up your data?
- 5 Has your computer ever crashed?
- 6 Have you ever accidentally deleted anything?

The Internet

The Internet / the net is a network connecting millions of computer users worldwide. The World Wide Web / the Web is a huge portion of the Internet containing linked documents, called **pages**.

If you have a **broadband** connection then your **access** to the Internet should be fast. Many cafés and other public places now offer people a **wi-fi** / **WiFi** / **connection** to the Internet - this means that you can **access** the Internet through a **wireless network**, i.e. without needing a **cable** of any kind.

When you **browse**, you look for information on the Internet. The software that helps you do this can be called a **browser** (e.g. Internet Explorer® or Firefox®). You use a **search engine** to help you find out what you want. Google® is one of the best known search engines and people now talk about **googling** someone or something. You can easily spend a lot of time **surfing the net** / **the Web**. (navigating around the Internet, sometimes aimlessly)

A **website** is a document on the Web giving information about a particular subject, person or institution. The introductory page is called the **home page**. From this there are **links** to other pages. Good websites are easy to **navigate** or find your way around. One option on many websites is an **FAQ** page. This stands for 'frequently asked questions', a list of common questions and helpful answers. You can **bookmark** websites that you **log on** to frequently.

If a website gets a lot of **hits**, that means that it has been visited by a lot of people.

Sometimes you need to **subscribe** to a site, which means you become a member of it. This may involve having a special **username** and choosing a **password**. You will only be able to **log in** to the site if you **enter** this information correctly.

You can store your data on your computer or phone, or you can store it in the **cloud**¹.

¹ **opp = log off** ² **opp = log out** ³ a network of servers on the Internet where data can be stored and accessed from any device

Online communication



You can communicate with others by email. With an email you can attach an **attachment**. You can **attach** a photo, for example. You can also send an **e-card**. A **server** is a powerful central computer from which other computers get information. If your (ISP) **Internet service provider's** server is down (not functioning), you may not be able to send emails.

You can use your computer to **skype** friends and family - the software that you use to make phone calls using your computer and the Internet, and you can see which people on your **contact list** are online at the same time. If you use a **webcam**, you can see each other as you talk.

Many modern online programs can be called **interactive**, i.e. they can become involved in the exchange of information, for example **social networking** sites like Facebook are a popular way for people to keep in touch with their friends.

A **wiki** is a website which allows users to add, delete and edit its content. Wikipedia is perhaps the world's largest wiki. **Blogs** are also interactive. They are a kind of online diary that readers can add comments to. Many people are involved in **online gaming**, playing with people who they have never met. These games make use of **virtual reality**, a set of images and sounds that the computer, which represent a place or a situation that the gamer can take part in.

Exercises

1.1 Which word from the box matches each definition?

attachment bookmark browser contact-list navigate Internet service provider
password search engine server cloud

- 1 email addresses, phone numbers, etc. for the people you know **contact list**
- 2 something that you send with an email **attachment**
- 3 an individual combination of letters and digits that you use to log in to a website **password**
- 4 a way of accessing a favourite website quickly **bookmark**
- 5 software that allows you to surf the web **browser**
- 6 a company that enables you to use the web **Internet service provider**
- 7 software that helps you to locate the websites that you need **search engine**
- 8 a large computer that holds information that can be accessed by smaller computers **server**
- 9 to find your way around a website or between websites **navigate**
- 10 a network of servers where you can store your data on the Internet **cloud**

1.2 Choose a word from the opposite page to complete each sentence.

- 1 WWW stands for World Wide **Web**.
- 2 I read that journalist's every day - he's always got something interesting to say and often readers add some very interesting comments.
- 3 I couldn't the Internet last night. The server must have been as well as talking to them.
- 4 It's wonderful being able to my cousins who live in Australia - I love seeing them.
- 5 I've decided to to my favourite newspaper's website. It doesn't cost much and it has lots of interesting stuff there.
- 6 I like this website because it has lots of very useful to all sorts of other sites that interest me.
- 7 My brother loves online gaming, particularly reality games.
- 8 An website is one which allows users to add comments to it or edit its content in some way.

1.3 Are these statements true or false? If they are not true, correct them.

- 1 Google® is the name of a browser. **False - Google is the name of a search engine.**
- 2 FAQ stands for Fast Answers to Questions.
- 3 If a café says that it has wi-fi access, you can get online with your laptop there.
- 4 A wiki is a kind of computer device.
- 5 When you want to use some websites you may be asked to enter a password.
- 6 If you send someone an e-card they will receive it in the post.
- 7 When you want to stop using the net, you log on.
- 8 A website's home page is the one where you will find key information about the site and links to its other pages.

Over to You

Answer these questions about yourself.

- 1 What do you mainly use the Internet for?
- 2 What is your search engine of choice?
- 3 Which websites have you bookmarked?
- 4 How often do you use social networking sites?
- 5 Do you write a blog or read anyone else's blog?
- 6 Do you enjoy online gaming?

36 Social media

A Social media verbs

My friend **posted** a video of her baby and it was shared over a thousand times!

Send me a **friend request**, and then you can see the pictures I took.



B A social media app

Here's our round-up of the latest apps. This month we loved **Catnap**, a new social media app that allows users to share information about their favourite pets.

We found it very easy to use. You create a **profile** of your cat, upload a favourite **photo** and include some basic information about it (age, colour, favourite food). You can then **post updates** about what your cat has been doing, **share links**¹ to things you find interesting or **comment** on other cats' profiles. You can **rate** videos of other cats' adventures (from one to five stars) or see how many **views**² or **likes**³ your post got. The most popular post each month wins a prize!

We found it a little annoying that you can't turn off **notifications**⁴ when a friend writes something new, but overall cat lovers will adore it. Highly recommended.



C Online privacy

Top tips for staying safe online

On social media, it's important to think about who can see your personal information:

- If you have to give personal information (e.g. date of birth, address) when you **create an account**, make sure that it's kept **private**. It's better not to give this information if you don't have to.
- Always check your **privacy settings** [choices on your account about what people see on your profile] regularly and make sure you understand who can see what you post. For example, often your **profile picture** is **public**, but you can usually make posts on your **timeline** [collection of photos and other posts on your profile] **private**.
- Remember that if you are **tagged** [your name and a link to your profile is added] in someone else's post, it might be seen by a lot of people you don't know. You can ask people to remove the **tag** if necessary.
- Use **direct messages** [messages that only the people in the conversation can see] for private conversations, especially if you discuss where you live, paying for things, etc.
- Delete old **accounts** on sites that you are not using any more. You might forget what information they contain, or the **default** [what happens automatically if you don't change it] privacy settings might change.

Language help

Many of the words in this unit are used as both nouns and verbs. For example:

24 people **liked** my post.
My post **got** 24 **likes**.
I **commented** on her status.
I **wrote** a **comment** on her status.

- 1 connections to other websites
- 2 times people have watched it
- 3 times people have clicked 'like'
- 4 messages to tell you when something has happened

Exercises

36.1 Fill in the gaps with the words below.

- | follow | request | post | share | subscribe | status |
|-----------------------------------|---|-----------------------|-------|-----------|--------|
| 1 If you liked this video, please | share | it with your friends. | | | |
| 2 I hate it when people | hundreds of photos from their holiday. | | | | |
| 3 Do you know Monica Coto? | She's just sent me a friend | | | | |
| 4 I just updated my | to tell people we've arrived safely at the hotel. | | | | |
| 5 You can | to our channel, and we'll email you when a new video comes out. | | | | |
| 6 No likes to | chefs and food writers on Twitter. | | | | |

36.2 Circle the correct word.

- 1 I've just uploaded **comments** / **photos** of Saturday's football match to the team Facebook page.
- 2 Yi Ling **posts** / **views** a lot of updates about her training for the 10k run.
- 3 Jo posted a really interesting article about Formula 1 racing, but it didn't get any **likes** / **rates**.
- 4 To enter the competition, **share** / **view** this picture on your timeline before 8 pm on Friday.
- 5 Did you **rate** / **upload** that restaurant we went to? I'd give it one star!
- 6 Elena made a video for the animal charity she works for and it got 3,000 **views** / **uploads**.
- 7 An old friend **commented** / **viewed** on one of my photos, asking where I was living now.

36.3 What do we call...?

- 1 The page with information about the user of social media: **profile**
- 2 The photo of the user: _____
- 3 The page where a person's photos and posts appear: _____
- 4 The message a person receives when something new happens: _____
- 5 Part of a private conversation: _____

36.4 Fill the gaps with words from C opposite.

- 1 I'm a teacher, so I make sure everything in my profile is **private**.
I don't want my students to see it.
- 2 To find your **p** _____ settings, click on the 'lock' icon at the top of the screen.
- 3 If you want everyone to be able to see that post, make sure that it's **p** _____.
- 4 Please don't **t** _____ me in any of those photos - I look terrible!
message.
- 5 If you want to buy the skirt, please send me a **d** _____.
- 6 To create an a _____, you have to give your email address and a password.
- 7 The **d** _____ setting for new posts on this site is Friends Only, but it's easy to change if you want to share something publicly.

36.5 Over to you

Answer these questions about yourself.

- 1 What was the last thing you posted on social media?
- 2 How many views and/or likes did it get?
- 3 How often do you comment on other people's posts?
- 4 Have you checked your privacy settings recently? Is your profile public or private?

A Radio and television

Read these extracts from TV listings.

4.00 pm	Jessica: talk show ¹ with Jessica Brown; today's guest, Roma Friedle	7.00 pm	Documentary: Are we killing our kids? Investigating ² the junk food industry
5.00 pm	Cartoons ³ ; crazy fun for kids of all ages	8.00 pm	The Harry Potter: sitcom ⁴ about a pair of newly-weds
5.30 pm	Golden Chance: game show ⁵ with Bob Laughey	9.00 pm	Roadtrip: sports programme with all the day's top action - tonight: rugby's final
6.00 pm	News and weather forecast	10.00 pm	The Day in Politics: current affairs ⁶ final programme. Presenters: James Hill
6.30 pm	Dodbury Street: the nation's favourite soap ⁷	10.30 pm	Bikidol: detective drama set in Norway. Episode ⁸ 3: A second body is found

1 usually has a host and famous people who answer questions about themselves 2 film where the characters are drawn rather than real 3 show where people compete to win prizes 4 short for soap opera - a series of TV/radio programmes about the lives of a particular group of characters, continuing over a long period and broadcast (several times) every week 5 trying to find out the facts/truth about something 6 funny TV/radio show where the same characters appear in a different story each week 7 news about political events happening now 8 person who introduces the show 9 one of the parts into which a story is divided

B Other expressions connected with TV and radio

The (mass) media refers to TV, radio, newspapers and the Internet, i.e. means of communication which reach very large numbers of people.

Subtitles enable people to read what the characters are saying (maybe in translation). If a film is dubbed, you hear the speech in your own language.

To receive a lot of TV channels, you may need a satellite dish on the roof or wall of your house. Many channels depend on (TV) commercials to make money. You may be able to stream radio and TV broadcasts from the Internet and you may be able to watch catch-up TV, or TV on demand, which allow you to watch programmes whenever you like. A lot of radio and TV stations offer free podcasts which you can download.

C Newspapers

A popular or tabloid newspaper usually focuses on¹ sensation² rather than real news, whereas a quality newspaper is usually more interested in serious news. A tabloid often has stories about celebrities, sport, scandals³ and crime, while a quality paper focuses more on serious journalism⁴ with in-depth⁵ articles. To read newspapers on the Internet, you may have to subscribe / pay a subscription⁶.

1 emphasises / pays attention to 2 very exciting or interesting events 3 events which shock people in a moral way 4 the work of collecting, writing and publishing or broadcasting news and articles 5 done carefully and in great detail, explaining the reasons for events 6 pay a sum of money regularly (e.g. once a year)

D Verbs connected with the media

The BBC World Service broadcasts throughout the world. [transmits TV/radio programmes] They're televising the opening of Parliament tomorrow. [or, less formal: showing] The film was shot / made on location in Australia. [filmed in a real place, not in a studio] The series is set in London in the 1980s. [place/time where the drama happens] Within minutes of the event, people were tweeting about it. [posting very short messages on the Internet]

Common mistakes

Remember that the noun news is uncountable and takes a singular verb. I have some news for you. (NOT I have a news.) The news is on TV at 7 pm. (NOT The news are on TV.)

Exercises

37.1 What sort of TV programmes from A opposite are these people talking about?

1 'It investigated how the banks had wasted billions of euros in bad loans.'

documentary

2 'Walt Disney made a lot of them. Mickey Mouse was probably his most famous.'

3 'The Minister of Education was on it, discussing the new schools policy.'

4 'It's so funny, especially when the old uncle appears. We can't stop laughing.'

5 'My mum watches it every day. She knows all the characters as if they were real.'

6 'We wanted to find out if it was going to rain tomorrow.'

7 'They always solve the murder in the end, but it's very exciting.'

8 'He interviewed that young star who just won an Oscar, oh, what's her name?'

9 'The prize is £500,000 this week. That's a lot of money!'

10 'They showed a repeat of the Manchester United versus Valencia match.'

37.2 Fill the gaps with words from B opposite.

- Which do you prefer if a film is in a foreign language, to read *subtitles* or to have the film *dubbed*?
- I downloaded a great programme about bees. I listened to it on my MP3 player in bed last night.
- I hate it when c... interrupt a good film. I usually go and make a cup of tea while they're on.
- We've got a new s... d... on our roof. We can r... hundreds of channels now.
- I'd like a job in the m..., perhaps in TV or radio.
- A lot of people use social networking sites as their main m... of communication with their friends.
- People often download b... from the Internet so they don't need to watch them on the day they are transmitted.
- With a fast broadband connection, you can s... TV shows directly from the Internet.

37.3 Sort these words into two categories: 'tabloid' and 'quality' newspaper.

celebrity news complex political debate scandals in-depth reviews of books competitions and prizes sensational crimes long articles huge headlines

tabloid	quality
celebrity news	

37.4 Rewrite the words in bold using verbs from the opposite page.

- The documentary **looked into** *investigated* the food industry and **emphasised** school meals.
- The programme **was filmed** *filmed* in Northern Finland. (two answers)
- CNN **sends** *transmits* news programmes around the world.
- They're **showing** *showing* the cup final next week. (give a more formal verb)
- The drama **takes place** *is set* in Paris in the 1880s.
- Do you ever **send those short messages over the Internet** *post* about news events?

37.5 Over to you

Which types of media do you use most? Give your reasons.

Types of government

republic: a state governed by representatives and, usually, a president (e.g. USA, France)
monarchy: a state ruled by a king or queen (e.g. UK, Sweden)
federation: a union of political units (e.g. provinces) under a central government (e.g. USA)
democracy: government of, by and for the people
dictatorship: system of government run by a dictator
independence: freedom from outside control; self-governing

Presidential and parliamentary government (US and UK)



United States Presidential government: The powers of the President and the legislature (Congress) are separate. These branches of government are elected¹ separately. The President is elected for a four-year term and can appoint² or nominate high officials in government, including cabinet members (who advise) and federal judges. The President leads a major party, usually, but not always, the majority party³ in Congress. Congress consists of two houses, the House of Representatives and the Senate.

United Kingdom Parliamentary government: The government consists of a legislature⁴ (Parliament) and a Cabinet of Ministers⁵ from the majority party in Parliament. If no party has an overall majority, there may be a coalition government formed from more than one party. The Prime Minister is the head of the government and the leader of the majority party in the House of Commons. The Prime Minister selects high officials and heads⁶ the Cabinet. Parliament consists of two chambers, the House of Commons and the House of Lords. MPs are members of parliament elected from each constituency⁷ to the House of Commons.

¹ chosen by vote ² decide who to give positions of authority to ³ political party which won the most votes ⁴ group of people who make new laws ⁵ group of most important ministers ⁶ is the leader of ⁷ geographical voting area

Parliamentary elections

During a general election each constituency has to choose which politician it wants as its representative. Usually there are several candidates to choose from. These candidates are all standing (or running) for Parliament. They present the policies, i.e. their party's plans. On polling day every adult goes to the polling station and casts a vote by marking a cross on their ballot paper. The candidate who gets the majority of votes wins the seat. If the vote is very close, the constituency may be referred to as a marginal seat.

Language help

Here are some word families relating to words on this page.

verb	person noun	abstract noun
rule	ruler	rule
govern	governor	government
preside (often followed by over)	president	presidency
represent	representative	representation
elect	elector; electorate (group of people)	election

Exercises

38.1

Circle the correct word from the choices offered.

- A member of parliament governs / rules / represents his or her constituency.
- India gained republic / independence / democracy from the UK in 1948.
- On electing / voting / polling day electors cast their votes.
- She's running / sitting / walking for Parliament in the next election.
- His father was voted / stood / elected MP for Cambridge City.
- What is your country's economic politics / policy / politician?
- The USA is a legislature / federation / congress of 50 states.
- Although modern monarchs are said to rule / govern / preside over their countries they have little real power.

38.2

Look at this text about politics in the UK. Fill in the missing words.

Parliament in the UK consists of two ¹ *chambers* : the House of Commons and the House of Lords. The country is divided into ² , each of which elects a(n) ³ to represent it in the House of Commons. The ruling party in the Commons is the one which gains a ⁴ of seats. The main figure in that party is called the ⁵ . Sometimes more than one party may share power in a ⁶ government. The Commons is elected for a maximum period of five years although the Prime Minister may call a general ⁷ at any time within that period.

38.3

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 The President appointed his uncle | ☒ a over a Cabinet of Ministers. |
| 2 The Prime Minister presides | ☐ b on the ballot paper. |
| 3 In last year's election I voted | ☐ c as a judge. |
| 4 Lee says he would never want to stand | ☐ d from in our constituency. |
| 5 Put a cross beside the name you want | ☐ e the seat in our constituency. |
| 6 I haven't decided yet how to cast | ☐ f for the Green Party candidate. |
| 7 I'm not keen on the candidate who won | ☐ g for political office. |
| 8 We had five candidates to choose | ☐ h my vote. |

38.4

Find a word from the Language help section to match each definition.

- the person with the highest political position in a republic *the President*
- someone who speaks or does something officially, on behalf of a group of people
- the leader of a country, e.g. a monarch or dictator
- the period of office of the person with the highest political position in a republic
- system used for controlling a country
- the group of people who are entitled to vote
- to act officially for a group of people

38.5

Over to you

Write a paragraph about the political system in your country. Make sure your paragraph deals with all the following aspects of the topic appropriate to your country:
 kind of government, e.g. a republic or a monarchy chambers or houses elections terms of office government leader

Crimes and criminals

crime	definition	criminal	verb
murder	killing someone	murderer	murder
shoplifting	stealing something from a shop	shoplifter	shoplift
burglary	stealing something from someone's home	burglar	burglar
smuggling	taking something illegally into another country	smuggler	smuggle
kidnapping	taking a person hostage in exchange for money or other favours, etc.	kidnapper	kidnap
terrorism	violent action for political purposes	terrorist	(terrorise)
fraud	deceiving people in order to take money from them	fraudster	defraud
abduction	taking someone, especially a child, usually in order to harm them	abductor	abduct

All the verbs in the table above are regular. Note that the verb *terrorise* is mainly used in a general way, meaning to make others very frightened, rather than just relating to the crime.

Investigating crime

Ross committed a crime when he robbed a bank. Someone **witnessed** the crime and told the police. The police **arrested** Ross and **charged** him with bank **robbery**. They also **accused** his twin brother, Ben, of being his **accomplice**¹. The police investigated the **case**² and collected **evidence**³ at the **crime scene**. They found Ross's **fingerprints** and they also found **DNA evidence**⁴ that linked him to the crime, so they were confident they had **proof**⁵ that the two men were guilty.

¹ someone who helps someone commit a crime ² a crime that is being investigated ³ information used in a court of law to decide whether the accused is guilty or not ⁴ evidence from hair or skin that can be analysed scientifically and be shown to come from a particular person ⁵ evidence that shows conclusively whether something is a fact or not

Trial and punishment

The case came to **court**¹, and Ross and Ben were **tried**². The **trial**³ did not last very long. Ross and Ben both **pleaded not guilty**⁴ in court. Their lawyer did her best to **defend** them, but the **prosecuting** lawyer produced a very strong case against them. After **brief deliberations**⁵, the **jury passed verdict** on them. They decided that Ross was **guilty**, and he was **convicted of** robbery, but Ben was **innocent**⁷. The judge **acquitted** Ben of any involvement in the robbery, but **sentenced** Ross to three years in **prison/jail**. As well as a **prison sentence**, Ross also had to **pay a large fine**. Ross **served** two years in prison, but was **released from** prison a year early. He **got time off** for good behaviour.

¹ the place where a judge makes legal decisions ² were put through a legal process to decide whether they committed the crime or not ³ the legal process in court whereby an accused person is investigated and tried ⁴ said they did not commit the crime ⁵ discussions ⁶ found to be guilty of a crime ⁷ not guilty of a crime

People connected with crime and the legal process

offender: someone who commits an illegal act (an offence)

judge: the person who leads a trial and decides on the sentence, i.e. the punishment when someone is found guilty

jury: group of citizens (12 in the UK and, usually, the US) who decide on the verdict, i.e. whether the accused is guilty or not

victim: a person who suffers as the result of a crime

suspect: a person who is **suspected of** committing an offence

witness: a person who sees a crime being committed

Exercises

39.1 Which crime is each person accused of?

- 1 Zoe stole a chocolate bar from a shop. *Zoe is accused of shoplifting.*
- 2 Harry took a film star's son and said she could only have him back if she paid a large sum of money.
- 3 Ophelia shot her husband in the heart.
- 4 Noah tried to take a large amount of cigarettes into his country without paying the due tax.
- 5 Tom broke into someone's house and stole a TV and a computer.
- 6 Mike used a website to sell people holiday homes that didn't really exist.

Fill in the gaps in the newspaper article below with words from B opposite.

CRIME WATCH

A man has been ¹ by police and ² with burglary after a house in the city centre was broken into last night. Experts have searched the ³ and found several items which they have taken away to be used as ⁴ in court. The police believe the burglar may have had an ⁵ so they are calling for anyone who ⁶ the crime to come forward and help them catch the second burglar.

39.2 A preposition is missing in each of these sentences. Add it.

- 1 The judge sentenced the accused ^{ten} years in prison.
- 2 Many prisoners end up getting time for good behaviour.
- 3 The police have charged the driver of the red sports car speeding.
- 4 The two girls are suspected taking sweets from the shop without paying.
- 5 Sam was found guilty today but the judge will decide his sentence tomorrow.
- 6 The jury passed a verdict of guilty the accused.

39.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

- 1 The judge gave the accused six months in prison as punishment. (sentenced)
The judge sentenced the accused to six months in prison.
- 2 The police think Bert is guilty but they cannot show this to be true. (proof)
- 3 In court the accused said he did not commit the crime. (pleaded)
- 4 The murder case is still being looked into by the police. (investigation)
- 5 Anyone suffering because of a crime can join this support group. (victim)
- 6 The detective thought the jealous lover killed the woman. (suspected)
- 7 The bank robbers are currently being tried at a court in London. (trial)
- 8 Nathan is hoping to be let out of prison soon. (released)

39.4 Over to you

Find out about how criminals are caught and punished in your country. Answer the questions.

- 1 Who decides if someone is guilty or innocent?
- 2 Who decides on their sentence?
- 3 Can criminals get time off their sentence for good behaviour?
- 4 How are victims of crime helped?

Personal finance

Read these advertisements about personal finance.

Newbank - Your Bank

Need a good **current account**¹ with the best interest rates² and a guaranteed **overdraft facility**³? Pop into one of our branches.



Short of cash? Need a loan?

Need to **raise money** for that round-the-world trip? For a loan with **competitive**⁴ interest rates visit our website at www.cashforyou.com

TOO MANY CREDIT CARDS?

Consolidate¹ all your cards and **debts**² into one convenient **payment**³. Discuss your **credit limit**⁴ with us today. Call 01677 442319.

Looking for a **mortgage**⁵? Act now! For mortgages with low **deposits**⁶ and flexible **repayments**¹¹ call 01569 87623.

1 account you use for most everyday business 2 percentage which the bank pays you based on how much you have in your account 3 permission to have a negative amount of money in your account 4 join together to make one 5 money you owe someone 6 the act of paying something 7 the maximum amount of money you may spend on your card 8 as good as or better than other banks 9 a loan used usually to buy a house 10 money you pay before buying something to show you really want to buy it 11 payments to reduce the amount you owe

Bank accounts and services

I have a **steady income**¹ now, which is great, and my **outgoings**² are quite low. I don't have any major **expenses**³.

I pay all my bills by **direct debit**⁴, so I don't have to worry about them. It also means I have a good **credit rating**⁵, so I can borrow money if I need to.

I need to buy a car, but I'm not sure how I'm going to **finance**⁶ it.

My account is usually in **credit**³ at the beginning of the month, but by the end of the month it's always **overdrawn**¹⁰. I hate being in the red¹¹ and the banks all **charge interest**¹² on overdrafts! I try not to go over my **overdraft limit**, though.

I use **online banking** most of the time. I only go to the bank occasionally, to use the **cash machine**.

1 money coming in regularly, in a way that does not change much 2 money you pay each month, e.g. rent, cost of running a car, etc. 3 money you spend on things 4 money taken automatically from your account, e.g. to pay bills, a mortgage, etc.; the bank debits (verb) your account for the necessary sums of money 5 judgement made by a bank about how likely someone is to pay back money that they borrow 6 find the money needed to pay for it 7 account where you put money you do not immediately need 8 move from one account to another 9 has a positive amount of money in it 10 has a negative amount of money in it 11 informal have a negative amount of money in your account 12 make you pay a percentage of the amount

Public finance

The government collects money through taxes. **Income tax** is the tax collected on wages and salaries. **Inheritance tax** is collected on money people get from people who have died. **Customs** (or **excise**) **duty** is paid on goods imported from other countries; airports usually have **duty-free** shops. **VAT** (value added tax) is a tax paid on most goods and services. Companies pay **corporation tax** on their profits.

Exercises

40.1

Match the words on the left with the definitions on the right.

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 1 interest | ☒ a an account for money you don't need immediately |
| 2 mortgage | ☐ b payment taken automatically from an account |
| 3 overdraft | ☐ c an account for day-to-day use |
| 4 savings account | ☐ d a loan to buy a house or flat |
| 5 current account | ☐ e money that is charged on a loan |
| 6 direct debit | ☐ f an account with a negative sum of money in it |

40.2

Use words from A opposite to complete the sentences.

- Nico owes his brother 5,000 euros and he borrowed 10,000 euros to buy a car. Nico has **debts** totalling 15,000 euros.
- Misha spent 6,000 euros on her credit card; the bank said she'd spent 1,000 euros too much. Her **card** was 5,000 euros.
- Newbank offers interest rates on loans that are similar to the rates other banks offer and are sometimes better. Newbank's rates are **competitive**.
- Before she bought her new car, Alice paid £500 to the dealer. She paid a **deposit** of £500.
- If a customer needs more money than is in their account, they can get permission to go on using the account. The bank offers an **overdraft**.
- Harry sold his car, got a part-time job and offered to clean people's windows. He was trying to **raise** money to **finance** his trip to Africa.
- You only need one credit card. You can **consolidate** all the sums you owe into one **account**.
- If you want to buy a house, the bank offers loans where you can pay the money back over 30 years. The bank offers **mortgages** with **repayments** over 30 years.

40.3

What do we call ...

- the tax you pay on imported goods? **customs / excise duty**
- a shop at an airport where you don't pay tax? **duty-free shop**
- a tax which is added to most goods and services? **value added tax (VAT)**
- a tax on money paid if someone dies? **inheritance tax**
- the tax that companies pay on their profits? **corporation tax**
- the tax that the government takes out of your salary? **income tax**

40.4

Answer the questions. Give reasons for your answers.

- If you were overdrawn, would you be in a good situation or a bad one?
A bad situation - you would have a negative amount of money in your bank account.
- Why might a person open a savings account as well as a current account?
Joel's account is in the red. Why is his bank manager unhappy?
- Why might someone transfer money from a savings account to a current account?
Why is online banking easier than visiting your branch?
- Why are cash machines so convenient? Are there any risks in using them?
Zara's account is in credit. Is she probably happy or unhappy?
- Bob doesn't have a steady income and his outgoings are very high. Do you think he feels secure or insecure?
If your bank debited your account for 500 euros, would you feel you had more or less money as a result?
- If you have a good credit rating, what will you find it easier to do?

A

Some pairs of opposite adjectives

Cotton is a **natural** material and nylon is **artificial**.
Red and yellow are **vivid** colours while grey is a **sombre** colour.
You can see through a **transparent** material but you can't see through an **opaque** material.

A machine that has no problems at all is **perfect** while one that doesn't work properly is **faulty**.
Something that is hard and doesn't move or bend easily is **stiff** while something that bends easily is **flexible**.

A material that can be easily spoilt by, for example, washing, can be called **delicate** while something that is hard to spoil can be called **tough**.

A material like glass that can be easily broken can be called **fragile** while something that does not break easily can be called **strong** or **sturdy**.

I prefer **strong** coffee to **weak** coffee - I can't stand coffee that has too much water or milk in it. I like to be able to really taste my coffee!

The painting is not a **genuine** Picasso - it's a **fake**.



a **conventional** chair a **bizarre** chair



a **plain** frame a **decorative** frame

B

Adjectives and nouns

adjective	noun	example	meaning
decent	decency	I'd like to get a table that's a decent size so we can have ten people to a meal.	good
entire	entirety	Between them they ate the entire cake!	whole
characteristic	character, characteristic	Big windows are characteristic of houses built in the early 1900s.	typical
precise	precision	We need to take precise measurements before we decide which fridge to get.	exact
severe	severity	It's a severe building - all concrete and straight lines.	very serious
solid	solidity	The table is made of solid oak.	hard all through
trivial	trivia, triviality	He doesn't write serious novels, just trivial romances.	insignificant

The only verbs that can be formed from adjectives in the above table are **characterise**, **solidify** and **trivialise**.

C

Phrases typical of speech

Did you see that **great big** cat run across the grass? [very big]
This photo **isn't half** as interesting as that one. [is much less]
Jessie's car is **nowhere near** as powerful as mine. [much less]
Tamara makes an **unusually strong** cup of coffee.
It's a **reasonably good** piece of sculpture. [fairly good]
It's a **pretty thick** book. [fairly thick]

Exercises

41.1

Answer these questions relating to the adjectives in A opposite.

- Which is artificial - silk or lycra? *lycra*
- Which is more delicate when it comes to washing - silk or cotton?
- Would you say a watch that looks like a snake has a conventional or a bizarre design?
- How could you describe car brakes that are not working properly?
- Which would cost more - a genuine Monet painting or a fake one?
- Which of these materials is more fragile - china or wood?
- Which is more flexible - metal or rubber?

41.2

Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

- Jana's clothes are never frivolous - they're always rather
A delicate B severe C precise D bizarre
- This painting is of the works of Rembrandt.
A characteristic B solid C entire D plain
- I'd like to buy the salami, please, not just a small piece of it.
A precise B trivial C entire D solid
- Do have the to put on a new shirt, not that one with the hole.
A decency B severity C vividness D characteristic
- Writing a good job application is not a matter.
A solid B conventional C trivial D transparent
- Making beautiful jewellery requires a high degree of
A entirety B precision C character D triviality

41.3

Choose words from the box to complete the dialogue.

reasonably nowhere half great unusually pretty

- NINA: I love this room, Mark. Those 1 *great* big windows are wonderful, and the views from them are 2 amazing too.
- MARK: Thanks. And I'm sure it isn't 3 as expensive as you might imagine. I only pay 1,000 euros a month.
- NINA: Wow! That's 4 near as much as I pay. And my flat's very noisy too. It seems 5 quiet here - you don't seem to hear too much noise from the street.
- MARK: No, it's not too bad. And I've certainly got 6 quiet neighbours. I never hear a sound from their flat.
- NINA: Lucky you! I wish I could say the same about mine.

41.4

Some words in this unit can be used to talk about abstract ideas as well as objects. Use your knowledge of these words to answer the questions.

- If someone gives you a genuine smile, do they feel friendly or not particularly friendly towards you? *They feel friendly*
- Do you think a transparent argument is one that is easy or difficult to follow?
- If a writer describes something vividly, is their writing effective?
- If a person behaves in a stiff way, are they more likely to be relaxed or tense?
- If the teacher says your work is 'solid', are you likely to be pleased or not?

A

Verbs connected with beliefs and opinions

You probably already know **think** and **believe**; here are some more verbs.

I'm **convinced** we've met before. [very strong feeling that you're right]

I've always **held** that compulsory education is a waste of time. [used for very firm beliefs; *held* must be used here]

She **maintains** that we're related, but I'm not convinced. [insists on believing, often against the evidence; *maintain* could not be used here]

I **feel** she shouldn't be forced to do the job. [strong personal opinion]

I **reckon** they'll get married soon. [used for an opinion about what is likely to happen; /to be true; *reckon*]

I **doubt** /**doubt** we'll ever see total world peace. [don't believe]

I **suspect** a lot of people never even think about pollution when they're driving their own car. [have a strong feeling about something negative; fairly formal]

B

Phrases for expressing opinion

We haven't made any progress, **in my view** / **in my opinion**. [fairly formal]

She's made a big mistake, **to my mind**. [fairly informal]

If you **ask me**, he ought to change his job. [*informal*]

Note how **point of view** is used in English:

From a teacher's **point of view**, the new examinations are a disaster. [how teachers see things, or are affected]

Common mistakes

Notice the prepositions in these phrases: **In my opinion/view** but **to my mind** and **from my point of view**. (NOT *in my mind* or *in my point of view*)

C

Prepositions used with belief and opinion words

Do you **believe in** life after death? What are your **views on** divorce? What do you **think of** the new boss?

Are you **for** or **against** long prison sentences? [*neutral/informal*]

I'm **in favour of** / **opposed to** / **in** / **against** long prison sentences.

I **have my doubts about** this plan.

D

Beliefs, ideologies, philosophies, convictions

If you would rather organise this word tree differently or can add more examples, do so; it will probably help you to remember the words better.



E

Adjectives for describing beliefs and opinions

These are in sets which have similar, but not exactly the same, meaning:

fanatical / obsessive **eccentric / odd / weird** **conservative / traditional**

Jason is a **fanatical** supporter of the Green Party. Grandpa has rather **eccentric** views. Maria is a **moderate** liberal. Rosie is a **committed** Christian. Emma is a **firm** believer in free speech. Tom is a **radical** Marxist.

Exercises

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right and add an appropriate preposition. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 I have strong views <i>on</i> | a my opinion. |
| 2 Many people believe | b the proposed changes. |
| 3 I was in favour | c marriage. |
| 4 What does she think | d the plans for the new airport? |
| 5 This is absurd, | e life after death. |
| 6 He's quite wrong, | f how honest he is. |
| 7 Well, that's just silly, | g our point of view. |
| 8 I have my doubts | h the new teacher? |
| 9 Is Alex likely to be opposed | i my mind. |

Use adjectives from E which fit the phrases describing the beliefs and views of these people.

- A person who insists that the earth is flat. (an *eccentric* belief)
- A person who believes absolutely in the power of love to solve world problems. (a believer in the power of love)
- A socialist neither on the left or the right of the party. (a socialist)
- A vegetarian who refuses even to be in the same room as people who love meat. (an vegetarian)
- Someone who is always suspicious of change. (a rather view of the world)
- Someone who is in favour of making everyone wear blue clothes on Tuesdays. (a rather point of view)

43.3

Rewrite these sentences using a form of the verb in brackets.

- My mum's sure Nina's expecting a baby. (reckon) *My mum reckons Nina's expecting a baby.*
- I've always suspected that ghosts don't really exist. (doubt)
- My view has always been that people should rely on themselves more. (hold)
- Claudia is convinced that the teacher has been unfair to her. (maintain)
- I had a very strong feeling that I had been in that room before. (convince)
- In his view, we should have tried again. (feel)

Over to you

Are you ... ? Consider how many of these words apply to you, and explain why. Some ideas for situations are given in the box to help you decide. Write sentences about yourself.

EXAMPLE I don't think I'm a moralist because I wouldn't try to impose my views about religious or other morality on other people.

a moralist left-wing an intellectual a traditionalist a philosopher middle-of-the-road a radical thinker dedicated

food preferences	politics	learning English	sport	life and existence
work	religion			

Happiness and unhappiness

You feel ...

content(ed) when you are satisfied with what you have. **Content** is not used before a noun. You can say 'She is content/contented' but only 'a contented person'.

grateful when someone has done something thoughtful for you. Note: You feel **thankful** if something bad that could have happened did not happen.

I'm really **grateful** to you for helping me with my project.

delighted when something has happened that gives you great pleasure, when you hear news of someone's good fortune, for instance.

I was **delighted** to hear you're getting married!

miserable when everything seems wrong in your life.

I felt **miserable** all day yesterday - maybe it was just the grey, cold weather.

discontented when your life is not giving you satisfaction.

She's very **discontented** with her job and is going to look for a new one.

fed up / sick and tired when you have had enough of something disagreeable.

I'm **fed up with** Olivia's rudeness, and **sick (and tired)** of her bad behaviour.

depressed when you are miserable over a long period of time. **Depression** is considered an illness in some severe cases.

I felt **depressed** after having ten job interviews and not getting a job.

confused when you cannot make sense of different conflicting feelings or ideas.

I feel so **confused** - last week she said she loved me passionately; this week she said we were just good friends.

Excitement, upset, anger and anxiety

I felt **inspired** after the concert. I've decided to take piano lessons.
[stimulated to do something positive or creative]

The argument I had with Eva the other night really **upset** me.
[made me feel unhappy]

I was quite **enthusiastic** about my tennis lessons at first, but the teacher isn't very good and now I just feel **frustrated**.
[enthusiastic: had very positive feelings]
[frustrated: feeling unable to do something you really want to do]

Language help

Really can be used with all the adjectives on this page. **Absolutely** goes only with the words describing extreme states, i.e. *delighted*, *fed up*, *sick and tired*, *thrilled*, *furious*. With these words **quite** means **absolutely**, but with the other less extreme words, **quite** means **rather**.

Exercises

43.1 Read the remarks and then answer the questions.

George 'I'm just not feeling very happy today. Everything seems to have gone wrong!'

Katie 'I like my life and I have nothing to complain about.'

Pilar 'I felt so good that nothing bad had happened. It could have been a disaster.'

Max 'I've had enough of all the arguments and the bad atmosphere at work.'

Agnus 'I felt very happy when I heard she had an interview for the job.'

Sara 'Thank you for helping me today.'

Carlos 'I've been so unhappy for a long time. I've been seeing a psychiatrist.'

Stefan 'I just don't understand. Was that his wife or his daughter?'

Who feels ...	name	Who feels ...	name
1 I fed up with something?	Max	5 miserable?	
2 depressed?		6 thankful?	
3 content?		7 confused?	
4 grateful?		8 delighted?	

43.2 Rewrite the words in bold using words from A and B opposite.

- After watching the nature programme, I felt **stimulated** *inspired* to become a zoologist.
- I always get a feeling of **negative excitement** just before an exam.
- I was **extremely angry** when they refused to give me my money back.
- I was **very excited and pleased** to see my old school friend again after so long.
- The news about Rory's illness really **made me feel unhappy**.
- At first, I was **full of positive feelings** about the course, but it's just not very good.

43.3 Sort the adjectives into positive and negative feelings.

contented sick-and-tired anxious thrilled frustrated confused

positive	negative
	sick and tired

43.4 Fill the gaps using the adjectives in 43.3. Choose an appropriate adverb (*absolutely*, *quite* or *a bit*) to go in front of the adjective. Sometimes, both are possible.

- I was feeling (quite / absolutely) *quite anxious* because she had not phoned to say she had arrived safely.
- I am (quite / absolutely) of her selfish behaviour. I've had enough!
- It's all so complicated. I feel (a bit / quite) Can you help me?
- I was (absolutely / a bit) when I heard the wonderful news!
- It made me feel (quite / a bit) that I still couldn't play any songs after six weeks of guitar lessons.
- You always seem so (absolutely / quite) with life. How lucky you are!

43.5 Over to you

Choose six adjectives from this unit which describe feelings you have had recently and write sentences about when and why you felt that way.

Words and expressions relating to liking



Dear Anna,

Good to hear from you after so many years. Fancy you being married!

I'm not married but I've got a boyfriend called Tom. I must tell you about him. We've known each other for three years. I **quite liked** him when we first met, but I didn't really **fancy** him in any big way. I did like being with him - he **fascinated** me with his stories of his travels around the world and something mysterious about his past attracted me. What's more, we were both keen on sailing. Little by little I **fell in love** with him. His sense of humour **appealed** to me and I was **captivated** by his smiling eyes. Now, three years later, I can't see why I didn't **fall** for him the moment we met. He's a very **carling** person, **fond** of animals and small children. He's always **affectionate** and **loving towards** me and **passionate** both about me and about the things he believes in and the people he **cares for**. I hope we'll always be as **devoted** to each other as we are now.

Do write again soon and tell me all about your life!

Love,

Amy



Words and expressions relating to disliking

Loathe, detest, despise, cannot stand and cannot bear are all stronger ways of saying 'dislike' and they are all followed by a noun or an -ing form.

I loathe / detest / despise / can't stand / can't bear bad-mannered people. I **can't bear** listening to her stupid stories.

Repel, revolt, appal and disgust are strong words used to describe the negative effect which something has on a person.

His films **disgust** me. I was **revolted** by the way he spoke. We were **appalled** by the conditions in the refugee camp. His behaviour **repels** everyone.

Words and expressions relating to desiring

Desire is either a formal verb to express a sexual wish for someone or a formal word for *wish*. He **desired** her the moment he saw her. I have a strong **desire** to see the Himalayas before I die.

Look forward means think about something in the future with pleasant anticipation. It is followed by a noun or an -ing form. The opposite is **dread**, which is rather strong.

I'm **looking forward** to going to Fiji but I'm **dreading** the long flight.

Long for means to wish for something very much. **Yearn for** is a more poetic way of saying **long for**. After this long, cold winter, I'm **longing for** spring. He will never stop **yearning** for his country although he knows he can never return.

Exercises

44.1 Complete the sentences with words from A opposite and add the missing prepositions.

- Jack and Lily are very **d devoted** to each other.
- Mrs Williams is very **f fond** of her son-in-law.
- Are you **k keen** on rugby? There's a big match on TV tonight.
- Spending a whole day with my cousins doesn't **a** me.
- We just looked at each other and we **f** love immediately.
- She's so beautiful. If **a** her the moment I saw her.
- Our grandmother was always very **a** us when we were little and hugged us every time she saw us.
- She's very **p** wildlife and **c** sick animals in the local animal rescue centre.

44.2 Rewrite the sentences, changing the meaning as little as possible. Use the word in brackets.

- I'm fond of him. (quite like) *I quite like him.*
- I strongly dislike jazz. (stand) *I don't stand jazz.*
- Do you think Ethan is attractive? (fancy) *I fancy Ethan.*
- She likes rowing and golf. (keen) *She's keen on rowing and golf.*
- I loathe very salty food. (bear) *I can't bear very salty food.*
- His art attracts me. (appeal) *His art appeals to me.*
- I find Gina very interesting. (fascinate) *Gina fascinates me.*
- She has totally charmed him. (captivate) *She has captivated him.*
- I'm dreading the exam. (look) *I'm looking forward to the exam.*

44.3 In each pair of sentences which person probably feels more strongly, a or b?

- a He's devoted to his sister. b He's very fond of his sister. *a*
- a I dislike his poetry. b I loathe his poetry.
- a She's yearning to see him. b She's longing to see him.
- a I'm not really looking forward to the exam. b I'm absolutely dreading the exam.

44.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one mistake in the sentence.

- I was **appalled** by the terrible conditions in the prison. They were simply inhuman.
- I can't **bare** selfish people. I **dispose** anyone who never considers others.
- Her manner **repealed** me at first and I wouldn't stand being in the same room as her, but now I've begun to like her more.
- I felt a strong desire of finding out what had happened to my old school friends.
- Are you looking forward to start your new job?
- I felt absolutely disgusting by his unkind remarks about Sylvia.

Over to you

Answer the questions.

- What characteristics in people do you most detest?
- Would you describe yourself as a caring person? In what ways do you show it?
- What issues are you passionate about? Why?

Reporting verbs

We can use these verbs to report people's speech and how they speak (including how loudly and what their mood is).

verb	loudness	most likely mood
whisper	very soft	telling someone a secret*
murmur	soft	romantic or complaining
mumble	soft (and unclear)	nervous or insecure
mutter	soft	irritated
shout	loud	angry or excited
scream	loud (usually without words)	frightened or excited
shriek	loud (and shrill)	frightened or amused
stutter, stammer	neutral	nervous or excited**

*People also whisper in places where it would be impolite to speak loudly.

**Stuttering and stammering may also be the result of a speech impediment.

'I'm sick of this. I'm going home,' he **whispered**.

Suddenly, someone **shouted** 'Help!'

She **whispered** that she was not happy with the way the meeting was going.

Describing feelings

These verbs indicate the speaker's feelings or intentions. (sb = someone, sth = something)

verb	patterns	feeling	verb	patterns	feeling
boast	to sb about sth	proud of yourself	complain	to sb about sth	displeased
insist	on sth	determined	maintain	that	confident
object	to + -ing	unhappy with a situation	confess	to + -ing	repentant
threaten	to do sth	aggressive	urge	sb to do sth	encouraging
argue	with sb about sth	not in agreement	beg	sb to do sth	desperate
groan	that	despair, pain	grumble	about sth	displeased

Adverbs related to speech

To indicate someone's feelings, you can use a speaking verb plus an adverb. For example,

'He said **anxiously**.' She spoke **angrily**. This is common in written style.

If someone feels angry: **angrily** **furiously** **bitterly**

If someone feels unhappy: **gloomily** **miserably** **sadly**

If someone feels happy: **happily** **cheerfully** **gladly** **hopefully**

If someone feels worried: **anxiously** **nervously** **desperately**

Other useful adverbs: **excitedly**, **impatiently**, **reluctantly**, **shily**.

Language help

Most of the verbs in B above can also be used with a *that* clause.

She **boasted** *that she had scored 20 goals in one season*.

He **threatened** *(that) he would call the police*.

Exercises

45.1 Choose a verb from A opposite to fit the meaning of the sentences.

- 'Oh, noooooo!!!!!!' she **scrambled** in absolute terror.
- 'Don't look now, but Matt has just arrived,' she **whispered** in my ear.
- 'Jeez! Come here at once!' his mother **shouted** with laughter.
- 'I'd-d-did it,' he **murmured**.
- 'I'm sick of this meeting. I'm going home,' he **boasted**.
- 'Oh, that's so, so funny!' she **laughed**.
- 'There's a spider!!' she **shrieked**.
- 'Stop I can't hear what you're saying,' she said.
- 'I think we should leave now. It's late,' he **grumbled** quietly.

45.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- He always maintained ☒ a to cancel my parking permit.
- He groaned ☐ b not to leave, but I had to.
- They threatened ☐ c on using recycled paper for everything.
- She complained ☐ d that he could read people's minds.
- He begged me ☐ e that he needed a doctor immediately.
- She insisted ☐ f about the noise coming from above.

45.3 Add a reporting verb and one of the adverbs from the box to each sentence. Where possible, use reporting verbs from A.

angrily bitterly impatiently happily hopefully anxiously sadly excitedly

Milly 'You must pay attention!'
Angrily shouted angrily.

Andrew 'I feel much better today, thank you.'

Petra 'Oh wow! I've just won a prize in a competition!'

Leo 'I will never forgive them for what they did.'

Lily 'This is our last day together. I'll miss you.'

Rory 'I'm very worried. She said she would phone us.'

Kallum 'Oh, come on! Do hurry up! Let's go! Now!'

Anna 'We may be lucky and the rain might stop.'

45.4 Rewrite the sentences using the verbs in brackets.

- Don't exaggerate your talents to your friends. They'll stop liking you. (boast)
Don't boast about your talents to your friends.
- I'm not happy with having to sit on the floor. I paid for a seat. (object)
- Stop being discontented with your job all the time. (grumble)
- He talked about refusing to pay and calling the police. (threaten)
- She asked if we would help her. (beg)
- He admitted that he had broken the window. (confess) (two answers)

45.5 Answer the questions.

- Which adverbs describe positive (P) feelings and which describe negative (N) feelings?
gloomily (N) miserably () cheerfully () desperately () gladly ()
- Which prepositions usually follow: (a) object, (b) insist, (c) complain?
- Which adverb means that someone does not want to do something?
- What is the missing preposition? 'Let's be friends. I don't want to argue you.'
- How might someone speak at a job interview if they were not very confident?

46 The six senses

A The five senses

The five senses are **sight, hearing, taste, touch and smell**. What is sometimes referred to as a 'sixth sense' (or extrasensory perception) is a power to be aware of things independently of the five physical senses - a kind of supernatural sense. The five verbs referring to the senses are modified by an adjective rather than an adverb.

He **looks** dreadful. The trip **sounds** marvellous. The cake **tastes** good. It **felt** strange.
The soup **smelt** delicious.

B Sight

Yesterday I **glanced** out of the window and **noticed** a policeman **observing** a house opposite through binoculars. I thought I **glimpsed** a man inside the house. Then I **saw** that there was a man **peering** into the window of the same house. I **gazed** at them wondering what they were doing. Suddenly the policeman stopped **staring** through his binoculars. He went to arrest the other man as he started to climb into the house through the window. I realised that I had **witnessed** a crime.



C Hearing

Scale of loudness:

noiseless → silent → quiet → noisy → loud → deafening

D Taste

sweet (honey) **salty** (crisps) **bitter** (strong coffee) **sour** (vinegar) **spicy** (Indian food)
If you say something tastes **hot** it may mean **spicy** rather than **not cold**. If a curry, say, is not particularly hot, then it is **mild**. Food can be **tasty**, but **tasteful** refers to furnishings, architecture or a style of dressing or behaviour. The opposite of both is **tasteless**.

E Touch

She **poked** me in the ribs with her elbow to wake me up. He **stroked** the cat and **patted** the dog. She **tapped** him on the shoulder. He **grasped** my hand and we ran. She **grabbed** her phone and ran to the bus stop. The thief **snatched** her handbag and disappeared into the crowd. **Press** the button. Please **handle** the goods with great care.

F Smell

Here are some adjectives to describe smells:
Very unpleasant: stinking foul-smelling putrid musty (smelling unpleasantly old and slightly damp) pungent (smelling very strong, often unpleasantly so)
Pleasant: fragrant aromatic sweet-smelling perfumed/scented

G Sixth sense

Different phenomena which a person with a sixth sense may experience:
telepathy [experiencing someone else's feelings even though you are apart]
premonition [knowing something is going to happen before it occurs]
intuition [instinctive understanding]
déjà vu [an inexplicable feeling that you have already been somewhere or experienced something before]

Exercises

46.1

Which of the verbs in the text in B opposite suggests looking in the following ways

- 1 as a crime or accident occurs? *witness*
- 2 closely, finding it hard to make things out? *peer*
- 3 in a scientific kind of way? *observe*
- 4 quickly? *glance*
- 5 fixedly? *stare*
- 6 at something but getting only a brief view? *peek*

46.2

Are the following best described as **sweet, salty, bitter, sour, spicy or hot**?

- 1 strong, unsweetened coffee *bitter*
- 2 chocolate cake *sweet*
- 3 chilli powder *spicy*
- 4 lime *sour*
- 5 Indian cooking *hot*
- 6 sea water *salty*

46.3

Which of the adjectives in F best describes for you the smell of the following?

- 1 herbs in a kitchen *aromatic*
- 2 old socks *stinky*
- 3 out-of-date eggs *putrid*
- 4 roses *fragrant*
- 5 a shed full of goats *foul-smelling*
- 6 a beauty salon *perfumed*
- 7 a loft used for storage *musty*
- 8 a skunk *noxious*



46.4

Replace the underlined words with a more precise verb from the opposite page.

- 1 I touched the dog a few times. *patted*
- 2 He knocked lightly on the door. *knocked*
- 3 She took my hand firmly. *grasped*
- 4 She put her face very close up to the window so she could see better. *peered*
- 5 Take care you don't hit anyone in the eye with your umbrella. *struck*
- 6 He touched the cat affectionately. *stroked*
- 7 The robber took the money and ran. *snatched*
- 8 She picked up, carried and put down the boxes carefully. *handled*

46.5

Make a sentence about the situations using any of these verbs - look, sound, taste, feel, smell - plus an adjective.

- 1 You see a film about the Rocky Mountains. *They look magnificent.*
- 2 You come downstairs in the morning and smell fresh coffee. *It smells delicious.*
- 3 A friend has just had her hair cut. *It looks great.*
- 4 You hear the latest number one song. *It sounds fantastic.*
- 5 A friend, an excellent cook, tries a new soup recipe. *It tastes wonderful.*
- 6 A friend asks how you feel today. *I feel tired.*
- 7 A little boy asks you to listen to his first attempts at the piano. *It sounds terrible.*
- 8 You see a friend of yours with a very worried look on her face. *She looks concerned.*

46.6

Write sentences using each of the nine verbs in bold in B in ways that illustrate their specific meanings as clearly as possible.

EXAMPLE *Laura hoped her boss wouldn't notice her glancing at her watch every few minutes.*

46.7

Over to you

Answer these questions about yourself.

- 1 What's your favourite smell?
- 2 Do you prefer a hot curry or a mild curry?
- 3 What materials do you like the feel of?
- 4 Do you believe that some people have a sixth sense?
- 5 Have you ever had a feeling of déjà vu?
- 6 Have you ever had a telepathic experience?

Verbs connected with the mouth and breathing



- yawn:** Why are you yawning? Are you feeling sleepy?
sneeze: Dust often makes me sneeze.
snore: He snored in his chair with his mouth wide open.
cough: It was so smoky in the room that he couldn't stop coughing.
sigh: She sighed with relief when she heard the plane had landed safely.
be out of breath: I ran for the bus and now I'm out of breath!
take a deep breath: He took a deep breath and jumped into the water.
hold your breath: How long can you hold your breath underwater?

Verbs connected with eating

- chew:** My granny used to say you should chew every mouthful ten times.
rumble: It's embarrassing if your stomach rumbles during an interview.
swallow: Take a drink of water to help you swallow the pills.
suck: In an aeroplane, if you suck a sweet, it can stop your ears popping.
lick: The cat licked the bowl clean.
bite: Don't bite that hard sweet - you'll damage your teeth.

Verbs connected with the eyes and face

- wink:** He winked at me across the room to try to make me laugh.
frown: Why are you frowning? What's the problem?
grin: She was so delighted with the present that she grinned from ear to ear.
blink: She blinked several times to try and get the dust out of her eye.
blush: He blushed with embarrassment when she smiled at him.



Verbs connected with the whole body

- perspire/sweat/sweat:** When it's hot, you sweat/perspire. (perspire is more formal)
shiver: Look at him! He's so cold that he's shivering!
tremble: My hands tremble when I've been drinking too much coffee.
shake: She laughed so much that her whole body shook.

Language help

All the verbs on this page (except **shake** and **bite**) are regular verbs; almost all the words have an identical noun form: **to yawn** → a **yawn**; **to cough** → a **cough** /koʊ/ etc. (except **to breathe** /briːð/ and **to perspire**; their nouns are **breath** /breθ/ and **perspiration**).

Exercises

47.1 Which of the words on the opposite page do these pictures illustrate?



1. *blush* 2. 3. 4. 5.

47.2 Complete the sentences with verbs from A opposite.

- 1 I could see she was extremely cold because she was *shivering*.
 2 I sensed that he was feeling sad because he
 3 She couldn't sleep all night because her husband was
 4 The fumes from all the cars and lorries were horrible and made me
 5 I knew I had caught a cold because I started
 6 The doctor examined my chest and asked me to
 7 Put your head under water and see how many seconds you can
 8 We started running fast and soon we were both

47.3 The Trubble family are at a restaurant and things are not going well. Fill the gaps with verbs from B opposite.

- MRS TRUBBLE:** Where's our food? My stomach is ¹ *rumbling* What slow service! Edward, stop making that horrible noise with your drink! People are looking at us.
EDWARD: It's my straw. It's broken and I can't
MRS TRUBBLE: Ouch! I just an olive and I've broken my tooth on the stone! Look! It's
MRS TRUBBLE: Mm. So ... where's the stone?
MRS TRUBBLE: Oh dear. I think I it!

47.4 Find the word to match these definitions.

- 1 Draw the eyebrows together to express displeasure or puzzlement. *frown*
 2 Crush food into smaller, softer pieces with the teeth so you can swallow it.
 3 Your body makes small, quick movements because you are laughing so much.
 4 Shut and open both eyes quickly.
 5 Deliberately shut and open one eye.
 6 Use your tongue to take in food (e.g. on an ice-cream cone).

47.5 Circle the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 We worked hard in the hot sun. Soon we were trembling / *perspiring* / shivering.
 2 He seemed very amused. He was trembling / blushing / grinning.
 3 She sucked / licked / bit the stamp and stuck it on the envelope.
 4 I always find it difficult to swallow / suck / chew medicines.
 5 It was so funny! I was just trembling / shaking / shivering with laughter!
 6 The poor little animal was shivering / trembling / grinning with fear.
 7 It was so hot and humid. Soon my shirt was soaked with perspire / perspiration / perspiration.

A Praising

You **praise** someone **for** something. The teacher **praised** the children **for** their hard work. **Highly praised** is a common collocation. William's acting in this film has been **highly praised**.

She plays the guitar **brilliantly**, just like her father. [very skilfully] He's the very best, a really **first-rate / top-notch** administrator. When it comes to grammar, she's **really on the ball**. [quick to understand] Ben **has a way with** foreign students. The other teachers envy him. [good at establishing good relations / motivating them, etc.] Emma really **has green fingers**; look at those flowers! [good at gardening] Let him do the talking; he's **got the gift of the gab**. [good at talking]

Imogen is **head and shoulders above** the rest of the girls at maths. [usually used of people] / She's **miles better** than the other girls at maths. When it comes to technology, Japan **is streets ahead** of most other countries. As far as sport is concerned, Sam **is among the best** in his class. [one of the best; can also say **among the worst / most interesting**, etc.] That meal was just **out of this world**. [outstanding/superb; usually used of things]

B Criticising

The verb **criticise** can mean: to say that someone or something is bad, e.g. Paige's parents are always **criticising** her appearance. Notice that it can also be used to mean: give an opinion or judgement about a book or film, e.g. I belong to a writer's group - we read and **criticise** each other's work.

critical /'krtɪ.əl/

adjective NOT PLEASED

1 saying that someone or something is bad or wrong:

a **critical report** O The report is **highly critical of** safety standards at the factory.

adjective IMPORTANT

2 of the greatest importance to the way things might happen:

The President's support is **critical** (to this project). O a **critical decision**

adjective GIVING OPINIONS

3 giving opinions or judgements on books, plays, films, etc.:

She has written a **major critical appraisal** of Saul Bellow's novels. O His last film **was** / **received critical acclaim** (= was praised by film critics).

adjective SERIOUS

4 extremely serious or dangerous:

Both drivers are **critical** / in a **critical condition** (= so badly hurt that they might die) after the 120 mph crash.

The adverb **critically** can relate to any of these four meanings of 'critical' although the following are the most frequent uses:

critically important (meaning 2), **critically acclaimed** (meaning 3), **critically ill** (meaning 4)

Note these idiomatic synonyms of the verb **to criticise** (with its meaning of saying something is bad): You shouldn't **run down** your own country when you're abroad. Why do you always have to **pick holes** in everything I say?

Here are some criticisms of people:

I think Antonio's being totally **absurd**. [ridiculous] You are undoubtedly **at fault** / **to blame** and you should apologise. [you are in the wrong] She thinks she's **the cat's whiskers** / **wiskaz** / **the bee's knees**. [thinks she's wonderful] When it comes to time-keeping, he's **the world's worst**. [no one is worse] Jack is so rude. He really **takes the biscuit**. [is a striking example of some negative quality] Jo **wants to have her cake and eat it!** [wants everything with no contribution from her side]

Exercises

48.1 Which expressions from the opposite page might these pictures help you to remember?



48.2 Using the word in brackets and an expression from A opposite, rewrite the sentence without changing the meaning.

1 The hotel we were staying in was absolutely superb. (world)

The hotel we were staying in was out of this world.

2 Giovanni is a long way above the other kids when it comes to doing hard sums. (shoulders)

3 Maria is very good with young children - they always love her. (way)

4 You're a long way ahead of me in understanding all this new technology; I'm impressed. (streets)

5 Hassan is great at chess. (brilliantly)

6 Agata is a very fluent and confident speaker. (gab)

48.3 Which of the expressions in 48.1 is most suitable for completing each sentence if you want to:

1 say someone's behaviour is extremely annoying? What Jack said really takes the biscuit!

2 say that someone is quick to understand? Tanya is usually _____

3 say someone has a very high opinion of themselves? Rajiv thinks _____

4 praise someone's gardening skills? Marek _____

5 comment on someone who wants to buy a new car but keep all their savings too? Unfortunately, you _____

48.4 Answer these questions.

1 If someone is critically injured, is their injury minor or serious? _____ It's serious.

2 If your teacher asks you to write a review criticising a film you've recently seen, does she want you only to write about its negative aspects? _____

3 If a father is critical of his son's behaviour, does he approve or disapprove of it? _____

4 If someone says that it is 'critically important' that you complete a piece of work by a specific deadline, how flexible is that deadline? _____

5 If several people are said to be in a critical condition after an accident, are doctors worried or not particularly worried about them? _____

48.5 Write the opposite meaning to these sentences using expressions from the opposite page.

1 He's a third-rate athlete. He's a first-rate / top-notch athlete.

2 I don't understand why Sophie has such a low opinion of herself.

3 When it comes to sport, Andrew is one of the best in his school.

4 Greta was not responsible for the error in the accounting figures.

5 He is no good at talking to people at all.

6 Mick doesn't get on with the secretaries; just look at how they react when he wants something done.

7 He often says how wonderful his school is.

8 She always praises everything I say.

49 Emotions and moods

In this unit we focus on fixed expressions describing various emotions. You may not need to use them often yourself, but you need to understand them when you read or hear them.

A

Positive feelings, moods and states

Maria seems to be **on cloud nine** these days. [extremely pleased/happy]
Everyone seemed to be in **high spirits**. [lively, enjoying things]
She seems to be **keeping her chin up**. [happy despite bad things]
Jo's as **happy as Larry** / as **happy as can be**. [extremely content]

B

Negative feelings, moods and states

He had a **long face**. [looked depressed/sad]
She certainly **looked down in the dumps**. [looked depressed/sad]
Zac is in a **bad mood**. [a bad mood/temper]
Martin was **like a bear with a sore head**. [extremely irritable] (See Unit 42.)
Alice **threw a wobbly** the other day. [became extremely angry and upset]

C

Physical feelings and states

I'm **feeling done in**. [exhausted]
You're looking a **bit under the weather**. [not very well / ill]
She looked, and felt, **on top form**. [in good physical condition]
I suddenly **felt my head was spinning**. [unable to balance, feel as if you will fall over]
I was almost at **death's door** last week! [very sick / ill]
Old Nora's as **fit as a fiddle**. [very fit / indeed]

D

Fear/fright

She was **scared stiff**. [very scared]
She **frightened the life out of him**. [frightened him a lot]
We were all **shaking in our boots/shoes**. [trembling with fear]
The poor lad was **scared out of his wits**. [very scared / indeed]
I **jumped out of my skin** when I heard the bang. [gave a big jump]

E

Other expressions for actions and feelings

Capricorn (21.12-19.1)

Don't get **carried away** by promises not kept. **Keep a cool head**² and take everything as it comes³. On the work front, things are **looking up**⁴.

Taurus (21.4-20.5)

If someone says something that **makes you swell with pride**⁵ and **feel on top of the world**⁶, enjoy the moment!

¹ get too excited ² stay calm ³ deal calmly with events as they happen ⁴ improving
⁵ feel proud / very pleased because of something good that you did ⁶ very happy / indeed

Language help

There is often an element of **exaggeration** in these expressions. They make quite strong comments on the situation and often lighten the tone of what you are saying. So use them only in informal situations.

Exercises

49.1

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right to make fixed expressions.

1. Imogen was on ☐ a her chin up.
2. Michaela was in ☐ a bear with a sore head.
3. Anna kept ☐ a cloud nine.
4. Lily was as ☐ a bad mood.
5. Kathy was like ☐ a wobbly.
6. Rosie threw ☐ happy as the day is long.

49.2

Complete the fixed expressions from A and B opposite.

1. Has something good happened? You all seem in high *spirits*.
2. What's the matter? You've got along
3. As long as he has his car to work on, he's as happy
4. It's been an awful day! No wonder everyone is in a
5. Has something bad happened? You look down

49.3

Read the comments and then answer the questions.

Mark 'I've never felt so terrified in my life.'

Lidia 'I was just not feeling very well yesterday.'

Krishnan 'I've been feeling really well recently.'

Lars 'I was very ill indeed last week.'

Andrea 'I felt as if I couldn't keep my balance and was about to fall.'

Karen 'I've gone to the gym every day this month and I can feel the results.'

comment	name
1. Who was feeling under the weather?	Lidia
2. Who is probably as fit as a fiddle?	
3. Who was scared out of their wits?	
4. Who was at death's door?	
5. Whose head was spinning?	
6. Who is feeling on top form?	

49.4

Use fixed expressions to rewrite the words in bold.

1. I **gave a sudden jump** when he fired the gun. *jumped out of my skin*
2. I think you should **not panic** and just be patient.
3. He **scared me very much** when he came in wearing that ghost mask!
4. Everyone was **trembling with fear** when they saw the door open all by itself.
5. I was **very scared** before I did the bungee jump, but it was OK.
6. She **felt very proud** indeed as her daughter received the gold medal.
7. I think I got **too excited** by the idea of joining a rock band. It's actually very hard work!
8. I try to just **deal with events in a calm way as they happen**.

49.5

Over to you

Write sentences about yourself.

1. Describe a situation or event which would make you feel on top of the world.
2. Which of the expressions in C opposite best describe(s) your state at the moment?

A Types of problems and difficulties

There are many words for different types of difficulties. Chaos is a state of total confusion, where there is no order at all. A disaster is an event which causes great harm or damage. If you are facing a dilemma or are in a dilemma you are in a situation where you have to make a difficult decision between two things.

The earthquake was a dreadful disaster for the country. The transport system was in chaos for some time afterwards. The government were faced with a dilemma: start reconstruction work at once or wait until the likelihood of aftershocks had passed.

to be in a **fix** = be in a difficult situation
get out of **to be in a muddle** = be confused / mixed up

The word **challenge** puts a positive slant on a problem situation in that it focuses on the fact that it needs great mental or physical effort in order to be done successfully and therefore tests a person's ability.

B Specific difficulties

You can be **badly affected**¹ by all sorts of things, from those that are **mildly irritating**² to the **intensely annoying**³.

- 1 things can have a negative impact on you 2 slightly annoying 3 extremely annoying
- Your plans may be **disrupted**. [prevented from continuing as intended]
Negotiations or a building may **collapse**. [fall because of a lack of support]
You can be **deprived** of something you value. [have something taken away from you]
Someone's heart can be **broken**. [made extremely sad]
Your life may **lack** something that you would like. [not have (enough of) something]

The nouns related to the words in this section are **effect, irritant or irritation, annoyance, disruption, collapse, deprivation, heartbeat and lack**.

C Idioms about dealing with problems and difficulties

- to take a back seat** [not to do anything; let others act instead] ≠ **to take the bull by the horns** [act positively to face and attack the problem]
to stir things up [do/say things that make the situation worse] ≠ **to pour oil on troubled waters** [do/say things that calm the situation down]
I can't face (the thought of) clearing up all this mess today. [don't want to deal with]
I thought it would be best just to lay my cards on the table. [state exactly what my position is]
This has to be done by next week; we must **get our act together** before it's too late. [organise ourselves to respond; *infirm*]
We need a proper investigation **to get to the bottom of things**. [find the true explanation]
It's quite difficult to get people to **sit up and take notice**. [make them pay attention]
I'm trying to get a **grasp** of what's happening; it's not easy. [find out / understand]

D Idioms relating to changes in problem situations

- The tide has turned** for us; better days are ahead.
We can see the **light at the end of the tunnel** at last. [see that a difficult situation may be ending soon]
I'm afraid we've just **come to a dead end** with our plans.
I think I've **reached a turning point** in my career.
The government and the unions have **buried the hatchet** for the time being. [made peace / stopped fighting each other]
All that trouble last year was just **swept under the carpet** in the end. [ignored / deliberately forgotten, without solving it]

Exercises

50.1

Choose the best word from A opposite to complete these sentences.

- 1 Can you help Grandpa fill out that form? It's so long and complicated that he's getting in a bit of a **muddle**.
- 2 The manager told his staff that he didn't want to hear the word 'problems', but rather they should talk about **troubles**.
- 3 After the earthquake, city transport was in **chaos**.
- 4 I wonder if you could help me out - I'm in a bit of a tight **corner**.
- 5 Should I take the job in New York or the one in Sydney? It's quite a **fix**.
- 6 The floods are the worst natural **disaster** the country has experienced this century.

50.2

Match the sentence beginnings with the words on the right and add a preposition to complete the sentence.

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| 1. Ben decided he would immediately lay his cards on ☐ | a troubled waters. |
| 2. The best thing to do is just to take the bull by ☐ | b her life. |
| 3. Fortunately we can now see the light at the end of ☐ | c the table. |
| 4. It'll take ages before we can get to the bottom of ☐ | d a dead end. |
| 5. It's asking for trouble to sweep things up ☐ | e the horns. |
| 6. You can always rely on Naomi to pour oil on ☐ | f things. |
| 7. At the moment my research seems to have come to ☐ | g the tunnel. |
| 8. Claire has now reached a turning point in ☐ | h the carpet. |

50.3

Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

- 1 The snow caused serious disruption to trains in the region. (disrupted)
Trains in the region were seriously disrupted by the snow.
- 2 I don't want to drive home in all this traffic. (face)
Kelra doesn't seem to have much confidence. (lacking)
- 3 Kelra doesn't seem to have much confidence. (lacking)
Unfortunately, the project doesn't seem to be getting anywhere at the moment. (dead)
- 4 Unfortunately, the project doesn't seem to be getting anywhere at the moment. (dead)
Sleep deprivation can cause health and other problems. (deprived)
- 5 Sleep deprivation can cause health and other problems. (deprived)
Paula was profoundly affected by her meeting with Angus. (effect)
- 6 Paula was profoundly affected by her meeting with Angus. (effect)

50.4

Choose suitable idioms from C and D to fill the gaps.

- 1 Selim's business has been going through hard times but he feels at last *the tide has turned*.
- 2 No, please, don't say anything; you'll only **pour oil on troubled waters**.
- 3 It's been a long, hard struggle, but I think finally we can **take the bull by the horns**.
- 4 The police are trying their best to **get our act together**, but it's still a real mystery at the moment.
- 5 You've been messing around achieving nothing for too long; it's time you **took a back seat**.
- 6 At last I've managed to get him to **take notice**; he's paid no attention at all to us so far.
- 7 I found it hard to understand thermodynamics at first but I'm beginning to **get to the bottom of things**.
- 8 I think I'll just **wait and see**.
- 9 I wish you and John wouldn't argue so much. Can't you **bury the hatchet** once and for all?

A

Number and quantity

Number is used for countable nouns (e.g. a large number of students), **amount** for uncountable nouns (e.g. a large amount of money).

Some adjectives for expressing number and quantity:

smaller

bigger

minute /mainju:t/

tiny

average

considerable

significant

substantial

excessive

enormous

vast

Even **minute** amounts of toxic material can be dangerous. (*mi:t*)

Add just a **tiny** amount of chilli pepper, or else it may get too hot.

Were there many people at the airport? Oh, about **average**. I'd say. (fairly informal)

A **considerable** number of people failed to get tickets. (*mi*)

A **significant** number of students have dropped out of university in the last year. (noticeably large)

Substantial amounts of money have been wasted on this project. (*mi*)

There is an **excessive** amount of sugar in many soft drinks. (too much; rather formal)

A **vast** / An **enormous** quantity of sand was blown on to the road during the storm.

B

Informal words for number/quantity

I've got **dozens** of nails in my tool box. [a dozen is 12; dozens means many; especially used for countables]

Scores of people were injured when the gas tank exploded. [a score is 20 or about 20; scores of means a large number of; usually formal]

There's **heaps/bags/loads** of time yet, slow down! (usually with singular *there is*, not *there are*; countable or uncountable; *informal*)

There was absolutely **tons** of food at the party – far too much. (again, note singular *there was*; especially used for things, not so often used for abstract nouns)

There are **tons** of apples on this tree this year – last year there were hardly any.

(Note: The verb here is plural because of 'apples'; but singular in the example before with 'food' – number depends on the noun following, not on **tons/lots/loads**.)

Just a **drop** of milk for me, please. [tiny amount of any liquid]

C

Degree and intensity: collocations with **utter**(ly), **total**(ly), **wholly**

Utter(ly), **total**(ly) and **wholly** mean complete(ly).

Utter combines with 'strong' nouns like *nonsense*, *contempt*, *silence*, *confusion*, *chaos* and *despair*.

There was **utter chaos** during the transport strike.

Utterly combines with adjectives such as *ridiculous*, *confused* and *impossible*.
I was **utterly confused** by the instruction manual that came with my camcorder!

Total combines most often with *disbelief* and *ban*, e.g. She looked at him in **total disbelief**. The government introduced a **total ban** on smoking in public places.

Totally combines most often with *different*, *unexpected*, *unsuitable* and *wrong*, e.g.

The two brothers have **totally different** personalities.

Wholly combines most often with *dependent*, *inadequate* and *unacceptable*, e.g.

The success of the project was **wholly dependent** on the weather.

Exercises

51.1

Complete the sentences with words from A opposite.

- It takes a c. *considerable* amount of time to learn to ski well.
- As *possible answers* quantity of food is thrown away every day by supermarkets, it's a scandal. (two possible answers)
- The scientists found only a m. amount of the chemical in the food and said it was safe to eat.
- We ate an e. amount of food at dinner last night! (two possible answers)
- V. amounts of money are wasted by government departments every year.
- The number of students registering for our courses is about a. for the autumn semester.
- A t. amount of water had got into the keyboard and it stopped working.
- Last year we didn't really notice an increase in prices, but this year the increase has been a.

51.2

Use words from A to fill the gaps. More than one answer may be possible.

- Even a *tiny / minute* amount of sand can damage a camera.
- I've had an absolutely amount of work lately. I'm exhausted!
- Oh, you've given me a amount of food here! I mustn't eat too much.
- It takes a amount of money to start a business.
- An amount of fat in your diet is dangerous.

51.3

Circle the most suitable answer. More than one may be correct.

- Tons / Scores / Bags* of people came on to the streets to hear his speech.
- We've got *loads / scores / dozens* of time. The train doesn't leave till 2.30.
- There was / were tons of food left over after the dinner party.
- I've got *heap / loads / dozens* of CDs that I never play any more.
- There was / were dozens of people waiting outside the building.

51.4

Using intensifiers from C, write what you could say in the following situations.

- You thought someone's views were completely ridiculous. *His/Her views were utterly ridiculous.*
- You read two novels by the same author which were completely different.
- You thought someone's behaviour was completely unacceptable.
- You thought a particular way of working produced chaos.
- You listened to someone's story and did not believe a word of it.
- You think there should be a complete ban on using mobile phones in cinemas.

51.5

Over to you

Write sentences that are true for you using these collocations:

wholly dependent utterly confused totally unexpected utter nonsense

52 Numbers and shapes

A Pronunciation of numbers

Notice how we say the following:

28% twenty-eight percent

$\frac{1}{3}$ one and two thirds

4^2 four squared

10.3 ten point three

$10\text{m} \times 12\text{m}$ ten metres by twelve metres

$\frac{9}{13}$ nine thirteenths

7^3 seven cubed

32°C or F thirty-two degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit

8^4 eight to the power of four

Decimal fractions are separated by a dot and not a comma in English and this is pronounced **point**.

Note how commas are used to separate each set of three numbers in long numbers:

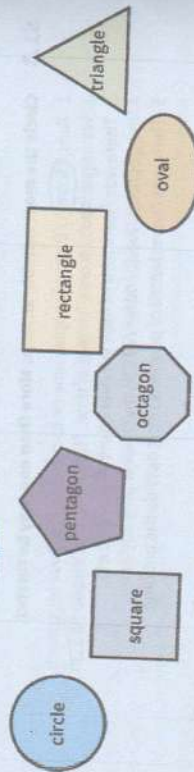
1,623,457 = one million, six hundred and twenty-three thousand, four hundred and fifty-seven.

Telephone numbers are usually said like this: 01223 20675 = oh one double two three, two oh six, seven five.

Language help

When saying a long number, you pronounce each set of up to three digits separately with rising intonation, until the last set, where the intonation falls at the end to make it clear that the number is complete.

B Two-dimensional shapes



The corresponding adjectives are: **circular, pentagonal, rectangular, triangular, square, octagonal, oval.**

A rectangle has four right angles. A pentagon has five sides.

A circle is cut in half by its diameter. Its two halves can be called **semi-circles**.

The radius of a circle is the distance from its centre to the circumference.

C Three-dimensional shapes



The corresponding adjectives are: **spherical, cubic, pyramidal, spiral.**
The two halves of a sphere can be called **hemispheres**.

D Arithmetic

+ addition

$$2x + 3y - z = \frac{3z}{4x}$$

$$6 \times 7 = 42$$

- subtraction

$2x + 3y - z$

Two x plus three y minus z

equals three z divided by four x or three z over four x

Six times / multiplied by seven is forty-two or six sevens are forty-two

$\times$ multiplication

Two x plus three y

minus z equals three z divided by four x or three z over four x

Six times / multiplied by seven is forty-two or six sevens are forty-two

$\div$ division

Two x plus three y

minus z equals three z divided by four x or three z over four x

Six times / multiplied by seven is forty-two or six sevens are forty-two

Exercises

52.1

Write the following in words rather than in figures or symbols.

- 17.1% of adults have false teeth. *Seventeen point one per cent of adults...*
- According to a UN study, 2% of the world's population owns over $\frac{1}{2}$ of all household wealth.
- $0^\circ\text{C} = 32^\circ\text{F}$
- This article says that 8,556,981 people are currently living in London.

52.2

How good at maths are you? Try this numbers quiz. Write the answers in words rather than figures.

1. What is seven times nine? *sixty-three*
2. Name two shapes that have four right angles.
3. Subtract 41 from 93.
4. What is three fifths of twenty?
5. How many sides has an octagon?
6. What is one third of ninety-nine?
7. What is three squared?
8. What is four cubed?

52.3

Complete this table.

description	name of shape	adjective
shape with four sides of equal length and four right angles	square	square
round shape		
shape with three sides		
shape with eight sides		
shaped a bit like an egg		
three-dimensional round shape		
three-dimensional square shape		

52.4

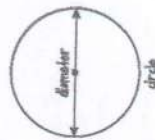
Correct the mistakes in how the numbers are said in these sentences.

- $3^2 = 9$ Three square equals nine. *Three squared equals nine.*
- 46.6% Oxygen accounts for forty-six comma six per cent of the earth's crust.
- $7 \times 9 = 63$ Seven nine are sixty-three.
- 18°C The temperature today is eighteen points Celsius.
- $3\text{m} \times 6\text{m}$ My bedroom is three multiplied by six metres.
- 6^3 What is six at the power of nine?
- $\frac{11}{16}$ Eleven sixteens of the students passed the exam.
- $\frac{2}{3} \times 5^3 = 83\frac{1}{3}$ Two third times five cubes is eighty-three and three third.

52.5

Draw the following shapes.

- A circle with its diameter indicated.
- A right-angled triangle with two equal sides of about two centimetres in length. Draw a small circle at the centre of the triangle and then draw lines from the centre of the circle to each of the angles of the triangle.
- A rectangle with diagonal lines joining opposite angles.
- An octagon with equal sides. Draw an oval in the middle of the octagon.
- A cube of roughly 3cm by 3cm by 3cm.



Periods of time – words and typical contexts

the Ice Age the Stone Age the Middle Ages the computer age
[major historical/geological periods]

After the war, a new era of stability began. [long period, perhaps several decades]
A spell of hot weather [indefinite but short period] He's had a couple of spells in hospital in the last two or three years.

The city went through several stages of development to become what it is today. [period of development or particular time in a process]

Most teenagers go through a phase of being lazy. [a period which is part of a longer period; phase can also mean the same as stage]

Useful expressions with time

During the 1980s I lived in Barcelona for a time. [vague, indefinite period]

The doctor says you should stay in bed for the time being. [for now, not specific]
She can get a bit bad-tempered at times. [occasionally / now and then]

By the time we get home this pizza will be cold! [Note: followed by present tense, not future with will]
I'm not in regular contact with her; I just send her an email from time to time. [sometimes but not often]

One at a time, please! I can't deal with you all together.

We arrived just in time to hear the Prime Minister's speech. [at the right time / with enough time to do something]

Our plane was on time and she was waiting for us at the airport. [punctual / neither early nor late]

I've told you time and time again not to ring me at the office! [many times; very emphatic and usually in negative contexts]

The city has changed a great deal over the course of time / over the course of the last two centuries. [used about long periods of time]

Verbs associated with time passing

2002 → 2012 Ten years had elapsed since they last saw each other. [normally used in the perfect or past, without adverbs; *iml*]

Time seems to fly as you get older. [pass very quickly]

This film lasts for three hours.

The meeting went on / dragged on for two hours. [suggests longer than expected or des/ red; drag on is stronger]

Adjectives describing duration (how long something lasts)

There was a momentary loss of electrical power and the data was lost. [very brief]
I just got a fleeting glimpse of the President as his car drove past. [very short and quick]
Venice has a timeless beauty.

Common mistakes

Don't confuse *in time* and *on time*. *In time* means with enough time to do something or at the right time. *On time* means punctual, neither early nor late.
We got there just **in time** for dinner.
I expect she will be late - the trains are never **on time**.

Exercises

53.1

Fill the gaps with *age, era, period, spell, phase or stage*.

- The Minister said that before the new law came into force there would be a of six months when people could hand in firearms without being prosecuted.
- The last two decades of the twentieth century will be seen by historians as the beginning of the computer
- The new university will be built in three, beginning with the opening of the science faculty in 2015.
- These factories mark the beginning of a new of industrial development for the country.
- My son went through a of not wanting to go to school when he was about nine or ten.
- We had a very cold in February. All the water pipes froze up.

53.2

Complete the sentences.

- Over* the of a century, from 1900 to 2000, the population grew steadily.
- The lecture for almost three hours and everyone was totally bored.
(two answers)
- The archaeologists discovered some tools which dated from the Stone
- Time seems to when you're enjoying yourself.
- A period of seven years between the two earthquakes.
- Shakespeare's plays have a quality - they never grow old.
- It was just a visit. She only stayed for about ten minutes.
- There was a pause as the official considered her answer. Then she said she would try to help us.

53.3

Which phrases from B could you use in the following situations? Write exactly what you might say.

- To a child who leaves the fridge door open despite being told off often.
I've told you time and time again not to leave the fridge door open
- To someone you're happy to see who arrives just as you are serving tea/coffee.
- On a birthday card you expect will arrive at someone's address after you arrive in New York.
- A large group of people want to talk to you but you'd prefer to see them individually.
- Ask someone to use an old computer while the new one is being repaired.
- Tell someone you'll do your best to arrive punctually at a meeting.
- Explain to someone that the weather can be very hot in your city occasionally.
- Tell someone you enjoy a game of tennis sometimes but not often.



53.4

Over to you

Your country/culture may have names for important periods of its history (for example, British people often refer to the years 1840-1900 as the 'Victorian era/period' because the monarch at the time was Queen Victoria). Make a list in English of important historical periods from your culture.

54 Distances and dimensions

A Broad and wide and tall and high

Wide is more common than **broad**, e.g. It's a very **wide** road/garden/room.

Make a note of typical collocations for **broad** as you meet them, e.g. Economics is a very **broad** subject. We came to a **broad** expanse of grassland. [big area]

Note the word order for dimensions, e.g. The room's **five metres long** and **four wide**.

Don't forget that **tall** is for people but can be used for things such as buildings and trees when they are **high** and **thin** in some way. Otherwise, use **high** for things.

She's very **tall** for a five-year-old.

Her office is in that **tall** building in the square.

There are some **high** mountains in the North.

B Deep ≠ shallow



The **deep** and **shallow** ends of a swimming pool.

C Derived words, phrases and compounds

long Let's measure the length /length/ of this rope.

I swam 20 **lengths** (of the swimming pool).

I've **lengthened** her skirt for her. [opp = **shorten**, see below]

Getting a visa can be a **lengthy** process. (usually refers to time; rather negative)

Tony has got a job as a **long-distance** lorry driver.

The new road will **shorten** our journey by ten minutes.

There's a **shortcut** to the station. [quick way]

Let's measure the **width** /width/ of the room.

They're **widening** the road.

I want to **broaden** my experience. (usually more abstract contexts)

She's very **broad-minded** and tolerant of others. [willing to accept other people's behaviour and beliefs; opp = **narrow-minded**]

I admire the **breadth** of his knowledge. (usually more abstract concepts)

The **height** /height/ of the wall is two metres.

The fog **heightened** the feeling of mystery. (usually used only for feelings and emotions)

You can **lower** the microphone if it's too high. [opp = **raise**]

He loves travelling to **faraway** places. [a long way away = **distant**]

distant what's the **distance** from Helsinki to St Petersburg? [= How far is it ...?]

The **depth** of the river here is about three metres.

His death so soon after hers **deepened** our sadness. (often with feelings)

D Other verbs for dimensions and for changing them

Our garden **stretches** all the way to the river, so we have plenty of room to **extend** the house if we want to.

The cities are **spreading** and the countryside is **shrinking**. [getting bigger; getting smaller]

The business **expanded** considerably in the last decade. [grew in size; opp = **contract**]

Exercises

54.1

Complete B's replies using a suitable form of the dimension/distance words **opposite** and any other necessary words.

1 A: These trousers I've bought are too long.

B: Well, why don't you get *them shortened*?

2 A: He's a big boy, isn't he? 1.90 metres!

B: Yes, he's *.....*

3 A: Why are we going across the field?

B: Just to get there a bit quicker; it's *.....*

4 A: We'll have to measure how high the room is.

B: That's not necessary; we already know the *.....*

5 A: The traffic seems to move far quicker on this road since I was last here.

B: Yes, well, they *.....*

6 A: Why do they have music on TV news programmes? It seems totally unnecessary!

B: Well, I think they want to create a feeling of drama, and the music is supposed to *.....*

54.2

Give opposites for:

1 a length of the pool *a width of the pool*

2 to shorten

3 a very broad range of goods

4 a local call

5 deep water

6 nearby places

7 narrow-minded

8 raise your hand

54.3

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 The city's spread a lot;

2 It takes ten weeks;

3 We extended the house

4 You can choose;

5 Your experience is too narrow;

6 The forest stretches

☒ a

for miles along the river.

☐ b

you should broaden it.

☐ c

it's much bigger now.

☐ d

there's a wide range.

☐ e

it's a lengthy business.

☐ f

to give us more room.

54.4

Use the verbs in the box to fill the gaps.

spread expand extend stretch shrink contract

1 I'll *spread* the rug out on the grass so we can both sit on it.

2 The steel industry *.....* when the economy was strong, but now it has *.....* and only employs 8,000 people.

3 This sweater of mine has *.....* in the wash!

4 Our land *.....* as far as those trees there.

5 The arts centre has recently *.....* its opening hours.

54.5

Fill in the prepositions. If you are unsure, try looking up the word **distance** in a dictionary.

1 The car was parked *at* a distance *of* about 150 metres from the scene of the robbery.

2 I saw you *at* the distance yesterday but didn't call out as you were with someone.

3 She's a great shot. She can hit an empty can *at* a distance of about 100 feet.

4 What's the total distance *from* here *to* Paris?

55 Obligation, need, possibility and probability

A Obligation

You will be **liable** /'laɪəbl/ for any damage when you rent a car. [obliged to pay; /m/ /legalistic/]

The company **is obliged** to give a refund if the tour is cancelled.

The bank robbers **forced** him at gunpoint to open the safe. We **had no choice/alternative but** to sell our house; we owed the bank £100,000.

The death sentence is **mandatory** /'mæʒɪndətəri/ for drug-smuggling in some countries. [automatic; there is no alternative]

Was sport **compulsory/obligatory** at your school? No, it was **optional**. [you can choose]

I am **exempt** from paying income tax as I'm a student. [free from obligation]

B Need

This plant is **in need of** water. (more formal than 'needs/wants')

There's a **need** for more discussion on the matter. [we feel a need; /m/]

She could not concentrate **through lack of** sleep. [she had none or not enough; /m/]

A car is an **absolute necessity** if you live in the countryside and there is no public transport. [something you must have] You just can't **do without** one. [survive or live without]

What are the **requirements** for a Master's course in English? [things you must do or need]

C Possibilities

I've been given an **opportunity** to work in Berlin. [a real chance]

Is there any **chance/possibility** you'll be free next week? (chance is less formal than possibility)

A rise in oil prices is **inevitable** as oil supplies run out across the world. [is certain to happen]

It is **doubtful whether** the economy will improve next year. [it may not improve]

It is **probable that** the next government will change the tax laws. Most scientists believe that climate change is no longer just a possibility but is now an absolute certainty.

Common mistakes

The correct preposition after the noun **need** is **for**, not **of**. There is a **need for** more qualified teachers. (NOT There is a need of ...)

Exercises

55.1

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1 The club closed down | ☒ a of repairs and redecoration. |
| 2 People could not heat their homes | ☐ b for university entry on the website. |
| 3 Most people cannot do | ☐ c because of the oil shortage. |
| 4 There is a real need | ☐ d for better day care for young children. |
| 5 There is a list of requirements | ☐ e through lack of interest. |
| 6 The whole house is in need | ☐ f without a mobile phone these days. |

55.2

Continue the sentences using obligation words and phrases from A opposite with the words in brackets.

- They were losing £10 million a year, so the company was forced/obliged to close down. (close down)
- You don't have to buy the travel insurance; it's optional. (extra charge)
- You can borrow the camcorder, but you will have to pay for any damage to it. (for any damage to it)
- We'll have to sell the house. I'm afraid we have no other choice. (otherwise, bankrupt)
- He didn't want to give them the money, but they had guns; they had to. (hand it over)
- No, he couldn't choose to pay a fine; a prison sentence is inevitable. (for dangerous driving)
- I didn't want to do maths, but I had to. It's mandatory. (in all secondary schools)
- If you're unemployed, you're liable to pay (paying tax).

55.3

Answer the questions.

- If a fee or charge is mandatory, do you have to pay it or can you choose? *You have to pay it.*
- If an event is inevitable, how certain is it that it will happen? 20%, 50% or 100%?
- If a car is exempt from tax, how much tax do you have to pay for it?
- If an exam is optional, are you obliged to take it?
- If you are liable for something, is it your or someone else's responsibility?

55.4

Rewrite the words in bold using expressions from the opposite page.

- Most people consider that a mobile phone is not a luxury but **something you absolutely must have**.
an absolute necessity / something you can't do without
- I have been given a **chance** to work with a team of zoologists in East Africa.
- Is there any **chance** that you will be free to join us at 4 pm tomorrow?
- It's **not at all sure** whether there will be any change in the situation in the near future.
- It's not just a possibility that food prices will go up, it's **absolutely certain to happen**.
- She will probably** arrive tomorrow.

55.5

Over to you

Name something which ...

- you think is inevitable.
- there is a need for in your country.
- was compulsory when you were at school.
- you personally are in need of right now.
- you own that you couldn't do without.

56 Sound and light

General words to describe sound

I could hear the **sound** of voices/music coming from the next room. (neutral)
The **noise** of the traffic here is pretty bad. [loud, unpleasant sounds]
The children are making a terrible **racket** upstairs. Could you go and tell them to be quiet? [very loud, unbearable noise, often of human activity; informal]

Sound and noise can both be countable or uncountable. When they are of short duration or refer to different sounds/noises, they are countable. When they mean a lot of continual or continuous sounds, they are uncountable.

I heard **some strange sounds/noises** in the night. (countable)
I wish the children wouldn't make **so much noise** when I'm working. (uncountable)
The **sound** of the sea is very relaxing. (uncountable)

Sound words and things that typically make them

All the words in this section can be used as nouns or verbs.
I could hear the rain **pattering** on the roof. We heard the **patter** of a little child's feet.

verb/noun	examples of what makes the sound
bang	a door closing in the wind, a balloon bursting
chime	a big public clock on a building sounding the hour
clang	a big bell ringing, a hollow metal object being struck
clatter	a metal pan falling onto a concrete floor
crash	a big, solid, heavy object falling onto a hard floor
hiss	gas/steam escaping through a small hole
hum	an electrical appliance when switched on, e.g. computer, freezer
rattle	small stones in a tin being shaken
ring	a small bell, a telephone
rear / r / rumble	noise of heavy traffic, noise of a huge waterfall
rustle / rʌsl / screech	distant noise of thunder, noise of traffic far away
thud	opening a paper/plastic bag, dry leaves underfoot a car's tyres when the brakes are suddenly applied a heavy object falling onto a carpeted floor

Darkness

Here are some adjectives for **dark** conditions. (For adjectives describing brightness, see Unit 59.)
These brown walls are a bit **gloomy**. We should paint them white.
This torch is getting a bit **dim**. I think it needs new batteries.
It was a **sombre** /səmbr/ room with dark, heavy curtains. [serious, imposing]

Types of light

Note these collocations.

A torch gives out a **beam** of light. A diamond ring **sparkles**.
A camera gives a **flash** of light. Stars **twinkle**. A candle flame
flickers in the breeze. White-hot coal on a fire **glows**.
The sun **shines** and gives out **rays** of light. A gold object **glitters**.

Language help

Many of the words relating to darkness and light can be used about people's expressions too. Light suggests happiness and darkness suggests unhappiness. Kate's face was **glowing** with pleasure. Dan looks very **gloomy**. Has he had some bad news?

Exercises

56.1

Choose **sound**, **noise(s)** or **racket** to fill the gaps. You may use the words more than once.

- I could sit and listen to the **sound** of the river all day.
- There was a terrible **noise** outside the pub last night; it was a fight involving about six people.
- My car's making some strange **noises**. I'll have to have it checked.
- Oh! What an awful **noise**! I think you should take up a different instrument; the violin's just not for you!
- I can't sleep if there's **any sound** of any kind, so I use ear-plugs.

56.2

Using the table in B opposite, what sound do you think each of these might make?

- A bottle of sparkling mineral water being opened. *hiss*
- A box of saucepans being dropped down an iron staircase.
- A mouse moving among dead grass and leaves.
- A child falling over on a wooden floor.
- A starting gun for a sporting event.
- A train passing at high speed a few feet away from you.
- A slow train passing, heard through the walls of a house.
- A car coming to a halt very suddenly.

56.3

Choose the best word from the box to complete each sentence. Put it in the correct form.

chime clang hum patter rattle ring

- I woke up when a small earth tremor **rattled** the cups on the table.
- I can hear my mobile **ringing**. I think it must be at the bottom of my bag.
- It's cosy indoors with the rain **clanging** on the windows.
- We live in the country but can still always hear a **hum** of traffic from the road across the fields.
- I couldn't sleep last night and heard the clock on the town hall **chime** every hour.
- Joe **clanged** the metal gate behind him as he left the garden.

56.4

Pair up the sentences on the left with the ones on the right so they make sense.

- I saw a beam of light coming towards me. ☒ a Then it died, leaving us in complete darkness.
- The jewels sparkled in the sunlight. ☐ b It was a police officer holding a flashlight.
- The candle began to flicker uncertainly. ☐ c But blacks and greys do suit her.
- The first rays of the sun shone into the room. ☐ d I'd never seen such a beautiful bracelet.
- She always wears rather sombre clothes. ☐ e As we got nearer we realised it was a bush.
- We could see a dim shape in the fog. ☐ f It was clearly time to get up.

56.5

Which do you think is the correct meaning of the underlined words in these sentences?

- Her **eyes** were shining as she told me her news. ☒ a looked full of happiness b looked angry c looked afraid
- Jessica **glowed** all through her pregnancy. ☐ a looked rather worried b looked pale c looked very happy
- She **beamed** at him. ☐ a smiled b shouted c attacked
- He has a **twinkle** in his eyes. ☐ a a grain of sand b a sign of humour/enjoyment c a sign of anger

A Possession

All his **possessions** were destroyed in the terrible fire. [everything he owned]
Don't leave any of your **belongings** here; we've had a few thefts recently. [smaller things, e.g. bag, camera, coat; always plural]

Estate in the singular can mean a big area of private land and the buildings on it, or all of someone's wealth upon death.

They live on a **housing estate** / an **estate**. [area containing a large number of houses or apartments built close together at the same time]

She owns a huge **estate** in Scotland. [land, etc.]

After his death, his **estate** was calculated at 10 million euros. [all his wealth]

Property (uncountable) is used in a general sense for houses, land, etc.

He's only 14; he's too young to own **property**.

A **property** (countable) is a building (e.g. house, office block) or land.

She owns some valuable **properties** in the town centre.

B Words for people connected with ownership

The **proprietor** / **proprietor** of this restaurant is a friend of mine. (used for shops, businesses, etc.; /mi/; owner is less formal)

The **landlord** / **landlady** has put the rent up. [owner of rented property]

Do you own this house? No, we're just **tenants**. [we rent it]

He **inherited** a big house in the country when his parents died. [became the owner after someone's death]

C Giving

The river **provides** the village with water / **provides** water for the village. (or **supplies**)

Jakes Ltd **supplies** our school with paper and other

items. (often for 'selling' contexts)

It gives me pleasure to **present** you with this gift from us all.

His parents **supported** him while he was at college but now he's independent.

The school restaurant **caters** for 500 people every day.

[looks after the needs of]

That uncle of mine that died **left** £3,000 to an animal shelter.

When she died she **donated** all her books to the library. (for large gifts to institutions)

I'm running a marathon next week for a cancer charity.

Will you **sponsor** me? [give money to complete the race]

D Phrasal verbs connected with giving

When I left the job I had to **hand over** the keys to the new person.

I didn't really want to **let go of** my bike but I had no money so I had to sell it.

The people from the charity **handed out** / **gave out** stickers for everyone to wear. [distributed]

I had a banjo once, but I **gave it away**. [gave it free to someone]

This vase has been **handed down** from generation to generation in my family.

Exercises

57.1

Complete the missing words from A opposite.

- 1 He became a multi-millionaire and bought a huge **estate** in the country.
- 2 Some of the p... in this street have sold for more than five million euros this year.
- 3 I left some of my b... in the changing room at the gym and they were stolen.
- 4 On his death, Mr Carson's e... was valued at £400,000.
- 5 She sold all her p... and travelled around the world for a year.
- 6 It's often difficult for young couples to buy p... and they have to rent a place instead.

57.2

The verbs in the middle column have been jumbled. Put them in the right sentences.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------|---------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 A millionaire | inherited | donated | his entire library to the school. |
| 2 The director was | supported | | the best parking place. |
| 3 My mother's cousin | donated | | me £5,000 in her will. |
| 4 A farmer nearby | catered | | us with logs for the fire. |
| 5 When I retired they | left | | me with a camera. |
| 6 The restaurant | allocated | | for vegetarians. |
| 7 My parents | presented | | me when I was out of work. |
| 8 The oldest son | supplied | | the house when his father died. |

57.3 What questions using words from B and C opposite do you think were asked to get these answers?

- 1 *Are you the owner/proprietor of this restaurant?*
No, I'm not the owner. I just work here as a waiter.
- 2 *Does he support the team?*
Yes, he became the owner when his aunt died. It's a massive house.
- 3 *Can you donate something to the charity?*
OK, I'll give you one euro for every kilometre you run.
- 4 *Can you lend me your camera?*
Yes, that's right. I pay rent every month.
- 5 *Can you allocate some rooms for the conference?*
Actually, I've already given something. Sorry.
- 6 *Can you supply some pens and exercise books?*
No, I'm sorry, we don't. You have to buy your own pens and exercise books.

57.4 The rise and fall of Mr Fatcatt - a sad story. Fill the gaps with suitable words from the opposite page.

Toby Fatcatt began his career by buying old 1 *properties* in the city when prices were low. Soon he was one of the biggest private 2 *renting* houses and flats from him. He was also the 3 *owner* of many shops and businesses. He became very rich and bought himself a huge 4 *house* in Scotland, but then there was an economic crisis and he had to sell all his 5 *properties* and 7 *businesses* - everything. He was left with just a few personal 8 *possessions* and finally died penniless.

57.5

Over to you

Think of something that ...

- 1 you would hand over to a mugger if threatened.
- 2 has been handed down in your family.
- 3 you have given away at some time in your life.
- 4 is often given out in classrooms.
- 5 you value and would not want to let go of.

58 Movement and speed

Particular types of movement

Move is the basic verb for all movement, but don't forget it also means 'to move to a new house/flat'; e.g. We've **moved**. Do you want our new address?

Cars, lorries, etc. **travel/drive** along roads.

Trains **travel** along rails.

Boats/ships **sail** on rivers / across the sea.

Rivers/streams **flow/run** through towns/villages.

Things often have particular verbs associated with their types of movement. You should learn these as typical collocations when you meet them, and record them with a phrase or sentence, for example:

The car **swerved** /swɜːvd/ to avoid a dog which had run into the road. [moved suddenly to the side]

White clouds **drifted** across the sky. [moved slowly]

The flag **fluttered** in the wind. [moved gently from side to side]

The leaves **stirred** /stɜːd/ in the light breeze. [moved slightly]

The trees **swayed** back and forth as the wind grew stronger. [moved slowly from side to side]



Verbs to describe fast and slow movement

The traffic was **crawling** along because of the roadworks. [moving very slowly]

Stop **dawdling**! /ˈdɔːdlɪŋ/ We'll be late! [moving more slowly than is necessary]

Suddenly a car came round the bend and **tore** along the road at high speed.

Seconds later, a police car **shot past** after it.

Everyone was **hurrying/rushing** to get their shopping done before closing time.

The train was just **creeping** along at about 20 miles per hour. I knew we'd be late. [moving very slowly]

The donkey was **plodding** along the road. [plodding suggests heavy, often tired, movement]

The plane was **cruising** at a height of 30,000 metres. [travelling at a steady speed]

Nouns to describe speed and their typical contexts

speed is a general word used for vehicles, developments, changes, etc., e.g. We were travelling at high **speed**.

rate is often used in statistical contexts; the rate of increase/decrease, e.g. The birth **rate** is going down.

pace shows how you experience something as happening fast or slow, e.g. The lesson was going at a very slow **pace**.

velocity /veɪləsɪti/ is used in technical/scientific contexts, e.g. The **velocity** of a moving object.

Common mistakes

We say **at a speed/rate/pace**. (NOT ~~in~~ or ~~with a speed/rate/pace~~)

The train was travelling **at a speed** of 120 kph. (NOT The train was travelling ~~with a speed~~ of 120 kph.)

Exercises

58.1

Pair up the sentences on the left with the ones on the right so they make sense.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 That tree was swaying back and forth in the wind. | ☒ a It sails at dawn. |
| 2 The cruise liner is leaving tomorrow. | ☐ b It flows through the capital city. |
| 3 A cat ran out in front of my car. | ☐ c It was moving so much I thought it would break altogether. |
| 4 The most famous river in France is the Seine. | ☐ d It was travelling at 160 kph at the time. |
| 5 A train came off the rails yesterday. | ☐ e I had to swerve hard and nearly ended up in the river. |

58.2

What other things do you think could be described by each verb apart from the contexts given opposite? Use a dictionary, if necessary.

- sway: a tree, *someone dancing, someone walking on a ship in a rough sea, someone who's drunk*
- crawl: traffic,
- shoot: a car,
- flutter: a flag,
- drift: a cloud,

58.3

Fill the gaps with **speed, rate, pace or velocity**. Use the guidelines opposite to help you.

- The *rate* of decline in this species is alarming.
- I just couldn't stand the of life in the city, so I moved to a small village.
- The teacher asked the students to calculate the of a series of objects dropped from a specific height.
- At What were you doing at the time? B: Oh, about 60 kph, I'd say.
- The company is showing an impressive of growth.

58.4

Correct the error in each sentence.

- Pierre ~~creeped~~ down the stairs making as little noise as possible. *crept*
- We were making progress but only in a very slow **pace**.
- The baby stirred but didn't wake up.
- The old man swerved a little but didn't fall over.
- Trains can travel with a much faster speed than buses.

58.5

Use a dictionary to make notes to help you learn the difference between these near synonyms. Make notes under the headings **usage** and **grammar**, as in the example.

	usage	grammar
fast	e.g. fast car / fast train - refers to speed	adjective and adverb - she drove fast
quick		
rapid		
swift		

58.6

Over to you

In what situations might you ...

- tear out of the house?
- deliberately dawdle?
- plod along at a steady pace?
- not even dare to stir?
- shoot past someone's office/room?
- creep around the house?

A

Texture - how something feels when you touch it

adjective

smooth /smu:ð/
polished
silly
slippery
furry /'fʌrɪ/
rough /rʌʃ/
coarse /kɔ:s/
jagged /'dʒæɡd/
prickly

typical examples

the paper in this book
varnished wood; a shiny metal surface
silk itself; fine, expensive tights or stockings
a fish just out of the water
a thick sheepskin rug
new, unwashed denim jeans; bark of a tree
sand
sharp, irregular edges of broken glass or metal
a thistle; a cactus; thorns on a rose

Your hair has a **silky feel**. This cotton is very **smooth to the touch**. The table had a beautiful **polished surface**. /'sɪfɪs/ The ground was rough **underfoot**.

B

Brightness

a **shady** corner of the gardencarnival costumes full of **vivid** colours

shiny leather shoes

a **dazzling** light

You wear such **dull** colours - why don't you start wearing **bright** colours for a change? The light's too **dim** to read in here. We need another lamp.
I wear sunglasses when I drive because of the **glare** of the sun.

Density and weight

A **solid** ≠ hollow object. She has **thick** ≠ thin/fine hair.

An area with **dense** ≠ sparse vegetation.

Your bag's as **light** as a feather! Have you brought enough clothes?

Your bag's as **heavy** as lead! What's in it? Bricks?

This suitcase is very **bulky/cumbersome**. /'kʌmbəsəm/ [difficult, big and heavy]

C

Exercises

59.1

Which adjectives from A opposite could describe the texture of these things?

- 1 A new cotton T-shirt. *smooth*
- 2 Heavy, stone-ground wholemeal flour.
- 3 A wet bar of soap.
- 4 The branches of a rose bush.
- 5 A gravel pathway.
- 6 The inside of a pair of sheepskin gloves.
- 7 The edge of a piece of broken, rusty metal.
- 8 The surface of a mirror.
- 9 A silk scarf.
- 10 An empty sack.

59.2

Rewrite the sentences. Look at the words in bold and follow the instructions in brackets.

- 1 The material **felt** metallic. (change to noun) *The material had a metallic feel.*
- 2 The cloth was rough when you **touched** it. (change to noun)
- 3 We sat in a part of the garden where there was **shade**. (change to adjective)
- 4 Suddenly there was a light which **dazzled** everyone. (change to adjective)
- 5 The ground was very wet **under our feet**. (change to adverb)
- 6 My suitcase **weighs very little**. (use *feather*)

59.3

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 We walked through the jungle vegetation, | ☒ a which was hollow. |
| 2 We found it inside an old tree, | ☐ b which was absolutely solid. |
| 3 We loved the new colour, | ☐ c which was as heavy as lead. |
| 4 We examined the desert vegetation, | ☐ d which was very vivid. |
| 5 We tried to drill into the rock, | ☐ e which was very dense. |
| 6 We couldn't lift the box, | ☐ f which was very sparse. |

59.4

What could you do if ...

- 1 your reading lamp was rather dim? *get a brighter one*
- 2 you were fed up with the dull colour of the walls in your room?
- 3 you found the glare of the sun uncomfortable?
- 4 you wanted your shoes to be shiny?
- 5 your rucksack was too bulky or cumbersome?

59.5

Over to you

Look round your own home and find ...

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 something soft to the touch. | 4 something furry. |
| 2 something rough underfoot. | 5 something smooth. |
| 3 something with a polished surface. | |

A

Succeeding

We **succeeded** in persuading a lot of people to join our protest. (In + -ing)
I **managed** to contact him just before he left his office.
I don't think I can **manage** the whole walk. I think I'll turn back. (manage, but not succeed; may have a direct object in this meaning)

We've **achieved** / ɪ ˈvʌl / **accomplished** / ə ˈkɒmplɪʃt / a great deal in the last year. (both are used with quantity phrases such as 'a lot' and 'a little'; **accomplish** is rather formal)
The company has **achieved** all its **goals/aims/targets** for this year. (achieve is more common than accomplish with nouns expressing goals and ambitions)
Do you think his plan will **come off**? [succeed; informal]

Here is a matrix for some typical collocations with 'succeeding' verbs:

	reach	attain	secure	realise	fulfil	achieve
an ambition		✓		✓	✓	✓
a dream				✓	✓	
an agreement	✓					
an obligation			✓			
a target	✓	✓			✓	✓
a compromise	✓					

B

Failing and difficulty

Plans and projects sometimes **go wrong/backfire**. [don't go as intended]
Companies, clubs and societies often **fold** / **go under** through lack of success. [close down; go under is informal]

A plan or project may **falter** / ˈfɒltə /, even if it finally succeeds. [have ups and downs]
All your plans and hard work / efforts may **come to nothing**.
I have **great difficulty** (in) getting up in the morning.
I **find it difficult** to remember the names of everybody in the class. (hard can also be used here; it is more informal)

It's **hard/difficult** to hear what she's saying.
I often **have trouble** starting the car on cold mornings. (more informal)
We've **had a lot of bother** with the neighbours lately. (very informal)
Can you **cope** with three more students? They've just arrived. [deal successfully with a difficult situation]
I've got no money and my girlfriend's left me. I need help; I **can't cope** any more.

C

Word formation

verb	noun	adjective	adverb
succeed	success	successful	successfully
accomplish	accomplishment	accomplished	-
achieve	achievement	achievable	-
attain	attainment	attainable	-
fulfil	fulfilment	fulfilling	-
harden	hardness	hard	hard

Common mistakes

Izzy **had great difficulty** finding somewhere to live in London. (NOT difficulties)
Paul **had considerable success** with his first novel. (NOT successes)

Exercises

60.1

Choose a suitable verb to fill the gaps. If the exact word in the sentence is not in the vertical column of the matrix on the opposite page, look for something that is close in meaning. More than one verb is often possible.

- The management have *reached* a no-strike agreement with the union.
- Now I've all my family responsibilities, I can retire and travel the world.
- The school building fund has failed to its target of £250,000.
- I never thought I would my ambition, but now I have.
- Very few people all their hopes and dreams in life.
- We hope the two sides a compromise and avoid war.
- I'm afraid that little plan of mine didn't off.

60.2

Fill in the missing word forms where they exist.

verb	noun	adjective
realise	realisation	
	difficulty	
fail	target	
	trouble	

60.3

Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- I find very difficult to understand English idioms.
- She succeeded to rise to the top of her profession.
- Do you ever have any trouble to use this photocopier? I always seem to.
- I've accomplished to work quite hard this last month.
- I'm amazed that you can cope all the work they give you.
- Did you have many difficulties finding the book in the library?
- Unfortunately, it seems as if all Johnny's plans have come at nothing.
- I'm afraid I haven't had any successes in contacting Lara today.

60.4

In what sorts of situations would you hear the following remarks?

- We'll have to get an au pair. I just can't cope.
- I can't believe it — £5,000. The company folded and now I've got nothing to show for it!
- It went under, I'm afraid, and he's bankrupt now.

You would probably hear it from a parent who is finding it too difficult to combine work and family life.

- You can't manage all that. Let me help you.
- Yes, her plan came off even though the odds were really against her.

60.5

Over to you

What would you do if ...

- you were having a lot of bother with your car?
- you started a small business but it came to nothing?
- you couldn't cope with your English studies?

A One thing before another

I had written to her **prior to** meeting the committee. (formal/written style)
It was nice to be in Venice. **Previously** I'd only been to Rome. (fairly formal, more informal would be **Before that**, I...)

I was in the office from 2.30. I was out **earlier on**. (before then; fairly informal)
The street is now called Treetop Avenue. **Formerly** it was Hedge Lane. (fairly formal, typically written; used when something has changed its name, state, etc.)
Dinner will be ready in about an hour. **In the meantime / Meanwhile**, relax and have a drink.
[between now and the time of the meal]

B Things happening at the same time

She was entering **(at) the very time / the very moment** I was leaving. (these two are stronger and more precise than **as** or **just as**)
The two events happened **simultaneously**. (started and ended at exactly the same time)
During the war, she lived in Dublin. **Throughout** the war, they remained in the city.

Language help

During does not specify how long within a period of time. **Throughout** means from the beginning to the end of a period of time.

C One thing after another

Read this personal statement by someone hoping to work for an international corporation in China. The words in **bold** are rather formal.

Following¹ my first visit to Beijing, I read several books about China and **subsequently**² decided to take a six-month course in Mandarin Chinese. I revisited China on several occasions **thereafter**³ and now feel that I have a good knowledge of the country and its culture.

¹ after ² at some time after that ³ after finishing the course

Note also **immediate** (adjective), e.g. The government removed the price regulations and the **immediate** result was a 10% price rise. [which happened at once]

D Time when

The moment / The minute I saw his face I knew I'd met him before.
I stayed in that hospital **the time (that)** I broke my leg.
I met Paula at Mark's wedding. **On that occasion** she was with a different man. (more formal)

E Non-specific time expressions

We can discuss the budget now. **At a later stage** we can discuss the detailed arrangements.
At some point we will have to replace our computers, but we're OK for the moment.
[at an unspecified time in the future]

Exercises

6.1.1 Look at these pages from the personal diary of Laura, a businesswoman who travels a lot, and then do the exercise.

Mon 12	Paris – day 5 – Pompidou Centre then theatre.	Up early. Said goodbye to Nick and left. Saw bad accident on motorway.	Fri 16
Tue 13	Been away 6 days! Paris OK, but miles home.	Answered all the emails, then felt I could watch TV!	Sat 17
Wed 14	Left Paris 10 am. Huge pile of emails waiting!	Lots of phone calls – Kate, Ellie and George all in a row! Lazy day!	Sun 18
Thu 15	Manchester, then Glasgow. Met Manuela at Nick's.	Book tickets for Dublin 24th	Notes

Fill the gaps with time expressions from A and B opposite. You are given the first letter.

- Prior**..... to going to Manchester, Laura was in Paris.
- Her next trip after Glasgow is to Dublin on the 24th. I m.....
- She can relax at home.
- She was away for a week. S....., she had lots of emails to deal with.
- She was in Glasgow on the 15th. E....., she had been in Manchester.
- She went to the theatre in Paris on Monday. P..... t..... that, she had been to the Pompidou Centre.
- F..... her visit to Nick, she saw a bad accident on the motorway.
- On Sunday, she had a lot of phone calls d..... the day.
- The m..... she put the phone down it rang again. This time it was George.

6.1.2 Rewrite the words in bold using words or phrases from opposite.

- I emailed James and got a **reply straight away**. *an immediate reply*
- I will contact you **at a time I can't specify** to arrange to get together to discuss things.
- The two committees were meeting **at exactly the same time**.
- I was living in Budapest **when** I was offered the job in Paris.

6.1.3 Read the comments and then answer the questions.

Gunilla 'I was in Oslo throughout the summer. Josep visited me during that time.'

Kim 'At the very time I was in Rome, Edward was in Rome.'

Edward 'I was in Athens for a week, then in Rome for two weeks thereafter.'

Liba 'I was in Athens in October, but I didn't see Edward on that occasion.'

Josep 'I visited Hamburg; at a later stage I went to Berlin.'

- Which two people were in the same place at the same time? *Kim and Edward*
- Did Liba see Edward when she was in Athens? Yes/No
- Did Gunilla spend part of the summer or all summer in Oslo?
- Where did Josep go first – Berlin or Hamburg?
- How many weeks in total did Edward spend in Athens and Rome?
- Did Josep spend the whole summer in Oslo or probably just part of it?

6.1.4 Over to you

Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

- The moment I wake up, I
- Throughout my childhood I
- I'm doing vocabulary right now. Earlier on, I was
- Prior to going on holiday, I always

62 Condition

A Words connecting sentence parts

In addition to *if*, there are several other words and phrases for expressing condition.



- 1 You can't come in **unless** you have a ticket.
[... if you do not have a ticket]
- 2 You can borrow the bike **on condition that** you return it by five o'clock.
- 3 **In case of** fire, dial 112. [When there is ... usually seen on notices; you can also say **in the event of**]
- 4 You can stay **as/so long as** you don't mind sleeping on the sofa. (*as long as* is less formal than *so long as* and less formal and not so strong as **on condition that**)
- 5 **Provided/Providing** you don't mind cats, you can stay with us. (*providing (that)* or *provided (that)* can also be used in examples 2 and 4; they are less formal and not so strong as **on condition that** but stronger and more restricting than *as/so long as*)

Language help

Don't confuse **in case of** with **in case**. Take your umbrella **in case** it rains means 'it isn't raining but it might rain'.

B Supposing ... and What if ...

Note the use of **supposing** and **what if** (both usually found in spoken language) for possible situations in the future. **What if** is more direct.

Mick: Ethan's coming tomorrow. He'll help us.

Alice: **Supposing** / **What if** he doesn't turn up - what shall we do then?

C Conditions with -ever

The **-ever** suffix means 'it does not matter which ...'. The stress is normally on **ever**.



What's the best way to travel in your country?

However you decide to travel in this country, it'll cost you a lot of money. For example, you'll end up paying at least 70 euros, whichever means of transport you take from the airport to the city centre - train or bus. Public transport is expensive wherever you go here. Whoever wins the next election should try to lower fares.

These sentences can also be expressed using **no matter**. Note the stress.

No matter how you decide to travel in this country, it will cost you a lot of money.

No matter who wins the next election, they should try to lower fares.

Common mistakes

With the condition phrases in A, B and C the present tense is used in the conditional clause. Take a jacket **in case it gets cold later on**. (NOT Take a jacket **in case it will get** cold later on.)

D Some nouns which express condition

Certain **conditions** must be met before the peace talks can begin. (rather formal)

A good standard of English is a **prerequisite** / **prerequisite** / **prerequisite** for studying at a British university.

[absolutely necessary; very formal] What are the entry **requirements** / **requirements** / **requirements** for doing a diploma in Management at your college? [official conditions; rather formal] I would not move to London **under any circumstances**. (fairly formal)

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

Exercises

62.1

Fill the gaps with a suitable word or phrase from A and B opposite.

- 1 You can come to the party *as long as* you don't bring that awful friend of yours.
- 2 emergency in the machine room, sound the alarm and notify the supervisor at once.
- 3 I hear from you, I'll assume you are coming.
- 4 A person may take the driving test again they have not already taken a test within the previous 14 days.
- 5 I lent you my car, would that help?

62.2

Change the sentences with **-ever to no matter**, and vice versa.

- 1 Wherever she goes, she always takes that dog of hers.
No matter where she goes, she always takes that dog of hers.
- 2 If anyone rings, I don't want to speak to them, no matter who it is.
- 3 No matter what I do, I always seem to do the wrong thing.
- 4 It'll probably have meat in it, whichever dish you choose. They don't cater for vegetarians here.
- 5 No matter how I do it, that recipe never seems to work.
- 6 However hard you try, you'll never be able to do it all on your own.

62.3

The pictures show conditions that must be met to do certain things. Make different sentences using words and phrases from the opposite page.

EXAMPLE You can have a passenger on a motorbike provided they wear a helmet. / Unless you wear a helmet, you can't ride on a motorbike.



62.4

Over to you

What would your answers be to these questions?

- 1 Are there any prerequisites for the job you do or would like to do in the future?
- 2 Under what circumstances would you move from where you're living at the moment?
- 3 What are the normal entry requirements for university in your country?
- 4 On what condition would you lend a friend your house/flat?

63 Cause, reason, purpose and result

A Cause and reason

You probably know how to use words like **because**, **since** and **as** to refer to the **cause** of or **reason** for something. Here are some other ways to express cause and reason:

The collision was **due to** the icy conditions.
 The collision **was caused by** ice on the road.
 The heavy rain **caused** the river to flood.
Owing to the icy conditions, the two cars collided.

Language help

If you use **owing to** with a clause, you must follow it with the **fact** that. In this example, the clause is underlined. **Owing to the fact that the conditions were icy, the two cars collided.** (NOT *Owing to the conditions were icy, ...*)

Here are some other 'cause' words and typical contexts. They are all rather formal, and more suitable for written use.

The rise in prices **sparked (off)** a lot of political protest. (often used for very strong, perhaps violent, reactions to events)
 The President's statement **gave rise to / provoked / generated** a lot of criticism. (slightly less strong than **spark (off)**)
 The new law has **brought about / led to** great changes in education. (often used for political/social change)
 This problem **stems from** the inflation of recent years. (explaining the direct origins of events and states)
 The court case **arose from / out of** allegations made in a newspaper. (the allegations started the process that led to the court case)

B Reasons for and purposes of doing things

Her **reason for** not going with us was that she had no money, or **The reason (why)** she didn't go with us was that ... (less formal)
 The following sentences are all fairly formal, and more frequent in written English:
 I wonder what his **motives** were in sending that email? (purpose)
 I wonder what **prompted** her to send that message? (reason/cause)
 She wrote to the press **with the aim of** exposing the scandal. (purpose)
 I've invited you here **with a view to** resolving our differences. (sounds a bit more indirect than **with the aim of**)
 He refused to answer **on the grounds that** his lawyer wasn't there. (reason)
The purpose of her visit was to inspect the equipment.

C Results

Most of these expressions are fairly formal, and more frequent in written English:
 He did no work. **As a result / As a consequence / Consequently**, he failed his exams.
 The **result / consequence** of all these changes is that no one is happy any more.
 The examples with **consequence / consequently** sound more formal than **result**.
 His remarks **resulted in** everyone getting angry. (verb + in)
 The events had an **outcome** that no one could have predicted. (result of a process or events, or of meetings, discussions, etc.)
 The **upshot of** all these problems was that we had to start again. (less formal than outcome) When the election results were announced, chaos **ensued**. (very formal)

Exercises

63.1

Make two sentences into one using the 'reason and purpose' words in brackets. Look at B opposite if you aren't sure.

- 1 There was a controversial decision. She wrote to the local newspaper to protest. (prompt)
The controversial decision prompted her to write to the local newspaper to protest.
- 2 I didn't contact you. I'd lost your phone number. (reason)
- 3 I will not sign. This contract is illegal. (grounds)
- 4 The government passed a new law. It was in order to control prices. (aim)
- 5 She sent everyone flowers. I wonder why? (motives)
- 6 The salary was high. She applied for the job. (prompt)

63.2

Make full sentences using 'cause and reason' words from A opposite.

- 1 closure of 20 mines → strikes in coal industry
The closure of 20 mines sparked (off) strikes in the coal industry.
- 2 The announcement of higher taxes → a strong attack from the opposition
- 3 The new Act of Parliament → great changes in industry
- 4 The failure of the electrical system → the train crash
- 5 A violent storm → the wall collapsed
- 6 Food shortages → serious riots in several cities
- 7 The food shortages → bad economic policies

63.3

Fill in the missing prepositions.

- 1 My reasons **for** not joining the club are personal.
- 2 The purpose this pedal is to control the speed.
- 3 I came here the aim resolving our dispute.
- 4 His stupidity has resulted everyone having to do more work.
- 5 All this arose one small mistake we made.
- 6 It was done a view lowering inflation.
- 7 That press article has given rise a lot of criticism.

63.4

Use the pictures to describe the causes and results of events in different ways.



- 1 ... the road was blocked. There was heavy snow, which caused the road to be blocked.



- 2 ... everyone got a refund.



- 3 ... the customers got angry.



- 4 ... we had to walk home.

A

Verbs of concession

Concession means accepting one part of an idea or fact, but putting another, more important argument or fact against it.

It can be expressed with a conjunction, e.g. **Although they were poor, they were independent**, or an adverb, e.g. **He is a bit stupid. He's very kind, nevertheless**, or through verbs like those in the table below.

example	paraphrase and comments
I acknowledge/accept that he has worked hard but it isn't enough. I admit I was wrong, but I still think we were right to doubt her. I concede that you are right about the goal, but not the method.	I agree but ... (accept is less formal than acknowledge) I accept I'm guilty of what I'm accused of. You have won this point in our argument. (rather formal, used in debates/arguments)

B

Adverbs and other phrases showing contrast

These examples are fairly informal:

OK, you're sorry. **That's all well and good** / **That's all very well**, but how are you going to pay us back?

You shouldn't seem so surprised. **After all**, I did warn you.

It's all very well saying you love dogs, but who will take it for walks if we do get one?

He is boring, and he is rather cold and unfriendly, but, **for all that**, he is your uncle and we should invite him.

These examples are more formal:

Admittedly, she put a lot of effort in, but it was all wasted.

I thought she didn't like me. In fact, **the reverse was true**.

In Europe they use metric measurements. **In contrast**, the USA still uses many non-metric measurements.

It's not actually raining now. **On the other hand**, it may rain later, so take the umbrella.

C

Collocating phrases for contrast

When it comes to politics, Jamie and Isla are **poles apart**.

There's a **world of difference** between being a friend and a lover.

A **yawning gap** divides the rich and poor in many countries.

There's a **huge discrepancy** between his ideals and his actions.

Language help

On the other hand means 'that is true and this is also true if we look at it from a different viewpoint', e.g. *Life in the country is nice and quiet. On the other hand, you have to go a long way to get to the shops. On the contrary* is a rather formal expression which means 'that is not true; the opposite is true', e.g. A: *You must be pleased with your exam results.* B: *On the contrary, I thought they would be much better.*

Exercises

64.1

Rewrite these sentences using the most likely verb from A opposite (there is usually more than one possibility).

1. I know that you weren't solely to blame, but you must take some responsibility.
I accept that you weren't solely to blame but you must take some responsibility.
2. OK, OK, I was wrong, you were right; he is a nice guy.
3. The company is prepared to accept that you have suffered some delay, but we do not accept liability.
4. She didn't deny that we had done all we could, but she was still not content.

64.2

Complete the sentences with phrases from B opposite.

1. OK, you've cleaned the kitchen; *that's all very well*, but what about the dining room?
2. No need to panic; , it doesn't start till six.
3. She's bossy and sly, but , she is a friend.

4. saying you'll pay me back soon; when is what I want to know!

5. I know you've been very busy preparing for the school concert, , but you still mustn't neglect your homework.

64.3

Use the word in brackets in an appropriate collocation to make comments on these statements.

1. Some people believe in nuclear weapons, some in world disarmament. (divide)
There's a great divide between those who believe in nuclear weapons, and those who believe in world disarmament.
2. She says one thing. She does quite the opposite. (discrepancy)
3. Toby believes in saving as much as possible. Catalina prefers to spend all the money they earn. (poles)
4. Being a student's one thing; being a teacher's quite another. (world)
5. People in the north of the country have a totally different standard of living from those in the south. (gap)

64.4

Write a sentence before each of these sentences.

1. *I expected Lydia to be tall and dark.* The reverse was true; she was short, with fair hair.
2. On the other hand, it does have a big garden, so I think we should rent it.
3. On the contrary, the number of cars on the road is increasing yearly.
4. In contrast, in Britain you drive on the left.
5. Quite the opposite; I feel quite full. I had a huge breakfast.

64.5

Choose between on the other hand and on the contrary and explain what the speaker means.

1. I'm not worried; *on the contrary* I feel quite calm. *It's not true that I'm worried.*
2. It's expensive, but , we do need it.
3. In some ways I'd like to change my job, but , I'd miss all my colleagues.
4. I don't think he's lazy; , he puts in a great deal of effort.
5. She doesn't speak Japanese well; , she only knows a couple of phrases.
6. This hotel looks very attractive; , it's more expensive than the first one we looked at.

Expressions for linking sentences/clauses

sentence/clause 1	and	sentence/clause 2
For this job you need a degree.	In addition, Additionally,	you need at least two years' experience.
Smartphones are becoming more sophisticated.	Furthermore, Moreover, What's more**,	they are becoming cheaper.
Children should respect their parents.	Equally, Likewise,	they should respect their teachers.
We'll have all the stress of going to court and giving evidence.	On top of (all) that**,	we'll have to pay the lawyers' bills.

* **furthermore** and **moreover** are normally interchangeable, and are both rather formal; **what's more** is informal; **what is more** is rather formal.
 ** emphatic: used mostly in informal spoken English.

You can also use **plus**, e.g. To keep fit you need a good diet **plus** (you need) regular exercise. (normally used to connect noun phrases, but can connect clauses in informal speech)

Expressions at the end of sentences/clauses

They sell chairs, tables, beds, **and so on** /et 'setra/. (and so on is more informal than etc.)
 It'll go to the committee, then to the board, then to another committee, **and so on and so forth**.
 [suggests a long continuation; *informal*]
 He was a good sportsman and an excellent musician **into the bargain** / to boot. (emphasises the combination of items; *informal*)

Expressions that begin, or come in the middle of, sentences/clauses

Further to my telephone call to you yesterday, I am now writing to ... (formal opening for a letter or email)
In addition to winning the gold medal, she also broke the world record.
In addition to his BA in History, he has a PhD in Sociology.



Alongside her full-time job as a dentist, she does voluntary conservation work at weekends.

I have to go to the bank today, **as well as** getting my hair cut.

Besides / **Apart from** having a salary, he also has a private income.

Apart from her many other hobbies, she restores old racing cars.

Jo Evans was there, **along with** / **together with** a few other people who I didn't know.

Language help

The words and expressions in C are followed by nouns, noun phrases, or a verb plus -ing, e.g. **As well as speaking Japanese**, she also speaks French. (NOT *As well as she speaks Japanese*, she also speaks French.)

Exercises

65.1

Fill in the gaps in this email with suitable addition words and phrases. Try to do it without looking at the opposite page.



Dear Mrs Caldwell,

I **further** to my letter of 16 March, I should like to give you more information concerning my qualifications and experience. 2 holding a Diploma in Catering. I also have an Advanced Certificate in Hotel Management. The course covered the usual areas: finance, front services, publicity, space allocation working in the hotel trade for five years. 5 holding these qualifications, I have now been with tourism and hospitality. I hope you will give my application due consideration.

Yours sincerely,

Gemma Weaver

65.2

Rewrite the sentences using the word or phrase in brackets at the end.

- Physical labour can exhaust the body very quickly. Excessive study can rapidly reduce mental powers too. (equally) *Physical labour can exhaust the body very quickly. Equally, excessive study can rapidly reduce mental powers.*
- My cousin turned up and some schoolmates of his came with him. (along with)
- He owns a big chemical factory and he runs a massive oil business in the USA. (as well as)
- I'm their scientific adviser and act as a consultant to the Managing Director. (addition)
- It was raining and getting dark. We also had very little petrol left in the tank. (top)
- He's a very good singer. He has a degree in music. (more)

65.3

Correct the mistakes in the use of addition words and phrases in these sentences.

- I work part-time as well as ^{being} a student, so I have a busy life.
- Besides to have a good job, my ambition is to meet someone nice to share my life with.
- Alongside I have many other responsibilities, I now have to be in charge of staff training.
- In addition has a degree, she also has a diploma.
- Likewise my father won't agree, my mother's sure to find something to object to.
- To boot she's a good footballer, she's a good athlete.
- He said he'd have to first consider the organisation, then the system, then the finance and so forth so on.

65.4

What addition words/phrases can you associate with these pictures?



1 to boot

2 into the

3 in

4 on

65.5

Rewrite this text using alternatives to 'and' and the words in bold and as many expressions from the opposite page as possible.

To become a successful athlete you will need to be fit ^{plus} **and** you will need to train hard every day. **And** you will need a very special type of determination **and** stamina. **And** you will need support from friends and family, financial support **and** other things. **And** a good coach will help a great deal, motivating you and setting goals for you. **And** **with** all those other things you will need that indefinable thing: talent.

Text-referring words

Text-referring words take their meaning from the surrounding text. For example, this sentence in isolation does not mean much: 'We decided to look at the problem again and try to find a solution.' What problem? The words **problem** and **solution** help organise the argument of the text, but they do not tell us the topic of the text. They refer to something somewhere else.

Here are some examples. The word in bold refers to the underlined words.

Pollution is increasing. The **problem** is getting worse each day.
Should taxes be raised or lowered? This was the biggest **issue** in the election. [Topic causing great argument and controversy]

Whether the war could have been avoided is a **question** that interests historians.
Let's discuss crime. That's always an interesting **topic**. [Subject to argue about or discuss, e.g. in a debate or in an essay]

Punishment is only one **aspect** of crime. [part of the topic]

Problem-solution words

Text-referring words are often used with 'problem-solution' types of text, where a problem is presented and ways of solving it are discussed. In the following example, the words in bold concern a problem or a solution. Try to learn these words as a family.

The **situation** in our cities with regard to traffic is going from bad to worse. Congestion is a daily feature of urban life. The **problem** is now beginning to affect our national economies. Unless a new **approach** is found to control traffic, we will never find a **solution** to the **dilemma**.

In the dialogue below, two politicians are arguing. Note how the words in bold refer to parts of the argument.

A: **Your claim** that we're doing nothing to invest in industry is false. We invested £10 billion last year. You've ignored **this fact**.

A: **That argument** is out-of-date in a modern technological society. **Our position** has always been that we should encourage technology.

B: But the investment has all gone to service industries. **The real point** is that we need to invest in our manufacturing industries.

B: But **that view** won't help to reduce unemployment.

The following problem-solution words are grouped in families associated with the underlined key words. The prepositions normally used with them are given in brackets.

situation: state of affairs, position (with regard to)

problem: difficulty (more formal), crisis, matter

response (to): reaction (to), attitude (to), approach

solution: answer (to), resolution (to), key (to), way out (of)

evaluation (of the solution): assessment, judgment

Economically, the government is in a critical **position**. This **state of affairs** is partly a result of the financial **difficulties** currently being experienced globally. Our government's initial **response** to the **situation** was to impose higher taxes. This **approach** has not proved to be the **solution** to the problem. Economists' current **assessment** is that this may in fact be making **matters** worse.

Exercises

66.1

Match the sentences on the left with a suitable label on the right.

- The earth is in orbit around the sun.
- It has proved to be most efficient.
- People are essentially good.
- I've run out of cash.
- World poverty and overpopulation.
- They should get married, to my mind.

- ☒ 2 a problem
☐ b evaluation
☐ c fact
☐ d belief
☐ e view
☐ f issue

66.2

Fill the gaps with an appropriate word to refer to the underlined parts of the sentences.

- So you were talking about animal rights? That's quite a big issue nowadays.
- We are running out of funds. How do you propose we should deal with the problem?
- Is there life on other planets? This is a dilemma nobody has yet been able to answer.
- (For her to the class) You can write your essay on 'My best holiday ever'. If you don't like that topic, I'll give you another one.
- She thinks we should all fly around in tiny little helicopters. This situation to the traffic problem in cities is rather new and unusual. I wonder if it is viable?

66.3

These newspaper headlines have been separated from their texts. Put each one with a suitable text extract.

a NEW APPROACH TO CANCER TREATMENT

b NEW ARGUMENT OVER ECONOMIC RECESSION

c SCIENTIST REJECTS CLAIMS OVER FAST FOOD

d PRIME MINISTER SETS OUT VIEWS ON NATO

e SOLUTION TO AGE-OLD MYSTERY IN KENYA

f SITUATION IN SAHEL WORSENING DAILY

1 she said if the world community failed to respond, thousands of children could die

2 tests were being carried out to see if the new drug really did work

3 there was no proof at all that such things were harmful, and in

4 the bones proved beyond doubt that human beings had inhabited the region during

6 the Minister denied that this was true and said instead that the evidence pointed to

66.4 Over to you

- What aspect of your work/studies do you find most interesting?
- Have you ever faced a dilemma? What was it? What was your response to the situation?
- Can you think of an argument in favour of single-sex schools and an argument against? What are your own views on this issue?
- What would you say is the main problem facing your country at the moment? Can you suggest a solution to this problem?

A

What are discourse markers?

Discourse markers are expressions which organise, comment on or in some way frame what we are saying. An example is **well**.

A: So you live in Boston? B: **Well**, near Boston.

Well here shows that the speaker is aware he/she is changing the direction of the conversation in some way (not giving the expected 'yes' answer). Another example is how teachers use words like **Right** and **OK** to organise what is happening in a classroom:

Right/OK, let's have a look at exercise 3.

B

Organising a conversation

Here are some common expressions which organise the different stages of a conversation.

Now, what shall we do next? **So**, would you like to come to the table now, please?

Good, I'll ring you on Thursday, then. **Well then**, what was it you want to talk about?

Now then, I want you to look at this picture. (said by someone in control of the conversation, e.g. a teacher)

Fine/Great, let's meet again next week, then, shall we? (often used to close conversations)

So, where was I? I was telling you about my aunt ... (often used after an interruption or to come back to the main topic or story)

C

Modifying and commenting on what you say

In these mini-dialogues, the expressions in bold modify or comment on what is being said.

A: It's cold, isn't it?

B: Yeah.

A: **Mind you**, it's November, so it's not surprising.
(an afterthought, used like however)

A: What's her number?

B: **Let me see**, I have it here somewhere ... (a hesitation - gaining time)

A: It's quite a problem ...

B: **Listen/Look**, why don't you let me sort it out? (introducing a suggestion / an important point)

A: Would you? Thanks a lot.

A: And he said he was go-

B: **Well**, that's typical!

A: Hang on / Hold on! Let me tell you what he said! (preventing an interruption)

D

Other useful discourse markers

I can't do that. **You see**, I'm not the boss here. (explaining)

He was, **you know**, sort of ... just standing there. (hesitation)

He was wearing this, **kind of** / like, cowboy hat. (not sure of the best way to say something)

So that's what we have to do. **Anyway**, I'll ring you tomorrow. (the speaker thinks the topic can change or the conversation can now close)

It rained all day yesterday. **Still** / **On the other hand**, we can't complain, it was fine all last week.

(contrasts two ideas or points)

We shouldn't be too hard on him. **I mean**, he's only a child. (making clear what you mean)

In informal spoken language, people often use the letters of the alphabet (usually no more than a, b and c), to list points they want to make.

STELLA: Why aren't you going this evening?

ADAM: **Well, a)** I haven't got any money, and **b)** it's too far away.

It is often difficult to hear these expressions when they are used in rapid speech, but when you are in a position to listen in a relaxed way to someone speaking English (for example, if you are not the person being spoken to, or you are listening to informal speech on radio or TV or in a film), it is easier to concentrate on listening for discourse markers.

Exercises

67.1

Underline all the discourse markers in this monologue.

'Well, where shall I start? It was last summer and we were just sitting in the garden, sort of doing nothing much. Anyway, I looked up and ... you see, we have this, kind of, long wall at the end of the garden, and it's ... like ... a motorway for cats. That big fat black one you saw, well, that one considers it has a right of way over our vegetable patch, so ... where was I? I was looking at that wall, you know, daydreaming as usual, and all of a sudden there was this new cat I'd never seen before. It wasn't an ordinary cat at all ... I mean, you'll never believe what it was ...'



67.2

Here are some short dialogues where there are no discourse markers, which would be unusual in real informal conversation. Use markers from the box to fill the gaps. You can use the markers more than once, and more than one answer may be possible.

	good	I mean	hang on	well	let me see	right	still	listen	anyway	you know
1	A: Are you a football fan? B: <u>Well</u> ..., I like it but I wouldn't say I was a fan.									
2	A: I'll take care of these. B: <u>That's everything</u> . A: <u>See you next week</u> . B: <u>That was a very useful meeting</u> .									
3	A: It was last Monday. I was coming home from work. I saw this funny old man approaching me. I stopped him ... B: I bet it was Jim Dibble! A: <u>I let me tell you what happened first</u> .									
4	A: Which number is yours? B: <u>It's that one there, yes, that one</u> .									
5	A: He's looking exhausted. B: Really? A: <u>Look at his eyes - he looks so tired</u> .									
6	A: What do you mean, 'cold'? B: <u>She's not friendly, very distant</u> . Last week I gave her a nice smile and she scowled at me. A: <u>What do you expect? I've seen the way you smile at people; it puts them off</u> .									
7	A: Money isn't the most important thing in life. B: <u>You can't live without it!</u> A: I suppose that's true.									
8	A: What are we going to do? B: <u>I've got an idea. Why don't we ask James to help? He's a lawyer</u> .									

67.3

Which discourse marker fits best into the sentences? Rewrite the sentences with the markers included.

	on the other hand	great	a, b, c, etc.	anyway	look	now
--	-------------------	-------	---------------	--------	------	-----

- Yes, there is a lot of work to do. Anyway, I must rush now, I'll call you tomorrow.
- There are two reasons why I think he's wrong. People don't act like that, and Paul would certainly never act like that.
- I want you to pay attention, everyone.
- He loses his temper very quickly. He's got a great sense of humour.
- You seem a bit sad today. Let me buy lunch for you to cheer you up.
- A: So I'll pick you up at 6.30. B: See you then.

67.4

Over to you

Choose three expressions that appeal to you from this unit and try to use them in your spoken English. Be careful not to overuse them!

Organising a formal text

First / Firstly / First of all, we must consider ...

Next, it is important to remember that ...

Secondly and **thirdly** are also used with **first/firstly** for lists.

Finally/Lastly, we should recall that ... (coming to the final point on a list)

Turning to the question of foreign policy, ... (changing to a new topic)

Leaving aside the question of pollution, there are also other reasons ... (the writer will not deal with that question here)

In parenthesis, let us not forget that ... (making a point that is a side issue, not part of the main argument)

In summary / To sum up, we may state that ... (listing / summing up the main points)

In sum, the economic issues are at the centre of this debate ... (listing / summing up the main points: much more formal)

In conclusion / To conclude, I should like to point out that ... (finishing the text)

Common mistakes

Lastly is used when making a final point, e.g. *Lastly, let us consider what the future holds.* (NOT *At last* - let us consider ...) **At last** means finally after a long time, e.g. *At last I've finished my essay - what a relief!*

B

Linking words for explaining, exemplifying, rephrasing, etc.

To learn new words properly a lot of recycling is needed; **in other words** / **that is to say**, you have to study the same words over and over again. (**that is to say** is much more formal)

Some English words are hard to pronounce, **for example** / **for instance**, 'eight'.

It might be possible, **say**, to include the parents in the discussion. (similar to **for example**; note the commas before and after; **say** is also common in spoken English)

The Parliament has different committees. **Briefly**, these consist of two main types. (the explanation will be short and not comprehensive)

She is, **so to speak** / **as it were**, living in a world of her own. (makes what you are saying sound less definite/precise; **as it were** is more formal)

C

Referring backwards and forwards in the text

The following points will be covered in this essay: ... (used to introduce a list)

It was stated **above/earlier** that the history of the USA is ... [earlier in the text]

See page 238 for more information. [go to page 238]

Many writers have claimed this (see **below**). [examples will be given later in the text]

A full list is given **overleaf**. [turn the page and you will find the list]

For **further details/discussion**, see Chapter 4. [more discussion/details]

May I refer you to page 3 of my last letter to you? [May I ask you to look at / read; **in**]

With reference to your email of 12th March, ... (often used at the beginning of a letter or email to link it with an earlier text; **in**)

Exercises

6.0.1

Match the linking words on the left with the appropriate function on the right.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Leaving aside ... | ☒ e | a change the topic |
| 2. In parenthesis, ... | ☐ | b read something earlier in the text |
| 3. Turning to ... | ☐ | c this will not be discussed |
| 4. In conclusion, ... | ☐ | d this document is about another one |
| 5. With reference to ... | ☐ | e to finish off |
| 6. See above ... | ☐ | f as an aside / as a secondary issue |

6.0.2

Fill the gaps with typical linking words or phrases used in writing. The first letter of each phrase/word is given.

1. *Firstly* ... It is important to understand why people commit crimes; 2. ... what are the motives which make people do things they would never normally do? 3. ... a young man steals clothes from a shop - does he do it because it is an exciting risk? 4. ... it is essential to consider whether punishment makes any difference, or is it just 5. ... a kind of revenge? 6. ... how can we help victims of crime? 7. ... how can we get to the roots of the problem, rather than just attacking the symptoms?

6.0.3

Which linking word or phrase(s) ...

1. is based on the verb 'to say'? ... *say* (meaning 'for example')
2. is based on the verb 'to follow'? ...
3. contain the word/syllable 'sum'? (three answers) ...
4. is a form of the word 'far'? ...
5. contains something you find on trees? ...

6.0.4

Write a short formal email to the Editor of a newspaper about a report in the paper the previous week that a local hospital is going to close. You think the hospital should not close because:

- The nearest other hospital is 50 kilometres away.
- 200 people work at the hospital; they will lose their jobs.
- The hospital makes an important contribution to the local economy.
- It is the only hospital in the region with a special cancer unit.
- It is being closed for political reasons, not genuine economic ones.

Try to include as many as possible of these linking words and phrases:

with reference to firstly, secondly, thirdly, etc.
leaving aside the following to sum up
that is to say finally

Dear Editor,

Yours sincerely,



A Idioms connected with communication problems

Friday: So, see you then. Yes. Monday: I really like you as a friend. He's got the wrong end of the stick. [not understood something in the correct way]

Can ... Er ... Why and that means but if not, it could be and another thing ...

... notwithstanding any other proviso not stated ...

He can't make head or tail of what she's saying. [cannot understand at all]

She can't get a word in edgeways [ed3wɜ:z]. [doesn't get a chance to speak because others are talking so much]

B Good talk, bad talk

The boss always talks down to us. [talks as if we were inferior]
My workmates are always talking behind my back. [saying negative things about me when I'm not there]
It was just small talk, nothing more, I promise. [purely social talk, nothing serious]
Let's sit somewhere else; they always talk shop over lunch, and it bores me rigid. [talk about work]
Hey! Your new friend's become a real talking point among the staff! Did you know? [subject that everyone wants to talk about]
It's gone too far this time. I shall have to give him a talking to. [reproach/scold him / tell him off]

C Talk in discussions, meetings, etc.

1 Who's going to start the ball rolling?
2 To put it in a nutshell, this is a waste of time.
3 I hope they get to the point soon.
4 I want to speak my mind today.
5 I hope we wrap up the discussion by 12.30.
6 I hope Will speaks; he always talks sense.
7 Sophie always talks rubbish.
8 Alex is so long-winded. /'lɒŋ 'wɪndɪd/

1 start the discussion 2 say it in few words 3 come to the important part of the matter
4 say exactly what I think 5 finish the discussion 6 says intelligent, reasonable things
7 says stupid things 8 says things in a long, indirect way

Exercises

69.1 Look at these dialogues and comment on them.

- Paul: Eat for a meal! That's outrageous!
Emma: Not the meal, you idiot! The room!
Emma and Paul seem to be *talking at cross-purposes*.
- Ali: So that's what I'm going to do, take it all away.
What about ...
Ali: And if they don't like it they can just go and do what they like.
Ali: If she ...
Ali: Not that I have to consult them, anyway; I'm in charge round here.
It seems that Meena can't get ...
Ali: I got very upset when you said I was childish.
Ali: I didn't! I just said you seemed to get on very well with the children. Honestly.
Ali: Oh, I see. Oh, sorry.
Ali: It seems that Volodya got the ...
Ali: So, area-wise the down-matching sales profile commitment would seem to be high-staked on double-par.
Ali: Eh? Could you say that again? You've got me there.
Ali: It seems that Kim can't ... what Dan is saying.
Ali: I don't expect someone with your intelligence to understand this document.
Ali: Oh.
Ali: All seems to be talking ... to Juan.

69.2 What idioms opposite do these drawings represent?

1 wrap up the ... discussion 2 talk ... 3 start ...
4 get to ... 5 to put ... 6 get hold of ...

69.3 Fill the gaps to complete the sentences.

- She is very direct and always *speaks* ... her mind.
- He gets bored quickly with small ... and always wants to get down to serious matters.
- The boss gave me a real ... to after that stupid mistake I made.
- You're behind the times! George's girlfriend was last week's ... point.
- Paula's uncle is so long- ... - it takes him ten minutes to make a point that anyone else could make in 30 seconds.
- It was such a relief when James got up to speak - at last someone was talking ...
- I hate going out with my boyfriend and his work colleagues - they spend all evening talking ...
- You should tell him what you think to his face rather than talking behind his ...

Common noun suffixes

-er / -ist / is used for the person who does an activity, e.g. writer, painter, worker, shopper, teacher. You can use **-er** with a wide range of verbs to make them into nouns. Sometimes the **-er** suffix is written as **-or** (it is still pronounced /ɪ/). It is worth making a special list of these words as you meet them, e.g. actor, donor [person who donates something], operator, sailor, supervisor [person whose job is to make sure that other people do their jobs correctly, safely, etc.].

-er/-or are also used for things which do a particular job, e.g. pencil sharpener, bottle opener, grater, projector, stapler, coat hanger.

-er and **-ee** (pronounced /i/) can contrast with each other meaning 'person who does something' (-er) and 'person who receives or experiences the action' (-ee), e.g. employer/employee /'ɪ/ɪ/, sender, addressee, payee (e.g. of a sum of money).

-tion/-sion/-ion are used to form nouns from verbs, e.g. complication, pollution, reduction, alteration, donation, promotion, admission, action.

-ist [a person] and **-ism** [an activity or ideology] are used for people's politics, beliefs and ideologies, and sometimes their profession (compare with **-er/-or** professions above), e.g. Marxist, typist, physicalist, terrorist, Buddhism, journalism.

-ist is also often used for people who play musical instruments, e.g. pianist, violinist, cellist.

-ness is used to make nouns from adjectives, e.g. goodness, readiness, forgetfulness, happiness, sadness, weakness. Note what happens to adjectives that end in **-y**.

Adjective suffixes

-able/-ible / -bi/ with verbs means 'can be done', e.g. drinkable washable readable edible [can be eaten] flexible [can be bent]

Verbs

-ise (or **-ize**, which is more common in American English) forms verbs from adjectives, e.g. modernise [make modern], commercialise, industrialise, computerise.

Other suffixes that can help you recognise the word class

-ment: (nouns) excitement, enjoyment, replacement [the act of putting sb or sth in the place of sb or sth else]
-ity: (nouns) flexibility [ability to change easily according to the situation], productivity, scarcity
-hood: (abstract nouns, especially family terms) childhood, motherhood, brotherhood
-ship: (abstract nouns, especially status) friendship, partnership, membership
-ive: (adjectives) active, passive [in language, the passive is when the receiver of an action becomes the subject, e.g. The bank was robbed], productive [producing a positive large amount of something]
-al: (adjectives) brutal, legal [related to or which follows the law], (nouns) refusal, arrival
-ous: (adjectives) delicious, outrageous [shocking and morally unacceptable], furious [very angry]
-ful: (adjectives) hopeful, useful, forgetful
-less: (adjectives) useless, harmless [which cannot hurt or damage anyone or anything], homeless
-ly: (verbs) beautify, purify, terrify [cause someone to be extremely afraid]

The informal suffix **-ish** can be added to most common adjectives, ages and times to make them less precise, e.g. She's thirtyish. He has reddish hair. Come about eightish.

Language help

Adding a suffix can sometimes change the stress in a word. Be sure to check in a dictionary.

Examples:

flexible → flexibility productive → productivity piano → pianist

Exercises

70.1 These pictures show objects ending in **-er/-or**. Can you name them?



1 a stapler 2 a clothes hanger 3 a grater 4 a vacuum cleaner 5 a pair of pliers

70.2 Do these words mean a thing or a person, or can they mean both? Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 a cooker thing 2 a ticket holder 3 a cleaner 4 a smoker 5 a drinker 6 a smoker 7 a drinker 8 an advisor

70.3 Use the **-er/-or**, **-ee** and **-ist** suffixes to make the names of the following. If you need to use a dictionary, try looking up the words in bold.

1 A person who plays jazz on the piano. a jazz pianist 6 A person to whom a sum of money is paid.
 2 A thing that wipes rain off your car windshield. 7 A machine for washing dishes.
 3 A person who plays classical violin. 8 A person who donates their organs upon their death.
 4 A person who takes professional photographs. 9 A person to whom a letter is addressed.
 5 A person who acts in amateur theatre.

70.4 Rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences using a suffix from the opposite page and making any spelling changes needed.

1 Most of his crimes can be forgiven. Most of his crimes are forgivable.
 2 The Club refuses to admit anyone not wearing shoes. The Club refuses to anyone not wearing shoes.
 3 Her only fault is that she is lazy. Her only fault is laziness.
 4 This firm has produced a lot recently. This firm has been very recently.
 5 I found the book very easy and pleasant to read. I found the book very easy and pleasant.
 6 I have lovely memories of when I was a child. I have lovely memories of my childhood.
 7 You can't wash that jacket. That jacket isn't washable.
 8 The most important thing in life is having friends. The most important thing in life is friendship.

70.5 Complete the table with the different parts of speech. Do not fill the shaded boxes.

noun	verb	adjective
	eat	edible
fury		
		beautiful
	refuse	scarce
		modern
	forget	
	act	

70.6 Over to you

List six jobs you would like to have. How many different suffixes are there in your list? Do any of the job names not have a suffix (e.g. pilot, film star)?

A

Negative prefixes on adjectives

Prefixes are often used to give adjectives a negative or an opposite meaning. For example, fair/unfair, experienced/inexperienced and similar/dissimilar are opposites. Other examples are 'unnatural', 'inedible', 'disorganised'. Unfortunately, there is no easy way of knowing which prefix any adjective will use to form its opposite.

in- becomes **im-** before a root beginning with 'm' or 'p', e.g. **immature**, **impatient**, **immoral**, **impossible**, **improbable**. Similarly **in-** becomes **ir-** before a word beginning with 'r', e.g. **irregular**, **irresponsible**, **irreplaceable**, and **il-** before a word beginning with 'l', e.g. **illegal**, **illegible**, **illiterate**.

Language help

The prefix **in-** (and its variations) does not always have a negative meaning – often it gives the idea of inside or into, e.g. **internal**, **import**, **insert**, **income**.

B

Negative prefixes on verbs

The prefixes **un-** and **dis-** can also form the opposites of verbs, e.g. **te/un**tie, **appear/dis**appear. These prefixes are used to reverse the action of the verb. Here are some more examples: **dis**agree, **dis**approve, **dis**believe, **dis**connect, **dis**courage, **dis**like, **dis**prove, **dis**qualify, **un**bend, **un**do, **un**dress, **un**fold, **un**load, **un**lock, **un**veil, **un**wrap, **un**zip.

C

Other common prefixes

Some words with prefixes use a hyphen. Check in a dictionary if you're not sure.

prefix	meaning	examples
anti	against	anti-war antisocial antibiotic antiseptic
auto	of or by oneself	autograph auto-pilot autobiography
bi	two/twice	bicycle bilateral biannual bilingual
ex	former	ex-wife ex-smoker ex-boss
ex	out of	extract exhale excommunicate
micro	small	microbiology microchip microscopic microwave
mis	badly/wrongly	misunderstand mistranslate mislead
mono	one/single	monolingual monologue monogamous
multi	many	multinational multimedia multi-purpose
over	too much	overdo overtired oversleep overeat
post	after	post-war postgraduate post-impressionist
pre	before	preconceived pre-war pre-judge
pro	in favour of	pro-government pro-revolutionary
pseudo	false	pseudo-scientific pseudo-intellectual
re	again/back	rewrite regain rearrange repay replace renew
semi	half	semi-circular semi-final semi-detached
sub	under	subway submarine subdivision
under	not enough	underworked underused undercooked

Exercises

71.1 Which negative adjective fits each of the following definitions?

- 1 unfair means not being fair or right
- 2 impossible means impossible to eat
- 3 incapable means unable to read or write
- 4 disorganised means not being well organised
- 5 irresponsible means not having much sense of responsibility
- 6 illegal means unable to be replaced

71.2 Use the word in brackets to complete the sentences. Add the necessary prefix and put the word in the correct form.

- 1 The runner was disqualified after a blood test. (qualify)
- 2 Children (and adults) love unwrapping parcels at Christmas time. (wrap)
- 3 I almost always find that I disagree with his opinion. (agree)
- 4 I'm sure he's lying but it's going to be hard to unveil his story. (prove)
- 5 After a brief speech the President dismissed the new statue. (veil)
- 6 It took the removal men an hour unload our things from the van. (load)
- 7 His phone was disconnected because he didn't pay his last bill. (connect)
- 8 Hannah unfolded the letter and began to read it. (fold)

71.3 Answer the following questions with words from the table opposite.

- 1 What kind of oven cooks things particularly fast? microwave
- 2 How can you describe a cream, for example, that helps prevent infection? antibiotic
- 3 What kind of company has branches in many countries? multinational
- 4 How are aeroplanes often flown for easy stretches of a flight? on autopilot
- 5 What is a student who is studying for a second degree? postgraduate
- 6 What word means 'underground railway' in the US and 'underground passage' in the UK? subway

71.4 Write the opposites of the words underlined. Not all the words you need are on the opposite page. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 He's a very honest man. dishonest
- 2 I'm sure she's discreet. indiscreet
- 3 I always find him very sensitive. insensitive
- 4 It's a convincing argument. unconvincing
- 5 That's a very relevant point. irrelevant
- 6 She's always obedient. disobedient
- 7 She's employed. unemployed
- 8 He's very efficient. inefficient
- 9 The door is locked. unlocked
- 10 He seems grateful for our help. ungrateful
- 11 I'm sure she's loyal to the firm. disloyal
- 12 He's a tolerant person. intolerant

71.5 Using the table opposite, construct words or phrases to replace the underlined words.

- 1 He's in favour of the American approach. pro-American
- 2 The BBC tries to avoid pronouncing foreign words incorrectly. pseudo-scientific
- 3 Most people say they have to work too hard but are paid too little. underpaid
- 4 Dan says that economics is not really a science even if it claims to be one. pseudo-science
- 5 She's still on good terms with the man who used to be her husband. ex-husband
- 6 He made a mistake in the calculation and had to do it again. recalculate

Verbs based on Latin words

Many words in English are formed from Latin roots. These words are often considered fairly formal in English. Here are some examples of the more common Latin roots, with some of the English verbs derived from them.

DUC, DUCT | lead

He **conducted** the orchestra with great vigour. [led]

Nothing would **induce** me to join their organisation. [persuade / lead]

The railway goes over a high **viaduct**. [a high bridge across a river or valley]

PONE, POSE | place, put

The meeting has been **postponed** until next week. [put off to a later date]

The President was **deposed** by his own son. [put out of office]

The government have **imposed** a sizeable tax increase. [put into force]

Beethoven **composed** some beautiful pieces of music. [created, put together]

She **deposited** some money in her bank account. [placed, put in]

PORT | carry, take

How are you going to **transport** your things to the States? [send across]

Britain **imports** cotton and **exports** wool. [buys in] [sells out]

Our opinions are **supported** by a considerable amount of research. [held up / backed]

Foreigners who commit crimes are usually **deported**. [taken / sent away to another country]

PRESS | press, push

She was **impressed** by his presentation. [filled with admiration and respect]

This weather **depresses** me. [fills me with miserable feelings]

She always **expresses** herself very articulately. [puts her thoughts into words]

SPECT | see, look

You should **respect** your parents / the laws of a country. [look up to]

The police officer **inspected** the mysterious package. [looked into / examined]

Many pioneers travelled west in America to **prospect** for gold. [look for / search]

VERT | turn

I tried the new make of coffee but I soon **reverted** to my old favourite brand. [went back]

Can you **convert** this document to a pdf? [change from one form to another]

The police **diverted** the traffic because there was a demonstration. [sent it a different way]

B Nouns based on Latin words

The examples above are of verbs only. Note that for all the verbs listed, there is usually at least one noun, sometimes a different one for a person and an idea. Here are some examples.

verb	person noun	abstract noun
inspect	inspector	inspection
advertise	advertiser	advertisement
deport	deportee	deportation
introduce	introducer	introduction
oppress	oppressor	oppression
compose	composer	composition

Exercises

13.1

Complete the table with other forms of some of the words presented in B opposite. Use a dictionary if necessary. Do not fill the shaded boxes.

verb	person noun	abstract noun
convert		conversion
conduct		
impress		
support		
compose		

13.2

Fill the gaps in the sentences below using words based on the root given in brackets at the end of the sentence.

- The bad news *depressed* everyone. (PRESS)
- He was *from the USA for not having a visa*. (PORT)
- The magazine seems to have nothing in it but *for cosmetics*. (VERT)
- The new manager *wrote to tell me I owed a lot of money*. (SPECT)
- The tax *because of the flood, the traffic was* and we had to drive a long way. (VERT)
- Thank you for *me to Dino last week*. (DUC)
- To *some wonderful ballet music*. (POSE)
- Grey, wet weather always *me*. I love the sun. (PRESS)
- I think we should *our tennis game till tomorrow. It's going to rain*. (PONE)

13.3

Can you work out the meanings of the underlined words in the sentences below? To help you, here are the meanings of the main Latin prefixes:

Intro: within, inward
de: down, from
in, im: in, into
sub: under
re: again, back
trans: across

- She's a very *intro*spective person and her husband's also a quiet, thoughtful person. *thinks privately about her own thoughts and feelings instead of talking about them to others*
- He always seems to *oppose* everything I suggest. Why can't he agree sometimes?
- I don't think it's healthy to *repress* your emotions too much. You should just behave naturally.
- Perhaps you can deduce what the word means from the way it's formed. Otherwise, use a dictionary.
- The documentary *exposed* corruption in high places. Now everyone knows the truth.
- She just thought he looked so funny. She tried hard to *suppress* a laugh but couldn't.

13.4

Below are some words based on Latin roots and their two-part verb equivalents. Match each word with its synonym. Which in each pair is more formal?

support *hold up* postpone *divert* oppose *inspect* deposit

put off look at *hold up* turn away go against put down

13.5

Over to you

Choose any four words from A opposite. Write sentences which will help you to remember their meanings.

A

What are abstract nouns?

An abstract noun represents an idea, experience or quality rather than an object that you can touch. For example, **advice**, **happiness**, **intention** and **(in)justice** are abstract nouns but **pen**, **bed** and **trousers** are not.

B

Suffixes in abstract nouns

Certain suffixes (see Unit 70) are used frequently in abstract nouns. The most common are **-ment**, **-ion**, **-ness** and **-ity**. The suffix **-ion** sometimes becomes **-tion**, **-sion**, **-ation** or **-ition**. The suffixes **-ment** and **-ion** are usually used to make verbs into abstract nouns. The suffixes **-ness** and **-ity** are added to adjectives.

Here are some examples of abstract nouns using those suffixes.

achievement	affection	carelessness	activity
adjustment	collection	consciousness	authority
amazement	combination	eagerness	creativity
disagreement	expectation	friendliness	curiosity
improvement	frustration	kindness	generosity
investment	limitation	laziness	hostility
replacement	recession	politeness	popularity
retirement	reduction	weakness	sensitivity

C

Less common suffixes forming abstract nouns

-ship, **-dom**, **-th** and **-hood**

The suffixes **-ship** and **-hood** are usually added to other nouns to form abstract nouns. The suffix **-th** is added to an adjective to form an abstract noun and **-dom** can combine with either a noun or an adjective.

Here are some examples of abstract nouns using those suffixes.

boredom	breadth	adulthood
freedom	depth	brotherhood
kingdom	length	childhood
martyrdom	strength	motherhood
stardom	warmth	neighbourhood
wisdom	width	(wo)manhood

When he left school, Rolf trained as an electrician with a large company. There were two other boys in a similar position and he enjoyed their **companionship**. They developed such a good **relationship** that, once they'd completed their **apprenticeship**, they decided to go into **partnership** together. Now they have set up a business under joint **ownership**. They have taken out **membership** of the Association of Electricians and are beginning to attract a great deal of work.

D

Abstract nouns with no suffix

anger	belief	calm	chance
faith	fear	humour	idea
luck	principle	rage	reason
sense	sight	speed	thought

Common mistakes

The definite article is not normally used before an abstract noun, e.g. *Love is blind.* (NOT *The love is blind.*) *I can resist everything except temptation.* (NOT *I can resist everything except the temptation.*)

Exercises

73.1 What is the abstract noun related to each of the following adjectives?

- friendly *friendliness*
- amazed
- frustrating
- kind
- hostile
- strong
- angry
- generous
- polite
- happy
- popular
- weak
- wise
- reasonable
- wide

73.2 Which verbs are related to these abstract nouns? Use a dictionary if necessary.

- collection *collected*
- recession
- belief
- relationship
- strength
- boredom
- activity
- sight
- production
- ownership
- expectation
- adjustment

73.3 Find a synonym with the suffix in brackets for each of the following nouns. Use a thesaurus if necessary.

- animosity (-ity) *hostility*
- astonishment (-ment)
- ingratiation (-ity)
- fraternity (-hood)
- possibility (no suffix)
- substitution (-ment)
- fame (-dom)
- decrease (-tion)
- community (-hood)
- vision (no suffix)
- liberty (-dom)
- fury (no suffix)
- wealth (-ity)
- maternity (-hood)
- possession (-ship)

73.4 Complete each of the quotations with one of the words in the box.

imitation	advice	injustice	kingdom	darkness
-----------	--------	-----------	---------	----------

1 *Imitation* is the highest form of flattery.

2 Do not ask of the ignorant.

3 Better to suffer than to commit it.

4 Better to light a candle than to curse the

5 It's easy to govern a but difficult to rule one's family.

Over to you

Write your own quotations to describe the following abstract nouns. Perhaps you know a saying in your own language that you could translate into English?

- freedom
- love
- life
- curiosity
- imagination

74 Compound adjectives

A

Form and meaning

A compound adjective has two parts. It is usually written with a hyphen, e.g. **well-dressed**, **never-ending**, **sky-blue**. Its meaning is usually clear from the combined words. The second part of the adjective is often a present participle (ending in *-ing*) or past participle (ending in *-ed*, except for irregular verbs).

Language help

Some compound adjectives use a hyphen before a noun but not after a verb (e.g. *a well-dressed man* but *He is always well dressed*).

B

Personal appearance

A number of compound adjectives describe personal appearance. Here is a rather **far-fetched** description of a person starting from the head down. [hard to believe]

Tom was a curly-haired, suntanned, blue-eyed, rosy-checked, thin-lipped, broad-shouldered, left-handed, long-legged young man, wearing an open-necked shirt, brand-new, tight-fitting jeans and open-toed sandals.



C

Personality and character

Other compound adjectives describe a person's character.

Melissa was absent-minded [forgetful], easy-going [relaxed], good-tempered [cheerful], warm-hearted [kind] and quick-witted [quick-thinking/sharp], if perhaps a little big-headed [proud of herself], two-faced [not sincere], self-centred [always thinking about herself instead of others] and stuck-up [thinks she's better than other people (informal)] at times.

D

Prepositions and particles

Another special group of compound adjectives has a preposition or particle in its second part. The workers' declaration of an **all-out** strike forced management to improve conditions. [total] Once there were fields here but now it's a totally **built-up** area. That student's parents are very **well-off** [rich] but they don't give him much money and he is always complaining of being **hard-up**. [poor] I love these shoes and, although they're **worn-out**, I can't throw them away. This area was once prosperous but it now looks very **run-down**. [in a very bad condition]

E

Collocations

Here are some other compound adjectives with typical noun collocations. **air-conditioned** rooms **bullet-proof** windows on the President's car **business-class** ticket **cut-price** goods in the sales **duty-free** items **handmade** furniture **interest-free** credit **last-minute** revision for an exam **long-distance** lorry driver **long-standing** relationship **off-peak** train travel [at a time which is less busy] **part-time** job **so-called** expert **sugar-free** diet **time-consuming** writing of reports **top-secret** information **world-famous** film star

F

Changing compound adjectives

You can vary the compound adjectives listed by changing one part of the adjective. For example, **curly-haired**, **long-haired**, **red-haired** and **wavy-haired**; **first-hand** (knowledge), **first-class** (ticket) and **first-born** (child).

Exercises

14.1

What compound adjectives from the opposite page can describe ...

- a problem that never ends? a(n) *never-ending* problem
- a shirt whose neck is open and which fits tightly? a(n) *loose-fitting* shirt
- a girl who has long legs and brown eyes? a(n) *long-legged* girl
- very new sandals that have open toes? *brand-new* *open-toed* sandals
- a boy who dresses well and is brown from the sun? a(n) *well-dressed* *sun-tanned* boy
- a person who is very relaxed and kind? a(n) *easy-going* *good-tempered* person
- a boy who has curly hair and is sharp? a(n) *curly-haired* *quick-witted* boy
- a story that is difficult to believe? a(n) *far-fetched* story

14.2

Fill the gaps with the words from the box to form new compound adjectives. Use a dictionary if necessary.

tight	blue	man	broad	brown
bullet	fire	water	loose	green
hand	sugar	second	narrow	business
right	home	absent	duty	left

- blue* *-eyed* 4 *absent-minded* 7 *loose-fitting*
- bullet-proof* 5 *handmade* 8 *long-legged*
- brand-new* 6 *well-dressed* *-free*

14.3

Complete the sentences using compound adjectives from D and E opposite.

- It was an old, run-down hotel that needed modernising. None of the rooms were air-conditioned and the so-called restaurant was just a coffee bar. Our room had an old, bullet-proof carpet that was dirty.
- It's a very long-distance up coast, with hotels and villas everywhere.
- We managed to get a last-minute train booking for a Mediterranean cruise.
- Off long, long-distance travel by train can sometimes be more expensive than flying.
- The route of the President's drive to Parliament was so-called secret and he was driven in a bullet-proof limousine.
- The workers went on a long, long-distance strike over a long, long-distance pay dispute and the airport was closed for three days.
- She used to be quite well-paid but she lost a lot of money and now she has a part-time job to help pay the bills.
- She has to have a sugar-free diet but it's very time-consuming trying to make sure everything she buys has no sugar in it.

14.4

Open to you

Which of the adjectives from this unit could you use to describe yourself or your friends or members of your family?

75 Compound nouns 1: noun + noun

A What are compound nouns?

A compound noun is a fixed expression which is made up of more than one word and functions as a noun. Such expressions are frequently combinations of two nouns, e.g. **car park**, **human being** [person], **science fiction** [fiction based on some kind of scientific fantasy]. A number of compound nouns are related to phrasal verbs and these are dealt with in Unit 76.

B How are compound nouns written?

If you understand both parts of the compound noun, the meaning will usually be clear. Compound nouns are usually written as two words, e.g. **tin opener** [an opener for tins], **bank account** [an account in a bank], **pedestrian crossing** [a place for people to cross a road], but sometimes they are written with a hyphen instead of a space between the words, e.g. **self-control** [control over your own emotions and reactions]. Sometimes they may be written as one word, e.g. **earring**, **trademark** [the symbol of a product], **babysitter** [someone who stays with a baby/child while parents are out].

Note that there are no strict rules about which compound words should be written in which way. There is a lot of variation even between dictionaries.

C Stress in compound nouns

Usually the main stress is on the first part of the compound but sometimes it is on the second part. In the common compound nouns below, the word which contains the main stress is underlined.

alarm clock	contact lens	mineral water	voice mail
blood donor	credit card	package holiday	windscreen
burglar alarm	heart attack	steering wheel	windscreen wiper
bus stop	light bulb	tea bag	youth hostel

D Grammar of compound nouns

Compound nouns may be countable, uncountable or only used in either the singular or the plural. The examples given in C are all countable compound nouns. Here are some examples of common uncountable compound nouns.

air traffic control	computer technology	food poisoning	junk food
birth control	cotton wool	hay fever [allergy to pollen]	mail order
blood pressure	data processing	income tax	pocket money

Here are some examples of common compound nouns used only in the singular.

arms race [two or more countries competing to have the most powerful military]	generation gap
climate change	labour force
death penalty	sound barrier
	welfare state

Here are some examples of common compound nouns used only in the plural.

grass roots	kitchen scissors	race relations	sunglasses
headphones	luxury goods	roadworks	traffic lights

Exercises

75.1 Complete these bubble networks with any appropriate expressions from the opposite page. Add extra bubbles if you need them.



75.2 Here are some compound expressions you have looked at in this unit. Explain what the significance of the nouns used in the compound is.

1. windscreen *A screen that protects a driver from the wind.*
2. burglar alarm
3. food poisoning
4. generation gap
5. climate change
6. kitchen scissors
7. luxury goods
8. pocket money
9. welfare state
10. voice mail

75.3 What are they talking about? In each case the answer is a compound noun opposite.

1. I had it taken at the doctor's this morning and he said it was a little high for my age.
Blood pressure
2. It's happening through man-made pollution and is causing more extreme weather.
Global warming
3. She always has terrible sneezing fits in the early summer.
Allergy
4. I can't understand why they spend so much on devising ways of killing people.
War
5. They say that working there is much more stressful than being a pilot.
Job
6. The worst time was when one fell out at the theatre and I spent the interval searching around on the floor. I can't see a thing without them.
Lost
7. I don't think it should ever be used whatever the crime.
Capital punishment
8. It's much easier not to have to make your own travel arrangements.
Travel agent
9. It's not difficult to access mine on my mobile.
Mobile phone
10. You really shouldn't cross the road at any other place.
Crossing
11. I didn't like the low-energy ones at first because they're so slow to get going.
Low-energy drink
12. I had it very badly once when I ate some chicken that wasn't properly cooked.
Food poisoning

75.4 In some cases more than one compound noun can be formed from one particular element. For example, **blood pressure** and **blood donor**; **air traffic control**, **birth control** and **self-control**. Complete the following compound nouns using nouns from the box.

bite	country	fast	inheritance	level
mail	pot	rat	ties	word

1. junk, mail
2. sound, word
3. blood, rat
4. tea, fast
5. mother, ties
6. tax
7. processing
8. crossing
9. food
10. race

75.5 How make up some sentences like those in exercise 75.3 relating to the new compound nouns you made in exercise 75.4.

EXAMPLE 1 *I get a ridiculous amount of this through my letter box every day. (junk mail)*

A Compound nouns based on phrasal verbs

An example of a compound noun based on a phrasal verb is a **takeover** [when one company takes control of another] from to take over. In sections B to E you will see these types of nouns in context. The meaning of the compound noun is given in brackets. To form the plural, 's' is added to the end, e.g. **workouts** [exercise sessions, e.g. at the gym].

B Journalism

Nouns based on phrasal verbs often have an informal feel to them and they are particularly common in newspaper reporting.

In response to the pay offer, there was a **walkout** at the factory. [strike]
There is going to be a **crackdown** on public spending. [action to stop/reduce]
An inquiry into the recent **breakout** from the local prison has recommended measures to tighten security there. [escape]
Last month saw a tremendous **shake-up** in personnel. [change]
Last week we reported on the **break-up** of the mayor's marriage. [collapse]

C The economy

The **takeover** of one of our leading hotel chains has just been announced. [purchase by another company]
We're trying to find some new **outlets** for our products. [places to sell]
Take your things to the **check-out** to pay for them. [cash desk]
Cutbacks will be essential until the recession is over. [reductions]
Our profit was £1,000 on a **turnover** of £10,000. [money passing through a company]
The banks were given a huge **bailout** by the government. [money given to a company to save it from failure]

D Aspects of modern life

What the computer produces depends on the **input**. [information that is put in]
Output has increased thanks to new technology. [production]
We have a rather rapid staff **turnover**. [change]
Just after leaving school he went through a stage of being a **dropout**. [person who rejects society]
The consequences of **fallout** from the explosion at the nuclear reactor were felt for many years. [radioactive dust in the atmosphere]
I can easily get you a **printout** of the latest figures. [paper on which computer information has been printed]
A **breakthrough** has been made in AIDS research. [important discovery]

E General

The following words can be used in more general circumstances.
Many of the problems were caused by a **breakdown** in communications. [failure]
The **outlook** for tomorrow is good - sunny in most places. [prospect]
There are **drawbacks** as well as advantages to every situation. [negative aspects]
The **outcome** of the meeting was not very satisfactory. [conclusion]
TV companies always welcome **feedback** from viewers. [comments]
It was clear from the **outset** that the **set-up** would cause problems. [start; situation]
We parked in a **lay-by** on the **bypass**. [parking space at the side of a road; road avoiding the centre of a town]
The **outbreak** of war took many people by surprise. [start of something unpleasant]

Exercises

18.1 Which of the words on the opposite page would be most likely to follow the adjectives given below?

- 1 radioactive *polluted*.....
- 2 nervous.....
- 3 computer.....
- 4 annual.....
- 5 final.....
- 6 sales.....
- 7 positive.....
- 8 city.....

18.2 Match the compound nouns on the left with the synonyms on the right.

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1 breakdown | ☒ a result |
| 2 break up | ☐ b beginning |
| 3 cutback | ☐ c production |
| 4 drawback | ☐ d strike |
| 5 feedback | ☐ e failure |
| 6 outcome | ☐ f disadvantage |
| 7 output | ☐ g payment |
| 8 outset | ☐ h comments |
| 9 walkout | ☐ i reduction |
| 10 fallout | ☐ j collapse |

18.3 Fill in the gaps with an appropriate word from the opposite page.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 ABC make
bid for EDCO | 2 Prime Minister
announces cabinet | 3 Transport union
threatens..... | 4 Police plan
on vandalism..... |
| 5 Two prisoners
escape to jail | 6 Football star injured
in pre-game..... | 7 Flu.....
in Ireland | 8.....
staff at
supermarket announce strike |

18.4 Here are some compound nouns based on phrasal verbs. Guess the meaning of the underlined word from its context. Show how it relates to its verb.

- 1 Because of the accident there was a three-mile tailback along the motorway.
queue of traffic (it tails back from a vehicle at the head of the queue)
- 2 Police are warning of an increased number of break-ins in this area.
- 3 The papers are claiming the Prime Minister organised a cover-up.
- 4 Unfortunately, our plans have suffered a setback.
- 5 I'm sorry I'm late. There was a terrible hold-up on the bridge.
- 6 The robbers made their getaway in a stolen car.
- 7 There was a surprisingly large turnout at the concert.
- 8 I love having a lie-in on Sundays.
- 9 The lecturer distributed handouts before she started speaking.
- 10 I'm giving my office a major clear-out this week.

18.5 These words are made up of the same parts but they have very different meanings. Explain the meaning of each of the words. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- 1 outlook / look-out
- 2 *Outlook means prospect, whereas a look-out is a person watching out for an enemy or danger.*
- 3 set-up / upset
- 4 outlet / let-out
- 5 outlet / let-out

A What are binomials?

Binomials are expressions (often idiomatic) where two words are joined by a conjunction (usually 'and'). The order of the words is normally fixed. For example:

- odds and ends:** small, unimportant things, e.g. Let's get the main things packed - we can do the odds and ends later. (NOT ends and odds)
- give and take:** a spirit of compromise, e.g. Every relationship needs a bit of give and take to be successful.

You can often tell something is a binomial because of the sound pattern, which may be a repetition of the same first sound or a rhyme.

Tears are **part and parcel** of growing up. [an important part of / belong to]

The boss was **ranting and raving** / **revving** at us. [shouting / very angry]

The old cottage has gone to **rack and ruin**. [is ruined / has decayed]

He's so **prim and proper** at work. [is ruined / has decayed]

The hotel was a bit **rough and ready**. [poor standard or quality]

She has to **wine and dine** important clients. [entertain / take out to restaurants]

They stole my wallet. I was left **high and dry**, with no money. [in a very difficult situation]

B Pairs of near synonyms

At other times, the clue is that the words are near synonyms.

You can **pick and choose** - it's up to you. [have a wide choice]

My English is progressing in / by **leaps and bounds**. [big jumps]

It's nice to have some **peace and quiet** now that the children have left. [a peaceful / calm situation]

The doctor recommended some **rest and recreation**. [R and R. relaxation]

First and foremost, you must work hard. [first and most importantly]

C Binomials composed of grammar words

Many grammar words combine to form binomials.

There are cafés **here and there** along the sea front. [scattered round / in different places]

We've had meetings **on and off** / **off and on**. [occasionally]

I've been running **back and forth** / **to and fro** all day. [to and from somewhere]

She's better now, and **out and about** again. [going out]

She ran **up and down** the street. [in both directions]

D Binomials linked by words other than and

You've got your sweater on **back to front**. [the wrong way]

He won't help her - she'll have to **sink or swim**. [survive or fail]

Slowly but surely, I realised the boat was sinking. [gradually]

Sooner or later, you'll learn your lesson. [sometime in the future]

She didn't want to be just friends - it had to be **all or nothing**.

Well, I'm sorry, that's all I can offer you - **take it or leave it**.

It's about the same distance as from here to Dublin, **give or take** a few miles. [perhaps a mile or two more, or a mile or two less]

Exercises

11.1

Here is a list of words that can combine to form binomials. Use similarities in sound to join them with *and*. Look at A opposite to check that you have the right word order and meaning. Use the binomials to fill the gaps in the sentences which follow.

join	dine	high	parcel	ruin	rough	dry
rack	part	ready	proper	rave	rant	wine
prim and proper						

- The receptionist is always so terribly *prim* and *proper*; the whole atmosphere always seems so very formal.
- I was left *high* and *dry*, with no one to help me.
- The room's a bit *rough* and *ready*, but you're welcome to stay as long as you like.
- She was in a bad temper and was *rant* and *rave* at everybody.
- My hosts *give* and *take* me at the best restaurants.
- That old house in the country has gone to *rack* and *ruin*; nobody looks after it now.
- Working hard and being very disciplined is *part* and *parcel* of training to be a top athlete.

11.2

Use binomials from B and C to rewrite the words in bold. Your new sentences will often sound more informal than the original ones.

- I'm hoping to get some time without noise or interruption at the cottage I've rented. *peace and quiet*
- Most importantly of all, I want to get a good, steady job. *first and foremost*
- I've bumped into Karen occasionally but I don't meet her regularly. *here and there*
- Her violin playing seems to be progressing very rapidly. *leaps and bounds*
- I've been running from one place to another and back again all morning. *to and fro*
- The doctor said I needed a few weeks of relaxation without activity. *rest and recreation*
- We'll have to stay in a cheap hotel. We can't afford to choose what we'd like best. *give or take*
- There are some nice hotels in different places along the coast. *here and there*
- Mrs James was ill for a while, but now she's going out and doing things again. *out and about*
- Robin's office is on the next floor to mine, so we have to go from one floor to another all day. *up and down*

11.3

Some of the binomials in these sentences are in the right order and some are wrong. Correct the wrong ones.

- I spent a long time going forth and back between different offices to get my visa. *wrong: back and forth*
- You look very tired and stressed. You need some rest and recreation.
- I love those old white and black Hollywood films from the 1940s.
- Later or sooner you will learn that he is not a true friend of yours.
- Gentlemen and ladies, would you like to take your seats now, please?
- Slowly but surely my English got better and soon I felt fairly fluent.

11.4

These binomials do not have *and* in the middle. What do they have? Check the opposite page if you are not sure.

- sooner *or* later
- all *or* nothing
- back *and* front
- sink *and* swim
- slowly *and* surely
- give *and* take

Language help

Your language probably has many binomials. Check that the ones which look similar in English have the same word order as your language. These three are very neutral binomials and can be used in formal or informal situations. Try translating them.

an old black and white photograph

Ladies and gentlemen, your attention, please!

She ran back and forth.

A

Abbreviations pronounced as individual letters

Most abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters.

Abbreviations for groups or organisations:

- BBC** British Broadcasting Corporation
CIA Central Intelligence Agency (US government agency collecting information about other countries)
EU European Union
FBI Federal Bureau of Investigation
M16 Military Intelligence 6 (UK equivalent of CIA)
WHO World Health Organisation

Other abbreviations pronounced as individual letters:

- ID** Identity (an identity card or passport)
GM genetically modified
DNA deoxyribonucleic acid (chemical at the centre of living cells)
FAQ frequently asked questions
AKA also known as
IOU I owe you
ATM automated teller machine (cash machine usually outside a bank)
ASAP as soon as possible

Language help

When these abbreviations are stressed words in the sentence, the stress falls on the last letter, e.g. *She works for the CIA. I heard it on the BBC.*

B

Abbreviations pronounced as words

Abbreviations pronounced as individual words are called acronyms.

- NATO** /neɪtəʊ/ North Atlantic Treaty Organisation
PIN /piːn/ Personal Identity Number (e.g. for a bank or credit card)
SAD seasonal affective disorder (lacking energy and enthusiasm in winter in latitudes where there is little sunlight at that time)
AWOL /ə'wɒl/ absent without leave [permission; usually used in military contexts]

Some acronyms have become so normal as words that people do not think of them as abbreviations any longer, and so they are not written in capital letters.

laser radar scuba sonar**C****Clippings**

Some words are often used in an abbreviated form in informal situations. We say, for example, **kilo** instead of 'kilogram' or **gig** for 'gigabyte'. Other examples include:

- air con** (air conditioning) **satnav** (satellite navigation system)
uni (university) **mobile** (mobile phone) or **(US) cell** (cellphone)
carbs (carbohydrates) **sci-fi** (science fiction) **high-tech** (high-technology)

D**Written abbreviations**

Some abbreviations are most frequently used in writing.

- PTO** Please turn over (turn to the next page)
PS post script (written at the end of a message or letter, when you want to add something else)
RSVP Répondez s'il vous plaît (French, meaning 'please answer') (written at the end of an invitation, to indicate that you should reply)
RIP Rest in peace (often written on a headstone where someone is buried after they have died)

Exercises

18.1

Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1. Whenever I am in the world I listen to the news on the radio. ☒ a. ID.
 2. Most websites have a page dealing with. ☐ b. PIN.
 3. I recently took some money out of my wallet and left me an. ☐ c. BBC.
 4. What kind of people we are depends on our. ☐ d. SAD.
 5. They won't let you into the club without any. ☐ e. FAQs.
 6. You won't be able to use the ATM if you've forgotten your. ☐ f. AWOL.
 7. I don't know where John can be - he's gone. ☐ g. DNA.
 8. I always feel lethargic in December - I think I suffer from. ☐ h. IOU.

18.2

Find abbreviations from A, B or C opposite to fit these categories.

1. Find two that relate to measurement. **kilo** **gig**
 2. Find four that relate to food and health. **gig**
 3. Find three that relate to money. **gig**
 4. Find one that relates to sport. **gig**
 5. Find three that are political organisations. **gig**
 6. Find two that relate to equipment using sound or radio waves. **gig**

18.3

Fill each gap with an appropriate abbreviation or acronym.

1. Please could you buy me a **kilo** of apples?
 2. William Barclay **gig**, James Stubbs has been charged with burglary.
 3. The surgeons used **gig** technology to carry out the operation.
 4. My sister works in a very **gig** office using all the most up-to-date hardware and software.
 5. Bats cannot see and use a kind of **gig** to find their way around.
 6. When you're driving it's much easier to use a **gig** rather than a road atlas.

18.4

Complete the texts with the correct abbreviations from D opposite.

1. Party! At Sam and Beth's house Saturday 14 August 6 till 10 by 28 July
 2. I've gone shopping with Ana. Back around six. See you later. Emma
 3. In loving memory of James Goodman 1945 - 2015
 4. Patients should arrive ten minutes before their appointment time, and must inform their doctor if they are unable to come to an appointment.

18.5

Over to you

1. What's the nearest uni to the place where you live?
 2. Have you ever tried scuba diving?
 3. Would you be happy to eat GM food?
 4. Do you know anyone who has SAD?
 5. What is the main source of carbs in your diet?
 6. How common is air con in your country?

A

Learning and remembering multi-word expressions

Fixed expressions, also known as idioms, often have meanings that are not clear or obvious. For example, the expression to **feel under the weather**, which means 'to feel unwell', is typical. The words do not tell us what it means, but the context usually helps.

Think of multi-word expressions as units, just like single words; always record the whole expression in your notebook, along with information on grammar and collocation. e.g. This tin opener **has seen better days**. [It is rather old and broken down; usually of things, always perfect tense form]

Multi-word expressions of this type are often rather informal and include a personal comment on the situation. They are sometimes humorous or ironic. As with any informal words, be careful how you use them. Never use them just to sound 'fluent' or 'good at English'. In a formal situation with a person you do not know, don't say:

'How do you do, Mrs Watson? Do **take the weight off your feet**.' [sit down]

Instead say: 'Do sit down' or 'Have a seat.'

B

Organising multi-word expressions

Multi-word expressions can be grouped in a variety of ways. It is probably best to use whichever way you find most useful to help you remember them.

Grouping by grammar

get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick [misunderstand]	} verb + object
pull a fast one [trick/deceive someone]	
poke your nose in (to) [interfere]	} verb + prepositional phrase
be over the moon [extremely happy/related]	
feel down in the dumps [depressed/low]	
be in the red [have a negative bank balance]	

Grouping by meaning, e.g. expressions describing people's character/intellect

He's as **daft** as a **brush**. [very stupid/silly]

She **takes the biscuit**. / **busts it** [is the extreme / the worst of all]

They're a **pain in the neck**. [a nuisance / a difficult person]

Little Sam's as **good as gold**. [behaves very well - usually used about children]

Grouping by a verb or other key word, e.g. expressions with **make**

Why do you have to **make a meal out of everything**? [exaggerate the importance of everything]

I think we should **make a move**. It's gone ten o'clock. [go/leave]

Most politicians are **on the make**. I don't trust any of them.

[wanting money/power for oneself]

I'm afraid I'm **making heavy weather** of my essay. [making slow and difficult progress]

C

Grammar of multi-word expressions

It is important when using these expressions to know just how flexible their grammar is. Some are more fixed than others. For instance, **barking up the wrong tree** [be mistaken] is always used in continuous, not simple form, e.g. I think you're **barking up the wrong tree**. (NOT I think you **bark up** the wrong tree.)

A good dictionary may help, but it is best to observe the grammar in real examples.

Note how Units 85-94 group expressions in different ways.

For more information on multi-word expressions, see *English Idioms in Use* by Michael McCarthy and Felicity O'Dell.

Exercises

Grammar homework 08

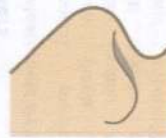
19.1 Complete the expressions from A and B opposite.

- When I passed all my exams, I felt over the moon.
- This printer isn't working again! It's a pain in the neck.
- It's almost midnight! I'd better be making a move.
- I spent too much money last month and now I'm in the red.
- It's time to change my laptop. It's five years old and has seen better days.
- She is the absolute limit! She really takes the biscuit.
- Oh dear, Matthew completely misunderstood me. He always seems to get the wrong end of the stick.
- I'm sorry. I do some really stupid things. You must think I'm as daft as a brush.
- I wonder what's wrong with Ursula? She looks down in the dumps.
- I don't trust politicians. Most of them are just on the make.

19.2 Which expressions from the opposite page do these pictures remind you of?



1 be over the moon



3 poke your nose in (to)



2 feel down in the dumps



4 be as good as gold

19.3 Which is correct, (a) or (b)? Check with A and B opposite.

- Sit down and (a) get (b) take the weight off your feet. b
- Why does she always have to (a) poke (b) peek her nose into other people's affairs?
- I was feeling (a) under (b) below the weather, so I didn't go to work.
- Zoe pulled a (a) quick (b) fast one and didn't pay for her share of the meal.
- All right, all right! You don't have to (a) cook (b) make a meal out of it!
- He's really making (a) heavy (b) bad weather of what should be a simple task.

19.4 Without using a dictionary, try to work out the meaning of the underlined expressions from the context.

- It's midnight. It's time to hit the sack. go to bed
- This is just kid's stuff. I want something more difficult and challenging!
- I feel fit as a fiddle ever since I started going regularly to the gym.
- I can't understand why he's giving me the cold shoulder. He's usually so friendly.
- I haven't seen Simone for ages. We only get together once in a blue moon.
- I think I've got the hang of this photo-editing program now, though it was complicated at first.

Over to you

Try a grouping exercise with six expressions from the opposite page, using any of the methods suggested in B. Which type of grouping works best for the expressions you chose?

A

Vowels

The phonetic transcription is provided for some of the words below. Check you understand the symbols, which are used by most good dictionaries (see page 258).

To master English pronunciation it is helpful to learn the 22 phonemic symbols for English vowel sounds. These are important because the vowel letters can be pronounced in many different ways:

a	cat /æ/	about /a/	wander /ɒ/	last /ɑː/	late /eɪ/	e	met /e/	meter /iː/	love /ʌ/	to /u/
i	alive /aɪ/	give /ɪ/				o	sorry /ɒ/	go /o/	team /iː/	react /iə/
u	put /ʊ/	cut /ʌ/	cupid /juː/			ea	head /e/	team /iː/	react /iə/	would /u/
ie	friend /iː/	science /aɪə/				oo	our /aʊ/	route /uː/	cook /u/	coopt /u/
ei	rein /eɪ/	receive /iː/	reinforce /iː/			oo	cool /uː/	cook /u/	coopt /u/	

B

Silent letters

The letters below in **bold** are silent in the examples:

p	psychic /ˈsaɪkɪk/	psychiatry	pneumatic	receipt	pseudonym	psychology
b	comb /kəʊm/	dumb	numb	tomb	climb	womb
d	debt /deɪt/	subtle	debt	half	talk	palm
t	could /kʊd/	should	calm	honest	hour	hourly
h	honour /ˈɒnə/	honourable	castle	listen	fasten	soften
wh	whistle /ˈwɪsəl/	knife	know	knob	knowledge	
k	knee /niː/	card /kɑːd/	park	farm	burn	work
r	knot	storm	tart	teacher	water	

Language help

The letter 'r' is not silent in some varieties of English, for example American, Irish, Scottish.

C

Changing stress

Some two-syllable words in English have the same form for the noun and the verb. The stress is on the first syllable of the word when it is a noun and the second syllable when it is a verb, e.g. *Wool* is a major Scottish export. *Scotland exports a lot of wool*. Here are some other words like this.

conduct	conflict	contest	decrease	suspect	record
desert	import	increase	insult	transfer	reject
permit	present	progress	protest	transport	upset

Multi-syllable words in English tend to put their main stress on the third syllable from the end, e.g. *photograph*, *telephone*, *arithmetic*. As a result, as a long word adds suffixes its word stress does not stay on the same syllable, e.g. *photographer*, *telephony*, *arithmetical*. Note that, although this rule is useful, it does have plenty of exceptions.

Common mistakes

These words are often mispronounced.

apostrophe /əˈpɒstrəfi/	catastrophe /kəˈtæstrəfi/	cupboard /ˈkʌbəd/
recipe /ˈresipi/	vegetables /ˈvedʒtəblz/	sword /ˈsɔːd/
ought /ɔːt/	muscle /ˈmʌsəl/	interesting /ˈɪntrəstɪŋ/

Exercises

80.1 Underline all the silent letters in the following sentences.

- They sang a psalm to honour the memory of the world-famous psychologist as she was laid to rest in the family tomb.
- The psychiatrist was knifed in the knee as she was walking home.
- He should have whistled as he fastened his sword to his belt.
- You could have left me half the Christmas cake on Wednesday.

80.2 Which word is the odd one out in each of these groups?

- worry, sorry, lorry, hurry
- doubt, could, shout
- sword, cord, word
- cough, rough, tough
- come, some, dome
- land, wand, sand
- head, plead, tread
- soot, root, foot

80.3 What word could a poet use to rhyme with each of the words below? Use your dictionary to check the pronunciation.

- enough
- plough
- through
- cough
- though



80.4 Circle or highlight the stressed syllable in each of the underlined words.

- They paid a £1 million transfer fee to transfer the player to their team.
- Although they suspected several people were party involved, the police decided to concentrate on Jo as the main suspect.
- There are conflicting views as to the cause of the conflict.
- All this upset over the wedding has really upset them.
- The cost of living has increased while there has been a decrease in wages.
- A work permit permits you to work for a period of six months.
- I wish I could record a hit record!
- Despite the disgraceful conduct of the audience, James went on conducting the orchestra.

80.5 Write out the words below using the normal English alphabet.

- /ˈmʌsəl/ muscle
- /kəˈtæstrəfi/ catastrophe
- /ˈbɒkɪt/ booklet
- /kəmˈkæl/ camel
- /ˈsætəl/ satellite
- /rˈslɪt/ slit
- /haɪt/ height
- /resˈpi/ recipe

80.6 Underline the stressed syllable in each of the words below.

- photograph
- zoology
- arithmetic
- psychology
- psychiatry
- photography
- zoologist
- arithmetical
- psychologist
- psychiatric
- photographer
- zoological
- arithmetician
- psychological
- psychiatrist

80.7 Find words on the opposite page to match each definition. Say them aloud.

- cooking instructions *recipe*
- between warm and cold
- an old weapon
- a punctuation mark
- the opposite of descend
- describes a sea that isn't rough

A

What are onomatopoeic words?

Onomatopoeic words are those which seem to sound like their meaning. The most obvious examples are verbs for the noises which animals make.



cows moo



cats meow and purr



lions roar



bees buzz



small birds tweet

B

Letters, sounds and their associations

Certain combinations of sounds have particular associations in English.

- gr-** at the beginning of a word can suggest something unpleasant or miserable, e.g. She was **groaning** with pain. [make a deep sound forced out by pain or despair]
Everyone was **grumbling** about the quality of the food. [complain in a bad-tempered way]
Don't be so **grumpy**! [bad-tempered]
The teacher **growled** angrily at the boys. [make a deep, threatening sound, like an angry dog]
- cl-** at the beginning of a word can suggest something sharp and/or metallic, e.g. Click on 'login' to enter the website. [make a short sharp sound]
There was a loud **clang** as the metal bar hit the stone floor. [make a loud ringing noise]
Horses go **clip-clop** on the road.
- sp-** at the beginning of a word can suggest water or other liquids or powders, e.g. She **splashed** water over her face to wake herself up. [cause a liquid to fly about in drops]
The meat was horrible and she **spat** it out. [send liquid or food out from the mouth]
I never use hair **sprays**. [to spray = send liquid through the air in tiny drops either by the wind or some instrument]
He **sprinkled** sugar on his breakfast cereal and ate it quickly. [scatter small drops]
Water was **spurting** out of the broken pipe. [come out in a sudden burst]
- wh-** at the beginning of a word often suggests the movement of air, e.g. He **whistled** and the horse ran towards him. [a high-pitched noise made by forcing air or steam through a small opening]
Suddenly a large insect **whizzed** over my head and scared me. [make the sound of something rushing through air]
Old Mr Banks **wheezed** as he climbed the stairs. [breathe noisily especially with a whistling sound in the chest]

- ash** at the end of a word can suggest something fast and violent, e.g. **smash** [break violently into small pieces] **dash** [move fast or violently] **crash** [suddenly strike violently and noisily] **bash** [strike heavily so as to break or injure] **mash** [make soft or pulpy by beating or crushing] **gash** [a long deep cut or wound]



a smashed window



a car crash



sausages and mashed potato

Exercises

81.1 Match the verbs and the animals which make the sound. Some of the verbs are not given on the opposite page.

- 1 cat ☐
- 2 lion ☐
- 3 sheep ☐
- 4 snake ☐
- 5 dog ☐
- 6 bee ☐
- 7 small bird ☐
- 8 lion ☐

- a roar
- b growl
- c buzz
- d purr
- e tweet
- f hiss
- g cluck
- h bleat



81.2 Look at B opposite and insert the missing letters.

- 1 The plant looked very dry, so I **sp**ayed some water on the leaves.
- 2 Old Mrs Jenkins had bronchitis and was **ee**zing all the time.
- 3 I heard the sound of a horse **ip** opping along the road.
- 4 Brightly coloured insects **zz**ed around our heads as we walked through the jungle.
- 5 Stop **um**bling about everything and try to enjoy yourself!
- 6 The d **ed** out of the door and ran down the street.
- 7 After the accident, oil **ur**ted from the pipe and polluted the river.
- 8 As I was carrying my computer to my new office, I b **ed** it against the door and damaged it.

81.3 Fill the gaps with words from the opposite page.

- 1 The cat was because it had eaten, it with contentment and fell asleep.
- 2 on the 'copy' symbol, then you can copy the text to a new file.
- 3 Everyone In despair when they heard the bad news.
- 4 The car had into a wall and was badly damaged, but luckily no one was hurt.
- 5 Do you like your potatoes fried or shall I them for you?
- 6 The boy had a on his knee and blood was pouring from it.

81.4 Answer the questions.

- 1 What things do people normally sprinkle on food? *sugar, salt, pepper, spices, herbs*
- 2 Which would make a clang if it hit a hard surface, a piece of wood or a piece of metal?
- 3 If someone growls at you, are they probably happy or angry with you?
- 4 Can you whistle? If so, when would you do it?
- 5 What things make you grumpy?
- 6 What might you do if you put some food into your mouth and it tasted very bad?

Over to you

Which of the sounds listed opposite exist in your language? Do they have similar associations?

A

What are onomatopoeic words?

Onomatopoeic words are those which seem to sound like their meaning. The most obvious examples are verbs for the noises which animals make.

cows **moo**cats **meow** and **purr**lions **roar**bees **buzz**small birds **tweet**

B

Letters, sounds and their associations

Certain combinations of sounds have particular associations in English.

- gr-** at the beginning of a word can suggest something unpleasant or miserable, e.g. She was **groaning** with pain. [make a deep sound forced out by pain or despair]
Everyone was **grumbling** about the quality of the food. [complain in a bad-tempered way]
Don't be so **grumpy**! [bad-tempered]
The teacher **growled** angrily at the boys. [make a deep, threatening sound, like an angry dog]
- cl-** at the beginning of a word can suggest something sharp and/or metallic, e.g. Click on 'login' to enter the website. [make a short sharp sound]
There was a loud **clang** as the metal bar hit the stone floor. [make a loud ringing noise]
Horses go **clip-clop** on the road.
- sp-** at the beginning of a word can suggest water or other liquids or powders, e.g. She **splashed** water over her face to wake herself up. [cause a liquid to fly about in drops]
The meat was horrible and she **spat** it out. [send liquid or food out from the mouth]
I never use hair **sprays**. [to spray = send liquid through the air in tiny drops either by the wind or some instrument]
He **sprinkled** sugar on his breakfast cereal and ate it quickly. [scatter small drops]
Water was **spurting** out of the broken pipe. [come out in a sudden burst]
- wh-** at the beginning of a word often suggests the movement of air, e.g. He **whistled** and the horse ran towards him. [a high-pitched noise made by forcing air or steam through a small opening]
Suddenly a large insect **whizzed** over my head and scared me. [make the sound of something rushing through air]
Old Mr Banks **wheezed** as he climbed the stairs. [breathe noisily especially with a whistling sound in the chest]
- ash** at the end of a word can suggest something fast and violent, e.g. **smash** [break violently into small pieces] **dash** [move fast or violently] **crash** [suddenly strike violently and noisily] **bash** [strike heavily so as to break or injure] **mash** [make soft or pulpy by beating or crushing] **gash** [a long deep cut or wound]

a **smashed** windowa **car crash**sausages and **mashed** potato

Exercises

81.1 Match the verbs and the animals which make the sound. Some of the verbs are not given on the opposite page.

- 1 cat ☒ a roar
2 hen ☐ b growl
3 sheep ☐ c buzz
4 snake ☐ d purr
5 dog ☐ e tweet
6 bee ☐ f hiss
7 small bird ☐ g cluck
8 lion ☐ h bleat



81.2 Look at B opposite and insert the missing letters.

- 1 The plant looked very dry, so Ied some water on the leaves.
2 Old Mrs Jenks had bronchitis and wasezing all the time.
3 I heard the sound of a horsepopping along the road.
4 Brightly coloured insectszzed around our heads as we walked through the jungle.
5 Stopumbling about everything and try to enjoy yourself!
6 She d.....ed out of the door and ran down the street.
7 After the accident, oilurted from the pipe and polluted the river.
8 As I was carrying my computer to my new office, I b.....ed it against the door and damaged it.

81.3 Fill the gaps with words from the opposite page.

- 1 The cat was because it wanted food. After it had eaten, it with contentment and fell asleep.
2 on the 'copy' symbol, then you can copy the text to a new file.
3 Everyone in despair when they heard the bad news.
4 The car had into a wall and was badly damaged, but luckily no one was hurt.
5 Do you like your potatoes fried or shall I them for you?
6 The boy had a on his knee and blood was pouring from it.

81.4 Answer the questions.

- 1 What things do people normally sprinkle on food?
2 Which would make a clang if it hit a hard surface, a piece of wood or a piece of metal?
3 If someone growls at you, are they probably happy or angry with you?
4 Can you whistle? If so, when would you do it?
5 What things make you grumpy?
6 What might you do if you put some food into your mouth and it tasted very bad?

Over to you

Which of the sounds listed opposite exist in your language? Do they have similar associations?

A

Homophones and homographs

Homophones are words with different meanings which are pronounced in the same way but are spelt differently, e.g. **row** as in 'at the end of the row' and **roe** [fish eggs].

Homographs are words which are written in the same way but have different meanings and may be pronounced differently. Compare **row** in 'we had a row' /raʊ/ about who should pay for the tickets' [argument] and 'he sat at the end of the row' /rəʊ/ [line of seats].

B

Homophones

air/heir	mail/male	raise/rays	tea/tee
aloud/allowed	meat/meet	read/reed	there/their/they're
break/brake	mown/moan	rein/rain/reign	through/threw
fare/fair	our/hour	right/rite/write	tire/tyre
faze/phase	pair/pear/pare	sale/sail	toe/tow
flu/flew	pale/pail	scene/seen	waist/waste
grate/great	pane/pain	sight/site	wait/weight
groan/grown	peal/peel	so/sew	weak/week
hoarse/horse	place/plaice	sole/soul	weather/whether
its/it's	practise/practice	some/sum	whine/wine
lays/laze	pray/prey	steak/stake	would/wood

C

Homographs with differing pronunciations

Check the pronunciation of the words in bold. You can use the list of phonemic symbols on page 258.

- I **live** in the north of England. /l v/
- My favourite rock group is singing **live** on TV tonight. /la v/
- I **read** in bed each night. /ri d/
- I **read** War and Peace last year. /red/
- The **lead** singer in the group is great. /li d/
- Lead** pipes are dangerous. /led/ [metal, chemical element]
- The **wind** blew the tree down. /w nd/
- Wind** the rope round this tree. /wa nd/
- She **wound** the string round the parcel and tied it up. /waʊnd/
- He suffered a terrible **wound** in the war. /waʊnd/
- This book is called *English Vocabulary in Use*. /ju s/
- You must know how to **use** words as well as their meaning. /ju z/
- They lived in a large old **house**. /haʊs/
- The buildings **house** a library and two concert halls as well as a theatre. /haʊz/
- The **sow** has five piglets. /sau/ [female pig]
- The farmers **sow** the seeds in the spring. /sau/ [plant seeds]
- Bathing** the baby at night may help her to fall asleep. /ba n/
- (on a sign at a beach) No **bathing**. /be n/

Common mistakes

I don't know **whether** to go or not. (NOT I don't know **weather** to go or not.)

Exercises

Exercise 1

Each underlined word rhymes with, or sounds similar to, one of the words in brackets. Choose the matching word.

- The girl lives *give* with knows a good pub with live *five* music. (five / give)
- The main house *houses* a collection of rare stamps. (house / mouse)
- It's no use using *use* this gadget. (snoodle / juice)
- You sow *sow* the seeds while I feed the sow *cow*. (cow / go)
- The violinist in the bow *bow* tie made a bow *now*. (now / so)
- He's the lead *lead* singer in the group 'Lead' *plough*. (head / dead)
- What a row *row* from the last house in the row *plough*! (plough / though)
- Does he still suffer from his wound *wound*? (found / tuned)
- I wound *wound* the rope around the tree to strengthen it against the gale. (round / spooned)
- It's hard to wind *wind* in the sails in this wind *find*. (find / tinned)

Write the word given in phonemic script in the correct spelling for the context.

- I really must do some more exercise or I'll never lose /weɪt/ *weight*.
- Watching TV game shows is such a /weɪt/ *weight* of time.
- There's a hole in the /səʊl/ *soul* of my shoe.
- He broke a /peɪn/ *pain* of glass in the kitchen window.
- The eldest son of the monarch is the /leɪ/ *lay* to the throne.
- You are not /ə'laʊd/ *allowed* to talk during the test.
- Look at that lovely yacht with the red /seɪl/ *sail*.
- He's going /ruː/ *ru* a rather difficult /leɪz/ *lays* at the moment.
- Don't throw away that orange /piː/ *pie*. I need it for a recipe.

Write one sentence using both of the words which correspond to the phonemic script.

- /pʁɛɪ/ *prey* She was quite pale after the exertion of carrying such a heavy pail of water.
- /veɪ/ *vay*
- /pʁɛɪ/ *prey*
- /pʁɛɪ/ *prey*
- /seɪl/ *sail*
- /leɪz/ *lays*

Homophones and homographs are at the root of many jokes in English. Match the first part of each of these children's jokes with the second part and then explain the play on words involved in each.

- What do you get if you cross a sheep and a kangaroo?
This plays on two meanings of jumper - a sweater and a person or animal that jumps.
- What did the south wind say to the north wind?
a Let's play draughts.
- Why did the man take his pencil to bed?
b A drum takes a lot of beating.
- Why is history the sweetest lesson?
c A woolly jumper.
- What's the best birthday present?
d He wanted to draw the curtains.
- Because it's full of dates.
e Because it's full of dates.

Choose pairs of words from B opposite to describe the pictures below.



1 rain and reign.

2

3

4

A

What are uncountable nouns?

Countable nouns can be used with **a/an** and made plural (e.g. **a hat, two hats**). Uncountable nouns are not normally used with **a(n)** or the plural, e.g. **information** (NOT **an information** or **some informations**). You can learn uncountable nouns in groups associated with the same subject or area. Here are some useful headings.

B

Travel

luggage (more common than **luggage** in AmE)



accommodation



money
currency



information



transport

C

Food

The word **food** is usually uncountable, and so are many food names. Other uncountable food words can be added to this list.

sugar **rice** **spaghetti** **butter** **bread**
flour **soup**

D

Abstract uncountable nouns and nouns for activities

She gave me some **advice** on how to study for the exam.

I picked up some interesting **knowledge** on that course.

She's made a lot of **progress** in a very short time.

She has done some **research** on marine life.

They've done a lot of **work** on the project.

The teacher always gives us **homework** at the weekend.

Do you have any **experience** of working with children?

Wealth [state of being rich] does not guarantee happiness, but neither does **poverty**. [state of being poor]

E

Material and resources

For making clothes, furniture, etc.: **cloth** (e.g. silk) **leather** For energy: **coal** **oil**

For buildings: **stone** **brick** **plastic** General: **equipment** **software**

F

Other common uncountable nouns

I have some **news** for you: Henry is getting married.

What lovely **weather**! Let's go for a walk.

Common mistakes

Although you may have learnt these words and their meanings before, it is very easy to continue making mistakes with them.

We say: **What terrible weather!** I have **some news** for you. We bought **some new furniture**.

(NOT **What a terrible weather!** I have **a news** for you. We bought **some new furnitures**.)

See Unit 86 for ways of making uncountable nouns countable.

Exercises**83.1 Complete each sentence in two ways using the nouns in brackets.**

- He gave me *(some) advice*..... about applying for university courses. (advice / tip)
- I'm sorry, I can't come. I have to do. (job / homework)
- She's doing teenage slang in English for her university project.
- You'll need if you want to make a Chinese meal. (rice / noodle)
- I have for you: you're going to meet the President next week! (news / surprise)
- They make for the furniture industry in this factory. (textile / cloth)

83.2 List these words under the headings in the table: uncountables and countables. Then pair up the words which have related meanings.

recommendation	money	bread	case	information	job	advice	travel
coin	trip	work	baggage	fact	loaf		
uncountables							
countables							

83.3 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one.

- We had such a terrible weather that we left the campsite and found an accommodation in town instead. *some*
- In the south of England, most houses are made of stones, but in the north, bricks are more common.
- I love antique furnitures, but I would need an advice from a specialist before I bought any. My knowledge in that area are very poor.
- Her researches are definitely making great progresses these days. She has done a lot of original works recently.
- What equipments do you need to go skiing? If you can give me any informations, I would be grateful.
- Oil reports have produced a great deal of wealths for the country.
- Package holidays often include transports from the airport to your accommodations.
- I don't have any experiences of working in education, but I would like to do some voluntary works in a school.
- A poverty is the biggest problem in many countries.
- I bought a new software that shows you the kind of weathers every country has each month of the year.

83.4 Can you add more items to the lists in C and E opposite?

Food: *olive oil, salt, milk, honey*

For making clothes, furniture, etc.:

For buildings:

For energy:

Over to you

Imagine you are going away for a week's holiday and you pack a suitcase with everything you need. Make a list of what you would pack. Which items on your list are **uncountable** nouns in English?

A

Tools, instruments, pieces of equipment



B

Things we wear



C

Other useful words

The **graphics** in this game are amazing! [pictures produced on a computer]
When will the **goods** be delivered? [articles/items]
The architect inspected the **foundations** [under the building] before declaring that the **premises** were safe. [the building itself]
The military **authorities** have established their **headquarters** in the old Town Hall.
The **acoustics** in the new opera house are near perfect. [quality of the sound]
The **contents** / **'kɒntents** of the house were sold after her death.
Looks are less important than personality in a partner.
As you come to the **outskirts** of the village, there are **traffic lights**. Turn left there. [the beginning or end of the village]
The **stairs** are a bit dangerous - be careful.
The **proceeds** of the concert are going to the children's fund. [money from selling tickets]
A terrorist has escaped from prison. Her **whereabouts** are unknown. [where she is]

D

Words with plural form but used mostly with singular verbs

Names of some games: **billiards** **dominoes** **draughts** **darts** **bowls** **cards**
Names of subjects/activities: **physics** **economics** **classics** **gymnastics** **athletics**

Common mistakes

Some words look plural, or may be thought of as plural, but are not, e.g. **news**, **spaghetti** (an Italian plural form), **series**, **means**. *The news is good.* (NOT The news are good.) *The spaghetti was delicious.* (NOT The spaghetti were delicious.) *There was a series of programmes on TV about Japan.* *Is there a cheap means of transport I could use to get there?*

Exercises

8.1.1 Make a list of subjects you studied at school or elsewhere. How many of the words are plural? Use a dictionary if necessary.

8.1.2 Which things listed on the opposite page can be used to:

- 1 cut a hedge? *shears*
- 2 help you to read small print?
- 3 cut paper?
- 4 hold your trousers up?
- 5 protect your clothes if you're repairing a car?
- 6 look at distant objects?
- 7 get a nail out of a piece of wood?
- 8 keep a prisoner's hands together?

8.1.3 Name the items on the clothes line and tick the words that are only used in the plural.



8.1.4 Fill the gaps with an appropriate plural-form noun.

- 1 (to a child) Come on! Get your *pyjamas* on! It's time to go to bed.
- 2 The _____ of the rock concert are going to two charities.
- 3 The _____ in the new concert hall are superb. I've never heard such clear sound.
- 4 The escaped prisoner is tall, dark and has a beard. His _____ are unknown.
- 5 You must use _____ or _____ if you want to listen to your music on a train.
- 6 The _____ have forbidden the import of all foreign _____.
- 7 Computer _____ were first used in films in the 1970s.

8.1.5 Odd one out. In each group, one of the nouns is always used in the plural. Which one?

- 1 sock, trouser, slipper - *trousers* 3 knife, scissor, razor
- 2 billiard, squash, tennis 4 tracksuit, costume, dungaree

8.1.6 In this silly story, change the singular nouns to plural where appropriate. Change the verbs where necessary.

I decided that if I wanted to be a pop star I'd have to move to London. I finally got a room, but it was on the outskirts of the city. The owner didn't live on the premise, so I could make as much noise as I liked. The acoustic in the bathroom was fantastic, so I practised there. I made so much noise I almost shook the foundation! I went to the headquarter of the Musicians' Union, but a guy there said I just didn't have the right looks to be famous. Oh well, never mind!

Countable and uncountable nouns with different meanings

A

Countable and uncountable nouns

When we use a countable noun we are thinking of specific **things** that can be counted (e.g. two glasses). When we use an uncountable noun we are thinking of **stuff** or **material** or the **idea** of a **thing in general** (e.g. this door is made of glass).

stuff/materials	things
 glass	 a glass / glasses
 cloth	 a cloth
 fish	 a fish
 work	 a work

Be careful - there's broken glass on the road. I need a cloth to wipe the table.
We had **fish** for dinner. *Hamlet* is one of Shakespeare's most famous **works**.

Here are some more nouns that can be used in both ways with different meanings.

countable	uncountable
There's a black hair in my soup; it must be yours!	She has beautiful red hair .
Did you buy a paper this morning? [a newspaper]	The printer has run out of paper .
They are campaigning to help indigenous peoples of South America.	I love meeting people from different countries. [individuals]
Can I borrow your iron ? My shirt is a bit creased. [instrument]	People used to think ships made of iron would sink. [metal]
I had some interesting experiences during my trip to Latin America. [things that happened to me]	She has little work experience . [knowledge or skill obtained from doing something]
The city has a yearly arts festival. [music, theatre, etc.]	Have you been to the modern art museum? It's wonderful. [usually refers to painting, drawing and sculpture]
He studied arts not sciences at uni. [subjects such as languages or history, always plural and without the]	
I've seen that film three times . [occasions]	Time passes very slowly if you have a boring job. [clock time, calendar time]
We had some good times at university. [experiences]	

B

Food

The names of food items often have a different meaning depending on whether they are used as countable or uncountable nouns (see **fish** above).

 coffee/tea	→	 a coffee and two teas
 potato	→	Just two potatoes , please!
Would you like some chocolate ?	→	Would you like a chocolate ?
 salt and pepper	→	 a pepper
a hot dog with onion	→	 an onion

Exercises

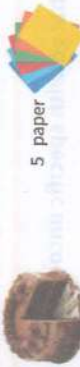
85.1 Would you normally expect to find these things in most people's houses, flats, garages or gardens? In which room or place? Answer for both meanings (countable and uncountable).

- an iron / iron *Yes, most people have an iron to iron their clothes; they might keep it in the kitchen somewhere. Most people don't normally keep iron (the metal) at home, but they might have things made of iron (e.g. a frying pan) in the kitchen.*

- a cloth / cloth
- a fish / fish
- a glass / a glass
- a wood / wood
- pepper / a pepper
- paper / a paper

85.2 Which question would you ask? Could I have/borrow a(n) ...? or Could I have/borrow some ...?

- cake *Could I have some cake?*



5 paper



6 rubber



7 glass



8 chocolate

85.3 Complete the answers using the word in brackets. Use a(n) or the if the meaning is countable.

- Oh dear! I've spilt water on the floor! (cloth) Never mind. Here's *a cloth - just wipe it up.*
- How did you get that puncture in your car tyre? (glass) I drove *a (child) Daddy, what are car tyres made of? (rubber) They're made of rubber.*
- Have you worked in a primary school before? (experience) No, I don't *have any experience.*
- I wonder who won the general election in Sweden? (paper) We could buy *a (child) Mum, what's the Mona Lisa? (work) It's a work of art.*
- What's your favourite ice-cream flavour? (chocolate) My favourite *is chocolate.*

85.4 What is the difference between (a) and (b) in each pair? Check in a dictionary if you're not sure.

- a She was always a great lover of the arts.
b Are you an art lover?
- a Arts here means *theatre, music, etc.*
b Art here means *art.*
- a (road sign) PLANT AND HEAVY MACHINERY CROSSING
b I've bought you a house plant.
- a Plant here means *a plant.*
b A plant here means *a factory.*
- a There was a lot of damage to the car as a result of the accident.
b The film star won \$500,000 in damages because the story in the newspaper was untrue.
- a Damage here means *the act of damaging.*
b Damages here means *money paid to someone who has been damaged.*
- a I've had some bad times at the dentist's!
b How many times have you been to the dentist's this year?
- a Times here means *periods of time.*
b Times here means *visits.*

A Bit and piece

You can make many uncountable nouns singular and countable by adding a **piece of** or a (little) **bit of**. Similarly, you can make such nouns plural with **pieces of** or **bits of**. **Bit** is less formal than **piece** and they are not always interchangeable. **Bit** can be used with all types of nouns. **Piece** tends to be used more with uncountable nouns. **Bit** suggests a smaller amount than **piece**.

How many **pieces of** luggage have you got with you?

The police collected **bits of** information from different sources.

Chopin wrote some wonderful **pieces of** music.

Before you go to England I should give you two **bits of** advice ...

He spends all his money buying new **bits of** computer equipment.

Common mistakes

We say: *What an attractive piece of furniture!* (NOT *What an attractive furniture!*)

B Words that go with specific uncountable nouns

Weather

FORECAST



Today's weather will be variable. In the north there are likely to be heavy showers (of rain). The sunny spell (of weather) that we have had this last week will continue in much of the south although there may be occasional rumbles of thunder and flashes of lightning in some areas with some quite loud claps of thunder in one or two areas. These will be followed by a few spots of rain but gusts of wind should soon blow them away and the sunshine will then return.

See Unit 6 for more weather words.

Groceries

'I need a loaf of bread, a couple of slices of ham, two bars of chocolate, a tube of toothpaste, two cartons of milk and three bars of soap.' (slice can also be used with toast, bread, meat and cheese)

Nature

Look at the ladybird on that blade of grass!

What's happened? Look at that cloud of smoke hanging over the town!

We could see little puffs of smoke coming out of the volcano.

Let's go out and get a breath of fresh air.

Put another lump of coal on the fire, please. (lump can also be used with sugar)

Other words

I had an amazing stroke of luck this morning.

I've never seen him do a stroke of work. (only in negative sentences, more emphatic than a bit of work)

I've never seen him in such a fit of temper before.

The donkey is the basic means of transport on the island.

Jeans must be the most useful article/item of clothing ever invented.

There was an interesting item of news about France on TV last night.

C A state of

Nouns used with a state of are usually abstract and include chaos, tension, confusion, health, disorder, uncertainty, poverty, agitation, disrepair and flux [continuous change], e.g. The transport system is in a state of chaos.

Exercises

86.1 Match the words on the left with the words they collocate with on the right.

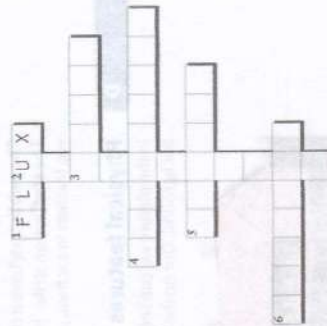
- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1 a stroke | 7 a lightning |
| 2 a shower | 8 coal |
| 3 an article | 9 grass |
| 4 a lump | 10 news |
| 5 a flash | 11 rain |
| 6 a blade | 12 clothing |
| 7 an item | 13 thunder |
| 8 a rumble | 14 luck |

86.2 Change the uncountable nouns to countable nouns in the following sentences by using *piece*, *bit* or one of the more specific words from B.

- Could you buy me some bread, please? *Could you buy me a loaf of bread, please?*
- My mother gave me some advice that I have always remembered.
- Suddenly the wind almost blew him off his feet.
- We had some terribly windy weather last winter.
- Would you like some more toast?
- He never does any work at all in the house.
- Let's go to the park - I need some fresh air.
- I can give you some important information about that.
- We could see smoke hovering over the city from a long way away.
- I need to get some furniture for my flat.

86.3 Use words from C opposite to fit the clues for the puzzle below.

- The reforms mean that the country's education system is in a state of at the moment but hopefully things will soon settle down.
- We are still in a state of as to who has won the election.
- The country's infrastructure is in a state of after the earthquake.
- We fell in love with the house although it was in a dreadful state of
- My granny wouldn't be in such a bad state of now if she hadn't smoked all her life.
- Although this is supposed to be an affluent society, many people are still living in a state of



Over to you

Make up sentence clues like those in 86.3 to match this puzzle.



A

People

Collective nouns are used to describe a **group** of the same people or things.



a **group** of people
(smaller number)



a **crowd** of people
(large number)



a **gang** of thieves
(rather negative)

B

Words associated with certain animals

A **flock** of sheep or birds, e.g. geese/pigeons; a **herd** of cows, deer, goats; a **shoal** of fish (or any particular fish, e.g. a **shoal** of herring/mackerel - note the use of singular here); a **swarm** of insects (typically flying ones, e.g. a **swarm** of bees/gnats).

A **pack** of... can be used for dogs, hyenas, wolves, etc. as well as for (playing) cards.

C

People involved in the same job/activity

These nouns are used with singular or plural verbs, depending on your point of view.

A **team** of reporters/rescue workers was/were at the scene of the disaster.

The **crew** was/were saved when the ship sank. [workers on a ship/ambulance/plane]

The **company** is/are rehearsing a new production. [group of actors]

The **cast** is/are all amateurs. [actors in a film or theatre production]

The **public** has/have a right to know the truth. [the people as a whole]

The **staff** are on strike. (normally used with a plural verb; general word for groups who share a place of work, e.g. teachers in a school, people in an office)

D

Physical features of landscapes

In the picture we can see a **row** of cottages near a **clump** of trees with a **range** of hills in the background. Out on the lake there is a small **group** of islands.



E

Things in general

a **pair** of birds sitting on a branch [two of anything that are the same]

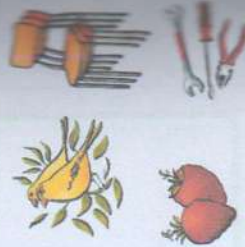
a **couple** of strawberries [vague way of saying two, not necessarily exactly the same]

a **pile/heap** of papers (or clothes, dishes, toys, etc.)

a **bunch** of flowers (or grapes, bananas, etc.)

a **stack** of chairs (or tables, boxes, logs, etc.)

a **set** of tools (or pots and pans, dishes, etc.)



Exercises

88

87.1 Fill each gap with a suitable collective noun.

- There are hundreds of mosquitoes in the forests in Scandinavia in the summer.
- As we looked into the water, we saw a school of brightly coloured fish.
- There was a group of youths on the corner; they didn't look very friendly.
- There's a box of cards on the bookshelf. Will you fetch them for me, please?
- A team of biologists is studying marine life in this area.
- Look at that nest of birds on that tree. Both of them have beautiful markings. I wonder what they are?
- Could you put a dash of spoons of sugar in this coffee for me, please? It's very bitter. Yes, just two, that's fine. Thanks.

87.2

In each case, one of the examples is wrong. Which one? Put a line through it.

- Company is often used for actors / swimmers / opera singers.
- Cast is often used for people in a play / a book / a film.
- Crew is often used for the staff of an ambulance / a plane / a hospital.
- Pack is often used for cats / dogs / wolves.
- Flock is often used for sheep / pigeons / pigs.
- Herd is often used for cows / fish / goats.

87.3

Match the collective nouns on the left with the words on the right.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1 a clump of | ☒ a houses |
| 2 a range of | ☐ b flies |
| 3 a gang of | ☐ c fir trees |
| 4 a swarm of | ☐ d deer |
| 5 a row of | ☐ e grapes |
| 6 a heap of | ☐ f mountains |
| 7 a herd of | ☐ g criminals |
| 8 a bunch of | ☐ h bed linen |

87.4

Rewrite these sentences using collective nouns. Don't forget to change the verb to singular or plural where necessary.

- There are some tables on top of one another in the next room.
There is a stack of tables in the next room.
- There are a large number of people waiting outside.
- The people who work there are very well paid.
- A large number of sheep had escaped from a field.
- She gave me six identical glasses.
- She gave me five or six beautiful roses.

87.5

Some collective nouns are associated with words about using language. Underline any you can see in this text, check their meanings in a dictionary and make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook.

THE journalists raised a host of difficult questions about the actions of the police during the demonstration. There had been a barrage of complaints about police violence. The Chief of Police replied that he was not prepared to listen to a string of wild accusations without any evidence. In the end, he just gave a series of short answers that left everyone dissatisfied.

66



More information about these containers

container	usually made of	typical contents
bag	cloth, paper, plastic	sweets, shopping, mail
barrel	wood and metal	oil, wine, beer
basket	wicker, metal	shopping, clothes, waste paper
bottle	glass, plastic	milk, lemonade, wine
bowl	china, glass, wood	fruit, soup, sugar
box	cardboard, wood	matches, tools, toys, chocolates
bucket	metal, plastic	sand, water
can	tin	cola, beer
carton	card	milk, juice
case	leather, wood, cardboard	jewellery, spectacles, wine
crate	wood, plastic	bottles
glass	glass	milk, water, wine
jar	glass, pottery	jam, honey, olives, instant coffee
jug	pottery	milk, cream, water
mug	pottery	tea, coffee, cocoa
pack	card	cards, six cans of cola/beer
packet	card, paper, plastic	tea, biscuits, cereal, crisps
pan	metal	food that is being cooked
pot	plastic, metal, pottery	yoghurt, plant, paint
sack	cloth, plastic	coal, rubbish
tin	tin	tomatoes, sardines, fruit
tub	wood, plastic, card	flowers, rainwater, ice cream
tube	soft metal, plastic	toothpaste, paint, ointment

Complete the blanks in the shopping list without looking at the opposite page.

- 6 a of yoghurt
 7 a large of matches
 8 a of honey
 9 six of crisps

Try the following quiz about the words on the opposite page.

- Which three are you most likely to find in a cellar?
- Which five of these would you be most likely to see in the drinks section of a large supermarket?
- Which five would you be most likely to see on the breakfast table?
- Which two containers might a postman carry the post in and which is bigger?
- Which two are often used for carrying shopping?

use the containers and their contents.



Think of other words which are often used with the following containers.

- Shipping materials are often used with the following containers.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------|---|-------|
| shipping material | basket | 5 | jug |
| shipping material | box | 6 | glass |
| shipping material | bottle | 7 | pot |
| shipping material | bag | | |

A Phrasal verbs with do and make

phrasal verb	meaning	example
do without	manage without	We'll have to do without a holiday this year as money is so short.
do away with	abolish, get rid of	It should be our ambition to do away with poverty in the world.
make for	move in the direction of	Let's make for the city centre and look for a restaurant there.
make of	think (opinion)	What do you make of the new software?
make off	leave hurriedly	He made off as soon as he heard their car turn into the drive.
make up for	compensate for	The superb food at the hotel made up for the uncomfortable rooms.

B Meanings of phrasal verbs

Some phrasal verbs have a number of different meanings, e.g. **do up** can mean not only 'fasten' but also 'renovate' and 'put into a bundle'. Similarly, **make out** can mean 'claim', 'manage to see' and 'understand'; **make up** can mean 'compose' or 'invent'; it can also mean 'constitute' or 'form', 'put cosmetics on', 'prepare by mixing together various ingredients' and 'make something more numerous or complete'.

C Collocations with do and make

There are a lot of other common collocations based on **do** and **make**. Note that most combinations referring to activities, work or duty use **do** whereas those which lead to an end product (e.g. tea, a cake, a noise, a toy boat, a profit) use **make**.



You **do**: your homework / the housework / some gardening / exercise / the washing-up / your best / the shopping / the cooking / business with ..., and so on.



You **make**: a cup of tea / arrangements / an agreement / a suggestion / a decision / war / an attempt / a phone call / the best of ... / an effort / an excuse / a mistake / a profit / a loss / love / the most of / a noise / a good or bad impression / a success of ... / allowances for ...¹ / a gesture / a face / fun of ... / a fuss of ...² / a go (a success) of ..., and so on.

¹ consider someone's situation and not judge them harshly
² give someone a lot of attention and treat them well

Common mistakes

We say: When I **do** my homework, I try not to **make** too many mistakes. (NOT When I **make** my homework, I try not to **do** too many mistakes.)

Exercises

Here are some different ways in which **do up**, **make up** and **make out** can be used. What is the meaning of the phrasal verb in each case?

- Take this prescription to the chemist and she'll make it up for you. *prepare it so you can use it*
- Can you make out the little white house on the mountain side?
- A human being is made up of many, often conflicting, desires.
- The present was beautifully done up in gold paper.
- Just can't make Joe out. He's so strange.
- Let's advertise the talk and hope we make up the numbers a bit.
- He made out that he had never loved anyone else. She believed him.
- We're planning to do up our bathroom at the weekend. It's looking rather old and dull.

B Add the necessary prepositions or particles to complete this story.

Last weekend we decided to start doing ¹ *up* our bedroom. We agreed that we could do the old fireplace in the corner. As we began to remove it from the wall we found some old photographs done ² *in* a bundle behind a loose brick. At first we could not make ³ *out* what they were but we wiped them clean and realised they were all of the same young man. We spent an enjoyable evening making ⁴ *up* stories to explain why the pictures had been hidden.

C In each sentence below, there is an error with choice of particle. Correct the mistakes.

- I'm going to do *up* with my old laptop and buy a new one. It's too old and too slow.
- This weekend we are planning to make to the seaside.
- Visit amounts of money do not always make of happiness.
- Your shoelaces are untied. Do them in or you'll trip over.
- They like to make away that they are very important people.
- Thieves robbed the bank and made out with £1,000,000.

D Complete the following sentences using an appropriate expression from C.

- Facilitator posters in the 1960s used to say 'MAKE LOVE NOT *WAR*'.
- It doesn't matter if you pass the exam or not, as long as you do *it*.
- Companies that once made a huge *profit* are now going bankrupt.
- I don't like doing *the housework* but someone has to clean, wash, iron and cook!
- You must make *the best of* the fact that he's only seven years old.
- Breathing smartly for an interview helps you to make *a good impression*.
- Her company does a lot of *business* in East Asia selling educational software.
- Do you do much *exercise*? Yes, I go to the gym three times a week.

E Over to you

Which of these things do you think you could do without and why?
mobile phone TV sunglasses laptop or tablet
How often do you do the shopping, the cooking, the washing-up?

A

Phrasal verbs with bring

Each example is a typical spoken sentence and a more formal equivalent is provided in brackets.

My father's parents **brought him up** in the country because they thought that country life was better for children. [raised]

Don't give up, I'm sure you'll **bring it off** in the end. [succeed]

Cold winds always **bring on** her cough. [cause to start]

The strike **brought about** a change of government. [caused to happen]

Ford Motors are **bringing out** an interesting new model in the spring. [introducing]

I hope they don't **bring back** capital punishment. [re-introduce]

They promised to **bring down** taxes but they have actually raised them. [lower]

Inflation will probably **bring down** the government. [destroy, remove from power]

Keep trying to persuade him and you'll **bring him round** to your point of view. [persuade]

B

Phrasal verbs with take

Doesn't he **take after** his father? They even sound the same. [resemble]

I wish I could **take back** what I said to her. [withdraw]

It's hard to **take in** his lectures - he speaks in such an abstract way. [absorb, understand]

She was completely **taken in** by him and agreed to give him all her money. [deceived]

Sales have really **taken off** now - we should make a good profit this year. [started to improve]

The plane **took off** two hours late. [left the ground]

She's very good at **taking off** her teacher - she sounds just like her. [imitating]

We'll have to **take on** more staff if we're to **take on** more work. [employ] [accept]

Nelson is going to **take over** as manager in July. [start doing a job]

She **took to** him at once and they soon became close friends. [formed an immediate liking for]

When did you **take up** golf? [start (a hobby)]

C

Common expressions with bring and take

The new regulations will **be brought into force** in May. [become law]

His research **brought** some very interesting facts **to light**. [revealed]

Matters **were brought to a head** when Lily was sacked. [reached a point]

It's better that everything should be **brought into the open**. [made public]

His new girlfriend has really **brought out the best** in him. [been good for him]

Don't let him **take advantage of** you. [unfairly use superiority]

After 20 years of marriage he **takes her for granted**. [doesn't appreciate her qualities]

I **took it for granted** you'd come - you always do. [assumed]

She immediately **took control of** the situation. [started organising]

His unkind words **took my breath away**. [surprised]

The story **takes place** in Mexico. [happens]

Leaving his job before he's found a new one is **taking a risk**. [doing something risky]

It's impossible to **take such a silly suggestion seriously**. [consider as serious]

Don't forget to **take travel costs into account** in the budget. [consider]

He doesn't seem to **take pride** in his work. [draw satisfaction from]

You must **take the opportunity** to visit the castle while you're here. [use the chance]

Exercises

Exercise 1 Complete these sentences with the appropriate preposition or particle.

- The school reforms which plan to bring *back* a more traditional style of exams for children are generally unpopular.
- The bumpy journey brought *on* labour and the baby was born on the bus.
- I think the strikes will bring *about* some changes in management.
- If anyone can bring it *off* he can.
- He won't agree to it for me but she can always bring him *round*.
- She brought *up* six children all on her own.

Exercise 2 Complete the bubble network below with phrasal verbs based on take.



Exercise 3 Rework these sentences using expressions from C opposite.

- The story of the film happens in Casablanca during the war.
The story of the film takes place in Casablanca during the war.
- Today's newspaper has revealed some fascinating information about the President.
The situation reached crisis point when the union called for a strike.
- You need to consider the historical context of the novel in your essay.
The view from the top of the hill was astonishing.
- He capitalised on her weakness at the time and she gave it to him.
If you're going to succeed in business you must be prepared to not always do the safe thing.
- You shouldn't assume that anyone or anything will always be the same.

Exercise 4 Make a bubble network like the one in 90.2, based on phrasal verbs with bring.



Exercise 5 Which of the expressions in C mean the opposite of:

- to keep quiet *to bring into the open*
- to laugh at
- to be as expected
- to drop an old law
- to be careless about
- to be subordinate to

Exercise 6 Answer the questions using one of the phrasal verbs in A or B opposite.

- Where were you brought up? *I was born and brought up in Scotland.*
- If you had time to take up a new sport or other leisure activity, what would it be?
- Who do you take after more - your mother or your father?
- What new law has been brought into force recently in your country?
- What kind of teacher do you find brings out the best in you?
- What changes would you like your country's current government to bring about?
- Can you think of someone who you've immediately taken to?
- Have you ever taken on too much work?

A

Meanings of get

Get is used frequently in spoken English. It has the following basic meanings:

- receive, obtain or buy something, e.g. Please **get** me a sandwich when you're in town. I **got** a text from John today. She **got** top marks in her exam.
- change position - move or be moved, e.g. How are you **getting** home tonight?
- change state - become or make, e.g. She's ill but she's **getting** better.

B

Specific meanings of get

Get also has many other more specific meanings.

- It's my turn to **get dinner** tonight. [prepare a meal]
- I don't **get it**. Why did he speak like that? [understand]
- His behaviour really **gets** me at times. [annoy]
- I saw Harry's new girlfriend at the party but I didn't **get** to speak to her. [manage]
- Once we **got to know** each other, we became great friends. [became acquainted]
- The phone's ringing and there's someone at the door! You **get** the phone and I'll **get** the door. [answer, respond to]

C

Phrasal verbs based on get

phrasal verb	meaning	example
get across	successfully communicate an idea	It was difficult to get my point of view across to the committee.
get at	reach, find	I hope the inquiry will get at the truth.
get behind with	fail to do something by a certain time	I've got terribly behind with my work.
get down	depress	This weather is getting me down.
get down to	begin to give some serious attention to	It's time you got down to some work.
get into	be successful with an application (e.g. to a college/school)	She did well in her exams and got into university.
get on	manage	However will we get on without you?
get on	advance, develop	Jo is getting on very well at school.
get out of	avoid a responsibility	I'll try to get out of my next lesson.
get over	recover from	She's getting over a bad attack of flu.
get round	spread	The news soon got round the village.
get round to	do something you've intended to do for a long time	I need to buy a new desk but I can't get round to it. I'm so busy.
get through	come to a successful end	I'm glad she got through all her exams!
get through	use up all of	He got through his month's salary in just one weekend.
get up to	to do (especially something bad)	The children are very quiet. I wonder what they're getting up to?

D

Other expressions based on get

- You seem to have **got out of bed on the wrong side** today. [be in a bad mood]
- The meeting **got off to a good/bad start** with Elliott's speech. [started well/badly]
- I'm organising a little **get-together**. I hope you can come. [informal meeting/party]
- When they broke up he **got rid of** everything of hers. [threw away/destroyed]
- I'm going to **get my own back** on her somehow. [take my revenge]

Exercises

Replace the underlined **get** expressions with another way of expressing the same idea. Note that by doing this you are changing the text from being very informal to being slightly more formal.

1. I don't often get interesting junk mail. However, an unusual item came this morning. It was headed 'Are things getting you down? Do you feel you'll just never get to do all those things you dream of?' And it went on: 'If so, get this great new book today: *Manage Your World* by Simon ... It will teach you how to get over those daily upsets, and will ensure that you get the contentment in your work that you long for and that you fulfil your dreams. Send £2.5 today to get *Manage Your World* and your key to success within ten days.'

Maybe I should get it!



2. Fill the gaps in the sentences below in the most appropriate way.

- Although they had only told their parents about their engagement, the news soon got round of interviews for the job. to the second round of interviews for the job.
- She must have made a good impression last week because she has got it.
- I have an essay to write but I'm finding it hard to get it.
- I've been meaning to redecorate my room for ages but I just can't get it.
- What have you been getting since we last met?
- Surely you haven't got all the biscuits already?
- The new political party was finding it difficult to get its message to the public.
- I was ill last semester and I got seriously with my studies. If this continues, probably won't get university this year.
- We're having a get-together on Friday to celebrate Jan's birthday. Would you like to come?
- The progress on the guitar was slow at first, but he's getting well now.

3. Match the situations on the left with the appropriate responses on the right.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Someone has been very impolite to one of your friends. | ☒ a You always try to get out of things! |
| 2. Someone is about to throw something away. | ☐ b You wait! I'll get my own back on you one day! |
| 3. Someone is being negative about everything you suggest. | ☐ c Don't get rid of that yet! |
| 4. Someone has done something very cruel to you. | ☐ d You got out of bed on the wrong side this morning! |
| 5. Someone says they can't help with the clearing up after a party. | ☐ e Your rudeness really gets me! |

Over to you

Complete the following sentences in a way that is true for you.

- I would hate to get rid of ...
- My ... got off to a bad start because ...
- I find it very hard to get down to ...
- I wish I could get out of ...
- ... is really getting me down.

A

Phrasal verbs based on set

Since his daughter's birth, Robert had been **setting aside**¹ money for her wedding. Now he and his wife were **setting off**² to meet Carl, her new fiancé. Carl was a mountaineer who had **set out**³ several times to climb Mount Everest but had had to turn back because bad weather had **set off**⁴ avalanches. Now he was trying to **set up**⁵ a sports equipment business. Robert didn't altogether like the sound of Carl but he was doing his best to **set aside**⁶ his negative feelings.

- ¹ reserving ² beginning a journey ³ begun something with a particular aim in mind ⁴ caused
⁵ establish ⁶ ignore (not think about)

B

Phrasal verbs with put

Note: It would not normally be natural to use all of these expressions together.

Emma **put** her own name **forward**¹ for election to the staff committee. Ten other people had also **put in**² proposal forms but Emma was elected because she is very good at **putting her ideas across**³. She also has a talent for **putting her opponents down**⁴. At the first meeting she was largely silent though occasionally she would **put in**⁵ a remark.

At the next meeting she was more involved. She supported the proposal that central heating should be **put in**⁶ in the staff canteen and agreed to help **put together**⁷ some new flat-pack furniture for the canteen. She also voted for the local school being allowed to use the staff club to **put on**⁸ a play. She insisted that the play would not **put staff out**⁹ at all provided that the school **put** all their props **away**¹⁰ after each performance. She said that she would **put up**¹¹ relatives coming from other towns to watch the play. She argued that the committee should **put off**¹² making their decision about **putting up**¹³ staff club membership subscriptions until they had found out how staff felt about this. She agreed to **put up**¹⁴ posters encouraging all staff to come to the next committee meeting.

Later that evening Emma made her mother laugh as she imitated other committee members' she's good at **putting on**¹⁵ all sorts of accents. 'The chairperson really **put me off**¹⁶ with his constant sniffing,' she said, 'and I don't know how they **put up with**¹⁷ the secretary's rudeness.'

- ¹ proposed ² submitted ³ communicating ⁴ making someone look small ⁵ say something
⁶ installed ⁷ assemble ⁸ present ⁹ inconvenience ¹⁰ tidied ¹¹ give accommodation to
¹² postpone ¹³ raising ¹⁴ display ¹⁵ pretending to have ¹⁶ distracted ¹⁷ tolerate

C

Expressions with set and put

He has **set his heart/sights on** becoming a ballet dancer. [longs to become]
 I've **set myself a target of** losing five kilos by the end of the year. [am aiming to lose]
 They sat up till the small hours **setting/putting the world to rights**. [discussing important problems]
 Did someone **set fire** to the house deliberately? [put a match to]
 The prisoner will be **set free** tomorrow. [released]

Lottie had never **set foot in** Italy before. [been to]
 The Egyptian runner has **set a new world record**. [established an achievement record]
 Teachers have to try to **set a good example** for young people. [be a good example]
 to **put your foot down**: to be firm about something
 to **put pressure on someone**: to try to force someone to do something
 to **put your mind to**: to direct all your thoughts towards
 to **put two and two together**: to draw an obvious conclusion
 to **put an end / a stop to something**: to cause something to stop
 to **put someone's back up**: to irritate someone
 a **put-up job**: something arranged to give a false impression

Exercises

8.1.1

Put the following sentences into slightly more formal English by replacing the phrasal verbs with their formal equivalents.

- They have recently set up a committee on teenage smoking.
- They have recently established a committee on teenage smoking.
- We try to set aside some money for our holiday every week.
- Set aside all your negative feelings and listen with an open mind.
- If we hadn't set off so late, we would have arrived on time.
- The government's unpopular proposals set off a wave of protests.

8.1.2

Write three nouns which could follow each of the verbs. Remember that their meanings might be different depending on the noun which follows.

- 1 put in money / a comment / an effort
- 2 put forward
- 3 put off
- 4 put across
- 5 put up
- 6 put on
- 7 put away
- 8 put up with

8.1.3

Write responses to the following statements or questions using any appropriate phrasal verb from A or B opposite.

- He's always so rude. I wouldn't put up with it if I were you.
- This room is in a terrible mess.
- What time do we have to leave for the airport tomorrow?
- Any chance of a bed on your floor this weekend?
- Why have you suddenly lost interest in the project?
- What is Adam planning to do when he gets his business degree?
- How should we publicise our play?
- I've taken all the bits for my new desk out of the pack but now I don't know where to start.

8.1.4

Using the expressions in C opposite, reword the following sentences without changing their meaning.

- They have promised to liberate the hostages at noon.
They have promised to set the hostages free at noon.
- He's bound to draw the obvious conclusion if you keep on behaving like that.
Her aim is to become Prime Minister.
- Her aim is to become Prime Minister.
I find her terribly irritating.
- I find her terribly irritating.
If you try to make her change her mind it'll make her even more determined.
- If you try to make her change her mind it'll make her even more determined.
Please concentrate on the problem in hand.
- Please concentrate on the problem in hand.
She is determined to get a seat in Parliament.
- She is determined to get a seat in Parliament.
She threw petrol on the rubbish and put a match to it.
- She threw petrol on the rubbish and put a match to it.
It's time the teacher told the children to stop making so much noise.
- It's time the teacher told the children to stop making so much noise.
The man has officially eaten more burgers in one hour than anyone else.
- The man has officially eaten more burgers in one hour than anyone else.
This is the first time I've ever been to the southern hemisphere.
- This is the first time I've ever been to the southern hemisphere.
We spent most of our evenings discussing the problems of the world rather than studying.
- We spent most of our evenings discussing the problems of the world rather than studying.
You really should be firm with him or there'll be trouble later.
- You really should be firm with him or there'll be trouble later.
If the teacher doesn't behave properly, the children certainly won't.
- If the teacher doesn't behave properly, the children certainly won't.
His goal is to run the Athens marathon next year.

A

Phrasal verbs based on come

Did the meeting you were planning ever **come off**? [take place] When do the exam results **come out**? [be published, made public] I must tell you about an important point which **came up** at the meeting. [was raised] Please **come round** and see me sometime. [pay an informal visit] Nothing can **come between** him and football. [separate, be a barrier between] I **came across** a lovely old vase in that junk shop. [found by chance] How did you **come by** that bruise / that car? [receive, obtain] Computer prices have **come down** recently. [decreased] Sofia **came up with** a really good idea to raise money for charity. [thought of / suggested a plan or solution to a problem]

B

Collocations with come to and come into

Come to often refers to the idea of 'arriving at'. **Come into** often refers to the idea of starting or acquiring.

come to + collocations	examples
an agreement	The two sides have at last come to an agreement.
a conclusion	Traffic came to a standstill because of the snow.
a standstill [stop]	The war finally came to an end in 2005.
an end	
come into + collocations	examples
contact (with)	He came into a fortune when his uncle died.
a fortune (receive when someone dies)	The new motorway will come into operation next March.
operation (start working)	After two hours at sea, the island came into sight/view .
sight/view	

C

Phrasal verbs based on go

Some of these have a number of different meanings.

go on: What is **going on** next door? [happening] They **went on** working despite the noise. [continued] As the weeks **went on**, things improved. [passed] You **go on**, we'll catch you up later. [go in advance] He's always **going on** at me about my untidy hair. [criticising, complaining] **go through**: I wouldn't like to **go through** that again. [experience, endure] Let's **go through** the plans once more. [check] Unfortunately, the business deal we were hoping for did not **go through** in the end. [was not completed or approved] **go for**: He really **went for** her when she dared to criticise him. [attacked] Which course have you decided to **go for**? [choose] **go with**: Those shoes don't **go with** that dress. [suit, match]

D

Other expressions based on go

I hope they'll **make a go of** the business but they are taking a big risk. [make a success of] He's been **on the go** all day and he's exhausted. [very busy, on the move] It **goes without saying** that we'll support you. [clear without being said] Your work is good, as far as it **goes**. [but is limited or insufficient] **The story goes** that they were once very close friends. [It is said that ...] It seems that ... They **went to great lengths** to keep it a secret. [took a lot of trouble] The business has **gone bankrupt**. [not got enough money to pay debts]



Exercises

Exercise 1 Which meanings do these underlined verbs have?

- He went on composing music till his eighties. *continued*
- She was so suspicious that she used to go through his pockets every night.
- The dog went for the postman.
- We had planned a meeting but it never came off.
- I came across a photo of my grandmother the other day. I look just like her.
- Watch you'd stop going on at me!
- Next time he'll go for a holiday in Greece rather than stay at home.
- Does this top go with these trousers?
- Nobody has come up with a solution to the problem so far.

Exercise 2 Choose one of the expressions in B to complete each of the sentences.

- I found it really hard to make up my mind but in the end I came *to a decision*.
- When his grandmother dies, he'll come *into*.
- After four years of fighting, the civil war finally came *to an end*.
- It's away up the steep hill, the bus came *into sight* again.
- They say that long skirts are coming *back into fashion*.
- The telephone first came *into use* nearly 150 years ago.
- I found it very difficult to come *to a decision* my failure.
- As we drove round the corner the house came *into view*.

Exercise 3 Replace the underlined expressions with one of the expressions in D.

- I don't need to say that we wish you all the best in the future. *It goes without saying*.
- They took a lot of trouble to avoid meeting each other.
- I've been extremely busy all day and I'm longing for a shower now and to relax.
- I do hope he will be successful in his new business.
- Everyone says that they were together that night.
- The film is good up to a point but it doesn't tackle the problem deeply enough.

Exercise 4 Match questions on the left with the responses on the right.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Why don't you and Ollie go on? | ☒ a Any time after eight. |
| 2 How did he come by so much money? | ☐ b The firm went bankrupt. |
| 3 Did they plan to go through? | ☐ c We'll catch you up. |
| 4 What's the worst pain you've ever gone through? | ☐ d A rich aunt of his died. |
| 5 Why did that factory close down? | ☐ e No, people voted against it. |
| 6 When should I come round to your place? | ☐ f It looks like a demonstration. |
| 7 What's going on over there? | ☐ g When I broke my wrist. |

Exercise 5 Your Turn

Complete the sentences in a way that is true for you.

- I hope I make a go of
- My exam results will come out
- My ... shoes go with my
- I never want to go through
- As my English course goes on,
- It's not easy to come to terms with
- I've come to the conclusion that learning English
- I came across a new English word recently. It was

Look

I **look forward to** hearing from you at your earliest convenience. (at end of formal letter)

The police are **looking into** the matter. [investigating]

They need to **look at** all the evidence before reaching a decision. [examine]

She **looks down on** anyone she thinks is inferior to her. [despises; opp look up to = admire]
It's hard to be positive but do try to **look on the bright side**. [be optimistic]

See

Sue tries to **see about** arrangements for the conference at least a year ahead. [deal with]

We all want to **see Jana off** at the airport. [accompany someone who is leaving]

It didn't take Tom long to **see through** her. [understand she was trying to deceive]

That can't be Hamid. He's in Paris this week. I must be **seeing things**. [imagining it]

Run

I **ran into** an old friend yesterday - I had no idea she was in town. [met by chance]

Her patience has **run out** and she has told him she won't help him any more. [come to an end]

We've **run out of** milk. [there is none left]

Let's **run over** the plans again to make sure we've thought of everything. [quickly go through]

Things may be hard now but it'll be worth it **in the long run**. [in the distant future]

The trains have stopped **running** because of the avalanche. [operating]

Turn

Everyone was very surprised when she **turned down** the promotion and explained that she was leaving the company. [rejected]

Naoko **turned up** last night. I haven't seen her for years! [appeared]

I'm going to **turn over a new leaf** this year and answer all my letters the day I get them! [start doing something in a better way]

The fire bell **turned out** to be a false alarm. [was discovered]

Let

He has been **let down** so many times in the past - I hope he won't be disappointed again.

Don't **let go of** the rope or she'll fall and hurt herself.

The accused was **let off** with a fine. [received a small punishment for a crime]

When she **let it slip** that she had been given a pay rise, the other workers were very angry. [say something, sometimes without meaning to]

Break

No one likes people who **break their promises**. [don't do what they say they'll do]

The speaker **broke off** in the middle of a sentence. [suddenly stopped talking]

I'm dreading **breaking the news** to him. He's going to be very upset.

[telling someone something]

When he left her, he **broke her heart**. [made her very sad]

The sprinter **broke the record** for the 100 metres. [ran faster than anyone had run before]

Exercises

Use the expressions on the opposite page to help you fill in the gaps in the text below.
Use one word only in each gap.

Let's run 1 *over* the plans for tomorrow's disco just once more. First, I must see 2 *the food arrangements* while you make sure that none of the people who've said they'll help are going to break their 3 *I don't imagine that many people will turn 4 until later but* Ben and Roshan said they'll come early and I'm sure they won't let us 5 *.....*



Rewrite the following sentences. Use an expression containing the word in brackets in an appropriate form.

- 1 Eva is always optimistic. (look) *Eva always looks on the bright side.*
- 2 I met Julio by chance at the station yesterday. (run)
- 3 Nadia didn't tidy her room yesterday even though she said she would. (break)
- 4 I thought I was hallucinating when I saw a monkey in the garden. (see)
- 5 The police didn't charge the boy, only giving him a warning. (let)
- 6 Stupidly, I mentioned that Sabrina was planning to move abroad. (let)
- 7 An enormous crowd came to hear the President speak. (turn)
- 8 My aunt despises people who don't have a good job. (look)
- 9 Ben has promised to improve his behaviour. (turn)
- 10 Hasalee has always admired her older cousin. (look)

Complete the sentences in an appropriate way.

- 1 I look forward *to hearing from you soon.*
- 2 It can be hard to see through someone's lies if they *.....*
- 3 Halfway up the mountain he let go *.....*
- 4 It'll be better in the long run if you *.....*
- 5 He felt terribly let down when *.....*
- 6 She didn't turn up *.....*
- 7 I'm afraid we've run out *.....*
- 8 In my last year at school I decided to look into *.....*
- 9 I agreed to see about *.....*
- 10 It's your turn *.....*

Over to you

- 1 Have you ever turned down an offer or invitation that you later regretted?
- 2 If you were about to buy a house, what sort of things would you want to look at first?
- 3 Have you ever done something because you felt it might be useful in the long run?
- 4 What - if anything - stops public transport from running in your country?
- 5 Do you think it is possible for someone's heart to be broken?
- 6 Have you ever resolved to turn over a new leaf? In what way(s)?
- 7 Do you have any particular jobs that you must see to today? If so, what?
- 8 Has your home ever been broken into? What happened?
- 9 Can you think of something that has happened to you recently that turned out very differently from how you had expected?

A What is formality?

Formality is all about your relationship with the person you're speaking or writing to. If you use formal language, it may be because you wish to show respect, politeness, or to put yourself at a distance (for example, 'official' language, or academic language). Informal language can show friendliness, equality or a feeling of closeness and solidarity with someone. You should *never* use informal language just to sound fluent or clever.

B Scales of formality

Some groups of words can be put on a scale from formal to neutral to informal.

formal	→	neutral	→	informal
offspring		children		kids
abode / residence		house / flat / home		place
goodbye		bye		bye-bye / cheerio
go amiss		go wrong		go pear-shaped

C Words of Latin and Greek origin

Many longer words that come from Latin and Greek are quite formal. Here are some with their neutral and/or informal equivalents, which are often shorter words.

I'll go and email Kieran **immediately**. [neutral equivalent: **at once**; informal equivalent: **right away**]

The researchers **utilise** the most modern equipment. [neutral equivalent: **use**]

This problem **frequently occurs** with older software. [neutral equivalent: **often happens**]

The study **established** a link between stress and ill-health. [neutral equivalent: **showed/proved**]

This book **provides us with** a picture of ordinary life in the Middle Ages. [neutral equivalent: **gives**]

The government **attempted** to reduce unemployment by supporting new businesses. [neutral equivalent: **tried**]

Physicists **seek answers to fundamental** questions about the universe. [neutral equivalent: **search for / look for; basic**]

D Formal phrases

Many phrases are typical of formal contexts such as academic or official language.

What should the government do **in terms of**¹ helping young people? Students, **in particular**², need support to complete their studies, **on account of**³ the high fees and living costs they have to meet.

Should students be given financial support **on the basis of**⁴ their family circumstances? And how should the government act **in relation to**⁵ youth unemployment?

The definitions give less formal or neutral equivalents.

¹ as regards, about ² especially ³ because of ⁴ according to ⁵ as regards, about, in connection with

E Formality in notices, instructions, etc.

You will often see rather formal words in signs, notices and directions. Make sure you know the meaning of the words used so that you could tell someone what the notice says using less formal words.

THIS STAIRWAY IS CLOSED UNTIL FURTHER NOTICE.	DO NOT ALIGHT WHILE THE BUS IS IN MOTION.	DO NOT ADDRESS THE DRIVER UNLESS THE BUS IS STATIONARY.
--	--	--

LIFT CAPACITY SIX PERSONS OR MAX 500 KILOS	Articles deposited must be paid for in advance.	We regret we no longer accept cheques.	Tickets must be purchased before boarding the train
--	---	---	--

Exercises

8.8.1 Make the underlined words **neutral**, using words from B **opposite**.

- She had no offspring and left all her money to her niece. *children*
- The plan went pear-shaped and they abandoned the idea.
- His abode was a small, rather old building on the edge of town.
- Cheerio for now. I'll call you again tomorrow at 9.30.
- Where are the kids? Are they in the garden?

8.8.2 Make the underlined words **more formal**, using words from C **opposite**.

- The link between smoking and lung cancer was shown decades ago. *established*
- Anyone looking for employment in the film industry faces a tough time.
- Social scientists often use official statistics in their research.
- How often does the temperature fall to below zero?
- If there is a fire, sound the fire alarm right away. Do not try to put the fire out.
- Poverty is a basic issue in the world today.
- This problem happens when the computer's hard drive becomes full.
- The doctor gave the patient a new drug that had not been fully tested.

8.8.3 Complete the sentences with words from the **opposite** page.

- It would be wrong to make a decision on the basis of incomplete information.
- The Internet can be a dangerous place. Children, in terms, need to be protected.
- What do we need equipment to do this experiment?
- Several questions arose during the discussion relation the economy.
- He had to cancel his lecture on of illness.

8.8.4 Find words on the opposite page for the following.

- the opposite of **stationary** *in motion*
- the opposite of **to board**
- a) to be sorry b) to buy c) to speak to
- a) get on
- a formal word for **people**
- a formal word for **stairs**

If you look up an informal word in a monolingual dictionary, you will often find a neutral equivalent as part of the definition or explanation. For example, the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary of English* entry for *kid* says: 'informal: a child or young person'.

Use a dictionary to find neutral or more formal words for these:

- kip *sleep*
- kip *swot*
- kip *gross*
- kip *tal*
- kip *dodgy*
- kip *mate*
- kip *brainy*

Over to you

How do you mark whether a word is formal or informal in your vocabulary notebook? If possible, compare your way with someone else's.

See also Unit 96 for other formal and informal words and expressions.

Monosyllabic informal words

Informal versions of words are often short and monosyllabic (consist of one syllable).



The **cops** have arrived. [police]
 The house has two **loos**. [toilets]
 It cost me ten **quid**. [pounds]
 I'll help you peel the **spuds**. [potatoes]
 My **bike**'s been stolen. [bicycle]
 I always go by **tube**. [word used for the London Underground]
 His dad spent ten years in the **nick**. [prison]
 I'll get a **cab** from the station. [taxi]

Clippings

Shortening a word tends to make it less formal, though these forms are acceptable in a wide range of contexts.

I'll meet you in the **lab** [oratory].
 She works for a **tech** [nology] company.
 What's on **telly** tonight? [television]
 Have you seen that **mag** [azine]?
 We should put an **ad** [vertisement] / an **advert** [isement] in the (news)**paper**.
 Can I use your **mobile** [phone]? I need to (tele)**phone** my brother.
 There's milk in the **fridge**. [refrigerator]
 Her sister's a **vet** [erinary surgeon].
 Would you like to be a **celeb** [rity]? [famous person]

Slang

Slang is extremely informal language. Slang helps to make speech vivid, colourful and interesting but it can easily be used inappropriately. Slang is mainly used in speech but it is also often found in the popular press and in literature. Slang changes very quickly, so some words go out of fashion, but you may meet them in novels and films. Some slang expressions may cause offence to some people. Here are some examples you may hear or read.

Expressions for money: **dosh** [readies] **moolah**
 Expressions for food and drinks: **nosh** **grub** **sarnie** [sandwich] **cuppa** [cup of tea]
 People obsessed with computers or other equipment: **nerd** **geek** **anorak**
 Jobs: **quack** [doctor] **shrink** [psychiatrist] **the old bill** [the police] **squaddie** [soldier of a low rank]

Language help

If you are interested in slang, you can find more examples in films or in the tabloid press but it is probably safest to keep it in your passive rather than your active vocabulary.

Exercises

18.1 Make this conversation more *informal* by changing some of the words. Refer to the opposite page if necessary.

- Ann: Annie, can you lend me ten pounds? *quid*
 Annie: What for?
 Ann: I've got to go and see my parents, and my bicycle's not working, so I'll have to get a taxi.
 Annie: Can't you telephone them and say you can't come?
 Ann: Well, I could, but my mobile phone's not working, and I want to go because they always have lots of food, and the refrigerator at our flat is empty, as usual.
 Annie: Can't you go by underground? Anyway, you're in luck, I've got some money, so here you are.

18.2 Replace the underlined words with more formal equivalents.

- The train was full of squaddies going home for the weekend. *soldiers*
- I've got a bad stomach ache - I think I'll make an appointment with the quack.
- He spent two years in the nick for stealing cars.
- The cops arrived shortly after the accident.
- There'll be plenty of nosh at the party so we don't need to eat beforehand.
- He's quite a celeb in the world of poetry.
- I'm dying for a cuppa. I haven't had one since breakfast.
- I'd love to get a motorbike but I just don't have the moolah.

18.3 Replace the informal words in these sentences with more formal words.

- [*formal email*] I should like to enquire about the cost of ads on your website. *advertisements*
- [*team essay*] The Internet and telly are probably the biggest influences on young people today.
- [*recipe in a cookery book*] Next, slice the spuds and place them on top of the meat.
- [*team essay*] Papers face stiff competition these days from TV and Internet news.
- [*formal university publicity*] The Faculty offers courses in vet science. Lab facilities are available 24 hours a day.

18.4 Another way of making informal words is by using short forms ending in -y or -ie. Can you work out the meanings of the following underlined words?

- Let's have brekkie before we leave tomorrow. *breakfast*
- It's a nice day. Let's have a barbie and eat in the garden.
- D'you want a biccy with your coffee?
- Jenny turned up at the party with her new hubby.
- Oh, let me see your holiday piccies! ... Is that you in the big straw hat?
- They serve really nice veggie food.



He's a brickie.

Over to you

Which English words do you know that are very informal or are slang? Where did you read or hear them? If possible, compare with a friend or classmate.

As ... as

As ... as similes are easy to understand. If you see the phrase **as dead as a doornail**, you don't need to know what a doornail is, simply that the whole phrase means 'totally dead'. But remember fixed similes are usually informal and often humorous. Those marked * are negative and could offend. Use all these expressions with care and keep them generally as part of your receptive vocabulary.

Creating a picture in your mind can often help you remember the simile:



as blind as a bat*



as thin as a rake*



as strong as an ox



as quiet as a mouse

Some can be remembered as pairs of opposites.

as heavy as lead /led/ ≠ as light as a feather
as black as night ≠ as white as snow (particularly used in fairy tales)

Some can be remembered by sound patterns.

as good as gold (this is used about children's behaviour)

as cool as a cucumber as busy as a bee

Some other useful phrases using as ... as:

The bed was as hard as iron and I couldn't sleep.

I'll give this plant some water. The soil's dry as a bone.

He's as mad as a hatter*. He crossed the Atlantic in a bathtub.

She told the teacher, as bold as brass, that his lessons were boring.

You'll have to speak slowly and clearly - he's as deaf as a post*.

Don't worry. Passing this exam is as easy as pie.

She knew the answer as quick as a flash.

The Princess's skin was as white as snow. [beautifully white]

When he saw it, his face went as white as a sheet. [pale with fear/horror]

The fish was bad and I was as sick as a dog. [vomiting]

She ran off with my money - I felt as sick as a parrot. [bad feeling of disappointment/frustration]

When I told him, his face went as red as a beetroot.



Language help

You can usually make a simile using as ... as can be, e.g. I need a drink; I'm as thirsty as can be.

Like

My plan worked like a dream and the problem was soon solved. [worked very smoothly and well]

Be careful the boss doesn't see you - she has eyes like a hawk. [sees everything]

No wonder he's fat. He eats like a horse and drinks like a fish*.

Did you sleep well? Yes, thanks, like a log.

Sorry, I forgot to ring him again. I've got a mind/head like a sieve! [be very forgetful]

The boss is like a bear with a sore head today. [in a very bad temper]

She goes around like a bull in a china shop*. [behaving in a very clumsy, insensitive way]

Criticising the government in his presence is like a red rag to a bull. [certain to make him very angry]

Exercises

87.1 Complete the as ... as similes.

1. Rosie is as mad as a *hatter* - you wouldn't believe the crazy things she does.
2. You're not eating enough - you're as thin as a *...*
3. He never says a thing - he's as quiet as a *...*
4. You'll have to shout - she's as deaf as a *...*
5. I'm afraid I can't read this small print - I'm as blind as a *...* without my glasses.

87.2 Different similes contain the same word. Fill the gap with the appropriate words.

1. I feel great now. I *slapt* like a log.
2. It's as easy as *...* off a log.
3. After eating that bad cheese I was as sick as a *...*
4. I knew she had deceived me. I felt as sick as a *...*
5. The old man's hair was as white as *...*
6. Her face suddenly went as white as a *...*

87.3 Match the simile beginnings on the left with the endings on the right. There are two that are not on the opposite page. Try and guess them.

- | | | |
|----------|--------------------------|------------|
| 1 quick | ☐ | a daisy |
| 2 red | ☐ | b ox |
| 3 flat | ☐ | c flash |
| 4 fresh | ☐ | d beetroot |
| 5 strong | ☐ | e pancake |

87.4 Simile word puzzle. Fill in the answers, as in the example.

Across	Down
1 bold	1 blind
2 mad	2 light
3 white	3 iron
4 fresh	4 pie
5 dry	5 cool
6 quiet	6 cold

87.5 What can you say about ...

1. a person who sees everything and never misses a thing? *He/She's got eyes like a hawk.*
2. a plan or course of action that works very well?
3. someone who eats and drinks a great deal?
4. someone with a very bad memory?
5. someone who has been very active and busy all day?

A

Advice and warnings

proverb	paraphrase
Don't count your chickens before they hatch.	Don't depend on something happening, because it may not.
Don't put all your eggs in one basket.	Don't invest all your efforts or attention in just one thing.
Never judge a book by its cover.	Don't judge people/things by their outward appearance.
Never look a gift-horse in the mouth.	Never refuse good fortune when it is there in front of you.
Take care of the pennies and the pounds will take care of themselves.	Take care of small sums of money and they will become large sums.
We'll cross that bridge when we come to it.	We'll deal with that problem when it actually happens.

B

Key elements

Proverbs can be grouped by key elements, for example, animals and birds.

When the **cat's** away, the **mouse** will play. [people will take advantage of someone else's absence to behave more freely]

You can lead a **horse** to water but you can't make it drink. [you can try to persuade someone, but you can't force them]

One **swallow** doesn't make a summer. [one positive sign does not mean that all will be well; a swallow is a bird that returns to Britain in late spring]

C

Visualising

As with learning all vocabulary, visualising an element of it often helps.



There's no smoke without fire. / Where there's smoke, there's fire. [rumours are usually based on some degree of truth]



Too many cooks spoil the broth. / Where there's smoke, there's fire. [too many people interfering is a bad way of doing things; broth = a kind of soup]

Language help

Speakers tend to use proverbs to comment on a situation, often at the end of a true story someone has told, or in response to some event.

Exercises

Exercise 1 Find proverbs on the opposite page that you could use in these situations.

- Someone says they have just been offered a free two-week holiday, but are hesitating whether to take up the offer. *Never look a gift-horse in the mouth.*
- Someone thanks you and your friends for helping to load heavy boxes into a van. Someone says they can't be bothered applying to different universities and will just apply to one.
- Three different people have made different arrangements for the same meeting, and so everyone arrives at different times and the result is total confusion.
- Someone is worried about a journey you are making with them and keeps saying things like 'What'll happen if the plane is delayed?' 'What'll we do if our luggage gets lost?'

Exercise 2 Answer these questions about the proverbs on the opposite page. Give an explanation for your answer.

- Another common proverb is **All that glitters is not gold**. Which proverb has a similar meaning? *Never judge a book by its cover. They both warn against trusting how something looks.*
- Which proverb has an opposite meaning to **Many hands make light work**? *A single hand makes heavy work.*
- Another common proverb is **Absence makes the heart grow fonder**. Which proverb has an opposite meaning?
- Which two proverbs warn against anticipating the future?
- Another common proverb is **A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush**. Which proverb has a similar meaning?

Exercise 3 People often refer to proverbs by only saying half of them and leaving the rest for the listener to 'fill in'. Complete the proverbs in these dialogues.

- A: Joel's always criticising people who are selfish, yet he's terribly selfish himself.
B: Yes, well, people who live in glass houses ... *shouldn't throw stones.*
- A: Exactly.
- A: The people in the office have been playing computer games all day since the boss fell ill.
B: Well, you know what they say: when the cat's away ... *the mice will play.*
- A: Right, and they're currently doing that.
- A: I didn't believe those rumours about Nick and Tara, but apparently they are seeing each other.
B: You shouldn't be so naive, you know what they say, where there's smoke ... *there's fire.*
- A: Mm, I suppose you're right.
- A: Amazing, he's made a fortune from just one little shop!
B: Well, I think it's a case of take care of the pennies ... *and the pounds will take care of themselves.*
- A: Sure, he's always been very careful with his money.

Exercise 4 What proverbs do these pictures make you think of?



1 *One penny doesn't make a fortune.*



2 *Never look a gift-horse in the mouth.*



3 *Many hands make light work.*



4 *Where there's smoke, there's fire.*

Try translating some proverbs word for word from your language into English. Then, if you can, ask a native speaker if they can tell you an English proverb with the same or a similar meaning.

Signs and notices in English often use words and expressions that are rarely seen in other contexts. Look at the signs and notices below with their 'translations' into more everyday English.

- 1 **Alight here for Buckingham Palace**
Get off here for Buckingham Palace.
- 2 **TRESPASSERS WILL BE PROSECUTED**
People who walk on this private land will be taken to court.
- 3 **KINDLY REFRAIN FROM USING YOUR MOBILE PHONE IN THE AUDITORIUM**
Please don't use mobile phones in the theatre/hall.
- 4 **PENALTY FOR DROPPING LITTER – UP TO £1,000 FINE**
You can be taken to court and made to pay £1,000 for dropping rubbish.
- 5 **Lunches now being served**
You can buy lunch here now.
- 6 **NO ADMISSION TO UNACCOMPANIED MINORS**
Young people under 18 years old can only come in if they are with an adult.
- 7 **FEEDING THE ANIMALS IS STRICTLY PROHIBITED**
You are not allowed to feed the animals.
- 8 **No through road for motor vehicles**
There is no way out at the other end of this road for cars.
- 9 **NO ENTRY TO UNAUTHORISED PERSONNEL**
You may not enter without permission or if you do not work here.
- 10 **Please place your purchases here**
Please put the things you are going to buy / have bought here.
- 11 **This packet carries a government health warning**
What is in this packet is officially considered bad for your health.
- 12 **Reduce speed now**
Start going more slowly now.
- 13 **Pay and display**
Buy a ticket and put it in a place where it can easily be seen.
- 14 **Cyclists dismount here**
Cyclists should get off their bikes here.
- 15 **FISHING PERMIT HOLDERS ONLY**
Only people with special cards giving them permission are allowed to fish here.

Exercises

Where would you expect to see each of the notices on the opposite page?

EXAMPLE 1 on a bus

Match the words on the left with their meanings on the right.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 to prosecute | ☒ c |
| 2 a penalty | ☐ a |
| 3 a purchase | ☐ b |
| 4 a trespasser | ☐ d |
| 5 to refrain | ☐ e |
| 6 to alight from | ☐ f |
| 7 to prohibit | ☐ g |
| 8 an auditorium | ☐ h |
| 9 to dismount | ☐ i |
| 10 a minor | ☐ j |
| 11 a vehicle | ☐ k |

- a a young person under the age of 18
b to get off a bicycle or a horse
c to bring a legal case against
d not to do something
e to forbid something
f a means of transport
g a punishment
h something which has been or is to be bought
i to get off a means of public transport
j a large place where an audience sits
k someone who goes on private land without permission

Where might you see each of these notices? Explain what they mean.

1 **SHOPLIFTERS WILL BE PROSECUTED**

5 **Admission to ticket holders only**

9 **Flat to let**

3 **English spoken here**

6 **No vacancies**

10 **Dogs must be carried**

8 **NOTHING TO DECLARE**

7 **FISHING STRICTLY PROHIBITED**

11 **Priority seats for the elderly, disabled and pregnant**

4 **Clearance sale starts today**

8 **Cycles for hire or sale**

What notice would a café-owner or a shop-owner put up if they wanted to:

- 1 indicate that their café was now open for breakfast? *Breakfast now being served*
- 2 let people know that the staff can speak Spanish?
- 3 prohibit people under 18 from entering unless they are with an adult?
- 4 ask customers not to enter the kitchen or the work area?
- 5 announce that they will take people who steal anything to court?
- 6 ask people politely not to handle the food or goods?

Over to you

Look at the notices in your own language that you see around you every day. How would they be expressed in English? Try to find out, if they are not included in this unit. Also, look out for any signs in English in non-English-speaking countries. See if you can work out what they mean.

A

The grammar of headlines

Newspaper headlines try to catch the reader's eye by using as few words as possible.

- Grammar words like articles or auxiliary verbs are often left out, e.g. **EARLY CUT IN INTEREST RATES FORECAST.**

- A present simple form of the verb is used, e.g. **MAYOR OPENS HOSPITAL.**

- The infinitive is used to express the fact that something is going to happen in the future, e.g. **PRESIDENT TO VISIT FLOOD AREAS.**

B

Short dramatic words

Newspapers usually prefer words that are shorter and sound more dramatic than ordinary English words. The words marked * can be used either as nouns or verbs.

newspaper word	meaning	newspaper word	meaning
aid*	help	key (adj)	essential, vital
axe*	cut, remove	link*	connection
back (verb)	support	move*	step towards a desired end
bar*	exclude, forbid	ordeal (noun)	painful experience
bid*	attempt	oust (verb)	push out, remove
blast*	explosion	plea (noun)	request
blaze*	fire	pledge*	promise
boost*	incentive, encourage	play (noun)	clever activity
boss*, head*	manager, director	poll*	election, public opinion survey
clash*	dispute	probe*	investigation
curb*	restraint, limit	quit (verb)	leave, resign
cut*	reduction	riddle (noun)	mystery
drama	terse situation	strife (noun)	conflict
drive*	campaign, effort	talks (noun)	discussions
gems (noun)	jewels	threat	danger
go-ahead	approval	vow*	promise
hit (verb)	affect badly	wed (verb)	marry

Newspaper headlines often use abbreviations, e.g. **PM** for 'Prime Minister', **MP** for 'Member of Parliament'. (See Unit 78 for more abbreviations.)

C

Jokes in headlines

Some newspapers also enjoy making jokes in their headlines. They do this by playing with words or punning, e.g. a wet open-air operatic concert was described as:

**TORRENTIAL RAIN
IN MOST ARIAS**

An announcement that a woman working at the Mars chocolate company had got an interesting new job was:

**WOMAN FROM MARS TO BE
FIRST BRITON IN SPACE**

Note: the word 'Briton' is almost exclusively found in newspapers.

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

Exercises

100.1 Match the headlines on the left with the appropriate topic on the right.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 PM BACKS
PEACE PLAN | ☒ | 4 QUEEN'S GEM
RIDDLE | ☐ | a) marriage of famous actress |
| 2 SEY RIV
DRAMA | ☐ | 5 Star Weds | ☐ | b) royal jewels in mystery |
| 3 SPACE PROBE
FAILS | ☐ | 6 Key witness
death threat | ☐ | c) person who saw crime in danger |
| | | | | d) proposal to end war |
| | | | | e) satellite is not launched |
| | | | | f) politician sells secrets to enemy |

100.2 Explain what the following headlines mean in ordinary English.

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| 1 SHOP BLAZE 5 DEAD | 2 MOVE TO CREATE
MORE JOBS | 3 GO-AHEAD FOR
WATER CURBS |
| <i>Five people died in a fire in a shop.</i> | 5 POLL PROBES
SPENDING HABITS | 7 Princess vows
to back family |
| 4 Woman quits
after job ordeal | 6 Bid to
oust PM | |

100.3 The words marked * in the table opposite can be either nouns or verbs. Note that the meaning given is sometimes in the form of a noun. In the headlines below you have examples of words from the table used as verbs. Look at the underlined verbs and explain what they mean. You may need to use more than one word.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 PM TO CURB SPENDING limit | 4 BOMB BLASTS CENTRAL LONDON |
| 2 BOOK LINKS MIS WITH KGB | 5 PM PLEDGES BACKING FOR EUROPE |
| 3 CHANCELLOR CUTS INTEREST RATES | 6 PRESIDENT HEADS PEACE MOVES |

100.4 Explain the joke in these headlines.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 SURGICAL CUTS
Number of surgeons at hospital
to be reduced. | 3 DRAMATIC PAWS
A new version of the musical <i>Cats</i> opens. |
|--|---|

The headline is a play on two meanings of 'cuts' (reductions by the surgeon's knife).

- | | |
|---|---|
| 2 HAMMER HIT HARD
Businessman Joe Hammer badly affected
by the recent economic downturn. | 4 HOT HEIR
Prince gives speech about
climate change. |
|---|---|

100.5 Over to you

Look out for headlines in English in newspapers or on websites. Try to explain them in ordinary English, and see if you can find more examples of jokes.

English in the USA

English in the USA differs from British English. Pronunciation is the most striking difference but there are also differences in vocabulary and spelling as well as some differences in grammar. Americans say *the fall*, while British English speakers say *autumn*; American speakers say *on the weekend*, British English prefers *at the weekend*. Yet, generally, British and American speakers have little difficulty in understanding each other.

American English spelling

American English spelling is usually simpler. For example, British English words ending in **-our** and **-er** in American English, e.g. **colour/color, centre/center**. Many verbs ending in **-ise** in British English end in **-ize** in US English (**realise/realize**). There are differences in individual words too, e.g. British **jewellers** is **jewelry** in American English.

JS words and their British equivalents

Travel and on the street		in the home	
American English	British English	American English	British English
gas(oline)	petrol	garbage, trash	rubbish
truck	lorry	elevator	lift
baggage	luggage*	eraser	rubber
sidewalk	pavement	apartment	flat
crosswalk	zebra crossing	closet	wardrobe
line	queue	yard	garden
vacation	holiday	drapes	curtains
parking lot	car park	flashlight	torch
trunk (of car)	boot	French fries	chips
hood (of car)	bonnet	Scotch tape	Sellotape
freeway/interstate	motorway	cookie	biscuit
one-way trip	single	candy	sweets
round trip	return	bathroom, rest room**	toilet, WC
railway car	railway carriage	diaper	nappy
subway	underground	pantyhose	tights

* *baggage* is also common in British English, especially in the context of air travel

** wash room is commonly used in Canada

Language help

American and British pronunciations are often different. You can hear the British and American pronunciation of words on the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* at CambridgeDictionariesOnline.com

5

Different meanings

Here are some words and phrases which could cause confusion when used by Brits and Americans talking together because they mean something different in each 'language'.



Exercises

If you saw words spelt in the following way, would you expect the writer in each case to be British or American? Why?

- 1 *best American (ends in -or)*
 2 *best*
 3 hospitalized
 4 a movie theater
 5 colour
 6 jewelry

What are (a) the American and (b) the British words for the following things?



Translate the following into British English.

- We went there in the fall. We went there in the autumn.
 Pass me the cookies.
 It's in the closet.
 Open the drapes.
 We've run out of gas.
 6 Our bags are in the trunk.
 7 One-way or round trip?
 8 Let's take the subway.
 9 We've been working in the yard.
 10 I hate waiting in line.

Can you avoid some of the most common confusions arising between British and American speakers? Try the following quiz.

- Where would you take (a) an American visitor or (b) a British visitor who said they wanted to wash up in the kitchen or the bathroom? (a) *bathroom* (b) *kitchen*
- You have just come into an unknown office block. If (a) an American or (b) a Brit says that the office you need is on the second floor, how many flights of stairs do you need to climb?

11. Would a man wear a vest under or over his shirt (a) If he is British or (b) If he is from the USA?

complete the sentences in two ways, an American way and a British way.

- We can park the car in the *parking lot / car park* behind the station.
 I've written the wrong number here. Can I borrow your ?
 It's correct it.
 All that food is no good any more - we'd better throw it in the
 We can take the up to the fifth floor.
 Don't cross here - it's dangerous. There's a further down the street.
 The car wouldn't start so we opened the to see if we could find what
 was wrong.

Over to you.

If you were going on holiday/vacation to the US, which of the words listed opposite do you think it would be most important for you to know?

Answer key

Unit 1

1.1 Possible answers:

- 1 trousers, clothes, tights
2 furniture, information, advice, luggage
3 teach, read, write, put
4 tooth, foot, mouse, goose

1.2

- 2 the final *e* is pronounced as a syllable
- 3 the *ch* is pronounced like a *k* rather than like the *ch* in *church*
- 4 the *w* is silent (not pronounced)
- 5 the stress is on the first syllable in the noun and the second syllable in the verb
- 6 the stress is on the first syllable in *photograph*, the second in *photographer* and the third in *photographic*

1.3

- 2. to coin a phrase, new words, a term
- 3. a royal family, palace, welcome
- 4. a subtle suggestion, shade, difference

1.4

- /(it can mean men or it can be used to address a group of people which includes both men and women)

- f* (it means a person who is legally under-age)
i (it means Wonderful / Amazing!)
f (it means to get off a bus)
i (it means very upset)
f (it means someone who has committed a serious crime)
i (it means to annoy or disturb someone)
i (it means to lose concentration)

- words in the *shade* word family - lampshade, eye shadow
synonyms of *express* - state, say
parts of speech - preposition, conjunction
words with a silent *b* - dumb, limb

9.



- 2 to coin new words 3 screwdriver 4 to drip

nit 2

topic	words
working too much	stress exhaustion overwork burnt out
too hard	snowed under with work be under pressure
friendship	hang out with sb casual acquaintance be close to sb
media	tabloid podcast upload a video blogosphere
	journalist count on sb
	blog

1

- | | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| working too much | stress | exhaustion | overwork | burnt out |
| too hard | snowed under | under with work | be under pressure | |
| friendship | hang out with sb | casual acquaintance | be c | |
| media | tabloid | podcast | upload a video | blogosp |

2

verbs	adjectives	collocations	fixed phrases
rush	breathless	set a clock	out of breath
oversleep	exhausted	deep sleep	in a hurry
dash		fast asleep	
yawn		heavy sleeper	

2

- | State | 3 dissatisfied | 4 deprived of | 5 spicy | 6 chilly |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------|---------|----------|
| Alabama | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Alaska | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Arizona | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Arkansas | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| California | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Colorado | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Connecticut | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Delaware | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| District of Columbia | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Florida | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Georgia | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Hawaii | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Idaho | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Illinois | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Indiana | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Iowa | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Kansas | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Kentucky | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Louisiana | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Maine | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Maryland | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Massachusetts | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Michigan | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Minnesota | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Mississippi | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Missouri | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Montana | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Nebraska | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Nevada | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| New Hampshire | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| New Jersey | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| New Mexico | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| New York | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| North Carolina | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| North Dakota | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Ohio | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Oklahoma | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Oregon | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Pennsylvania | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Rhode Island | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| South Carolina | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| South Dakota | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Tennessee | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Texas | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Utah | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Vermont | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Virginia | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Washington | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| West Virginia | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Wisconsin | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Wyoming | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

2

perfection	perfect	perfect	perfectionist
information	inform	informative	
politics		political	politician
economics	economist	economic/economical	economist

1

Another way to organise your vocabulary include relating new words to your own personal experience (e.g. if you learn new colour words, what things do you have in those colours - *a blue sweater, an orange mug?*). You can also divide your notebook (whether paper or digital) into specific areas (e.g. words to do with food, with travel, etc.). You could keep a digital notebook on a computer or mobile device, lists or words you type in can then be sorted alphabetically or ordered very quickly.

1000

- | | | | | |
|----------|-----------------|------------------|-------------|-----------|
| passport | 3 leaning | 4 liberty | 5 revision | 6 brother |
| elegant | 4 eyebrow | 6 thermometer | 8 lifestyle | |
| urgently | 5 record (verb) | 7 extract (noun) | | |

2

- The Minister denied having received any money from the oil company. / The Minister denied that he/she had received any money from the oil company.

2

	person	thing	person	thing
easy	✓	✓		damp
icky	✓	✓	✓	awkward
outfit	✓			compulsory

10

- | | | |
|---|--|---------------------|
| (conj) pronoun | (conj) conjunction | (prep) preposition |
| the United Kingdom or British English usage | noun [C] countable noun | verb [T] transitive |
| noun [U] uncountable noun | verb [I or T] verb which can be transitive or intransitive | |

Table 4

A picture is a good clue to help you understand **tortoise**. You may recognise the word **shell** in **shellfish** (as in **egg shell**, for example). Similarly, your knowledge of **long** and **life** together with the context should enable you to work out what **longevity** and **lifespan** mean. The whole context of the passage should help you to work out the meaning of **attain** and **tended**. Some of the underlined words may be similar to words in your own language, which can be another useful way of working out the meaning of a word you have not seen before. The meanings of the underlined words are listed here for you to check your answers.

affected with a shell or hard protective cover

little kind of animal that lays eggs and uses the heat of the sun to keep its blood warm

(e.g. crocodiles, snakes)

famed: well-known (famous)

longevity: living a long life

attain: reach

lifespan: time from birth to death

tended: cared for

hibernate: go into a sleep-like state throughout the winter (as some animals and insects do)

4.2 Possible answers:

(These answers all give correct information in more detail than you needed to provide in your own answers.)

- 2 A vole must be a kind of small animal, something like a mouse perhaps.
- 3 A chisel could be a kind of tool that can be used for chipping away at something or for breaking it, I think it's probably something that could be used by sculptors but that bigger ones might also be used for destroying structures.
- 4 A tureen must be a kind of very large bowl, a bit like a pot, used for soup.
- 5 To clamber probably means something like climbing with difficulty.
- 6 Ratty must be a bit like bad-tempered.

4.3 Possible answers:

- 2 I find Caitlin a very kind person.
- 3 I've been terribly busy with work ever since I got back from holiday.
- 4 We walked down a street with trees along both sides of it towards the station.
- 5 The little boys were fascinated by the machine used for mixing cement.
- 6 More and more shops now have their own special credit cards that can only be used in one specific chain of shops and offer you a discount if you use one of them.

- 4.4 2 anger that can't be controlled
- 3 drinks before dinner
- 4 a report that comes out either twice every month or every two months (both meanings of bi-monthly exist)

- 5 the person who used to be my boss (and no longer is)
- 6 feelings that are hostile to tourists
- 7 to break the telephone connection (e.g. by unplugging it from the wall or by doing something at the telephone exchange so that calls can no longer be made, possibly because a bill has not been paid)
- 8 letters that have not been delivered to the people they were addressed to

Unit 5

(-ian)	-ic	-ish	-i	-ese	(other)
Latvian	Icelandic	Irish	Israeli	Chinese	Thai
Arabian*	Arabic*	Turkish	Pakistani	Vietnamese	Swiss
Brazilian		Danish			Dutch
Korean					Arab*

*Arabian is used to refer to the Arabian Peninsula and to Saudi Arabian(s). Arab can also be used as an adjective in expressions such as *the Arab world, Arab states, Arab countries*.

- 5.2 2 d 3 e 4 f 5 a 6 b

- 5.3 2 Britons have highest tax rate in Europe
- 3 Maltese Prime Minister visits Washington
- 4 Police arrest Dane on smuggling charge
- 5 Iraqi delegation meets Pakistani President

3.8 Possible answers:

- 1 Parvathy Cruz
- 2 Helen Mandela
- 3 Kylie Minogue
- 4 Luciano Pavarotti
- 5 Bubba Watson
- 6 U2
- 7

Unit 6

- 1 late
- 2 4 daytime
- 3 6 frost
- 4 8 strong, high
- 5 10 melts
- 6 7 misty
- 7 9 severe
- 8
- 9
- 10

I think it would be interesting to live in a **tropical** climate. However, I don't like **humid** weather. I even dislike the **muggy** days which we get in the UK. Some people love **boiling** hot days, and I don't mind **heat waves** occasionally, but when it's **stifling**, it's just impossible. Maybe I should stay at home and forget about moving to a hot climate!

3.9 Possible sentences:

- 1 It / The weather was very humid.
- 2 There was a gentle breeze (blowing).
- 3 The roads were icy. / There was ice on the roads.
- 4 There was a flood. / There were floods everywhere.
- 5 It / The weather was very misty (or foggy).
- 6 We had a drought (or heatwave) last year.
- 7 It was a very windy day. / There was a gale.
- 8 There was heavy/torrential rain. / There was a (heavy) downpour.
- 9 The sky was very overcast.

Unit 7

- 1 figure
- 2 4 complexion
- 3 6 auburn
- 4 8 elegant / smart / stunning / well-dressed
- 5 7 wrinkles
- 6 9 stunning
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

3.10 Suggested answers:

- 1 the bald one / straight-haired one.
- 2 scruffy and untidy-looking/messy-looking.
- 3 that slim, dark haired woman over there.
- 4 unattractive. In fact, (You could also say he/she was 'rather plain' or 'rather ordinary', if you felt they were neither attractive nor unattractive. 'Ugly' is a very strong word, and could be offensive.)
- 5 in her twenties and quite slim.

3.11 Suggested answers:

- 1a) Piersie: thin-faced, dark, curly hair, fair skin
- 1b) Sandra: dark, wavy hair, stocky build, round-faced
- 1c) Jamini: thin-faced, long, dark hair
- 1d) Jack 'Dagger' Flagstone: bald, with beard and moustache, muscular build

Unit 8

3.12 Opposites:

- 1 a 3 c 4 e 5 b 6 d

- 2 a likes 3 likes 4 dislikes 5 dislikes 6 dislikes 7 dislikes 8 likes

3.13 Possible opposite impressions:

- 1 Molly's usually brusque/blunt.
- 2 Grace is quite unprincipled.
- 3 Sam can be assertive.
- 4 Lisa's quite assertive.
- 5 I find Marcus self-assured.
- 6 Don't you think James is enquiring?
- 7 Freya is peculiar.

8.3

brusque - curt
crafty - cunning
direct - frank
down-to-earth - sensible
gifted - talented
honest - trustworthy
impolite - rude
miserly - tight-fisted
tense - wound up

8.4

2 pessimistic 4 inquisitive 6 argumentative 8 sociable
3 assertive 5 extravagant 7 sensitive

8.5 Possible questions:

- blunt - If a friend asks you if you like her awful new dress, would you say 'No'?
- sensible - If you won a lot of money, would you put it in the bank rather than spend it on a luxury you have always wanted?
- intelligent - Can you give the next letter in this sequence S, M, T, W, T, F? (If you are not sure of the answer, think of the days of the week.)
- even-tempered - If someone spills soup on some new clothes of yours, do you just sigh and say 'That's life'?
- original - Do you never wear blue jeans?
- obstinate - Do you become even more determined to do something if people try to persuade you not to do it?
- stressed out - Do you find it hard to sleep at night because problems are going round in your head?

Unit 9

9.1 2 ... as nails 4 ... in the right place 6 ... awkward customer
3 ... as gold 5 ... piece of work

9.2

2 the teacher's pet 4 top of the class
3 a big-head 5 a lazy-bones (or you could say this person is **bone-idle**)

9.3

2 ... a good head for figures. 6 ... burying your head in the sand.
3 ... have a head for heights 7 ... head and shoulders above ...
4 ... has her head screwed on. 8 ... keeps his head.
5 ... has his head in the clouds.

9.4

a your nerves (always with possessive, **my, our, John's**, etc.)
b the neck (always used with **the**)

9.5

2 middle-of-the-road 3 over the top 4 round the bend

Unit 10

10.1 2 Mike was my roommate at university / Mike and I were roommates ...
3 We were classmates in 2006, weren't we?
4 She's not really a friend; she's just a workmate.
5 Abbie is always arguing with her housemates.

10.2 Possible answers:

- (also possible) Jon/Erica is Erica's/Jon's colleague.
- Ben Park and Joe Nash are partners. Ben/Joe is Joe's/Ben's partner.
- Tania and Georgie are roommates. Georgie/Tania is Tania's/Georgie's roommate.
- Nick and Claire have been seeing each other for a year. Nick and Claire see each other regularly. Nick and Claire got together a year ago.

10.3

1 tagged
2 shared
3 invited
4 accept
5 defend/unfriend
6 comments

10.4 Possible answers:

- A teenage music fan might like/dislike his/her parents, or idolise a pop star, possibly loathe or can't stand a strict teacher, or possibly look up to him/her, and probably be good friends with a mate.
- A personal assistant and another personal assistant could be colleagues who get on well, or who don't see eye to eye. They might look up to the boss, or perhaps they can't stand or despise him/her. They might be attracted to or fancy a very attractive workmate.
- A 40-year-old may be someone who can't stand teenagers or likes/dislikes them, and who looks down on, despises or loathes an ex-husband/wife who was cruel.

10.5

- I fell out with my parents last night. It wasn't my fault.
- We had a quarrel but now we've made it **up**.
- As you think Josh and Nuala are **having** an affair? I do.
- I **get on** very well with all my colleagues at work.
- He's attractive, but her mate just **leaves** me cold completely.
- Maria seems to find it difficult to **make** friends among her classmates.
- I met my boyfriend at a party and we **got** together soon after.

Unit 11

1 in the shed or garage
2 in the toilet or bathroom
3 in a cupboard or a drawer - or on the table of course, if they are in use
4 in a wardrobe

5 in the living room (often down the side of the sofa)
6 in the kitchen or utility room
7 usually in every room

8 in front of one of the entrance doors (front or back)
9 in the kitchen, probably in a drawer or cupboard
10 in the attic/left or in the cellar or in the shed

11 attic/loft 2 landing 3 hall 4 utility room 5 cellar

11.3

1 peeler
2 (rubber) mat
3 rubber new
4 left (this is also possible)
5 shed/garage, terrace/patio (or balcony if not on the ground floor; or verandah, if it is covered)
6 landing
7 bungalow
8 drive (or driveway)

11.4 Suggested answers:

- A dustpan and brush (perhaps followed by a vacuum cleaner)
- A (phone) charger
- Use the remote (control)
- Use a chopping board
- A (coat) hanger

Unit 12

Suggested answers:

- 2 The person's car broke down / would not start.
- 3 Someone's washing machine broke down.
- 4 The handle came off / fell off something. (for example, a door/drawer)
- 5 Perhaps someone tripped and/or fell and grazed their knee/leg/hand/arm/head.
- 6 The batteries are dead / have run out, for example, in a radio or a camera.
- 7 Perhaps someone has mislaid their glasses/books/papers/false teeth.
- 8 Someone has burnt something they were cooking.
- 9 Someone's computer has crashed.

- 12.2 2 stain - the other two are types of minor injury
- 3 bump - the other two can be used about batteries
- 4 leak - the other two are types of damage to solid objects
- 5 dent - the other two involve liquids

Suggested answers:

	car	vase	elbow	clock	printer	sink	a meal
banged			✓				
ruined		✓					✓
cracked							
broken down	✓						
dented	✓			✓			
stopped					✓		
blocked						✓	

Example sentences:

- I banged my elbow and now I've got a bruise.
The meal was ruined - she'd put far too much salt in the pie.
This vase is cracked.
Her car has broken down. She's going to be delayed.
My printer has broken down again because it's got a paper jam I can't fix.
A minibus reversed into me and dented the car.
My clock has stopped. The battery has probably run out.
The sink is blocked again. Shall we call a plumber?

Possible answers:

- 2 I didn't look where I was going as I walked through the low doorway and banged/bumped my head.
- 3 The wind blew the door shut and I realised I'd locked myself out.
- 4 I would ring her but I'm afraid I've mislaid her number. She wrote it down for me.
- 5 I can't take a photo, my camera's broken down / stopped working.
- 6 I tried to run over the rocks but I tripped and fell and bruised/grazed my leg / twisted my ankle.
- 7 I accidentally sat on my bag of crisps and they all got crushed.

Unit 13

- 13.1 2 Earthquake - an **aftershock** is a trembling movement of the earth that can happen after an earthquake. Note how disasters of various kinds can **strike**, e.g. The hurricane **struck** the coastline at noon.
- 3 Hurricane / typhoon / tornado / tropical storm / violent storm / wind - if you **board up** your house you cover the windows and doors with wooden boards to protect them.
- 4 War or a battle of some kind - **gunfire** refers to the sound of guns being used.

- 3 Probably a plane crash - people who witness such accidents or incidents often describe the explosion as a **fireball** or **ball of fire**.
- 4 Probably a flood - if your house is flooded, the natural thing to do is to go to the upper floor(s) or the roof to escape the water.
- 5 I thought if the plants and trees are **dried up**, they are probably dying because they have no water, and since the earth is **cracked** [hard, with a pattern of deep lines over it], it suggests it is very dry.
- 6 Probably landslides - these happen in mountain areas, they can carry trees and other vegetation with them and one of the problems they can cause is making roads impassable until they can be cleared.

	noun: thing or idea	noun: person
explosion	explosion	
survive	survival	survivor
injure	injury	
starve	starvation	
erupt	eruption	

- 1 getting worse (**spreads** means gets bigger / covers a wider area)
- 2 a disaster was avoided (the bomb was **defused** - made safe)
- 3 getting better (the oil is **receding** - going away from where it was heading, for example, towards a beach)
- 4 getting worse (a **time bomb** is something that is set to explode at some definite time in the future)
- 5 disaster avoided (an **emergency landing** is a landing when the pilot has to land the plane immediately - perhaps he/she has no proper control over the plane, e.g. if there is an electrical fault)
- 6 disaster has occurred / is occurring (if you **heed** a warning, you take note, and do something; here the warning was ignored)

- 3 refugees 3 casualties 4 survivors 5 dead, wounded 6 migrants
- 3 cholera or typhoid 3 rabies 4 AIDS

Unit 14

- 3 nursery school 3 crèche 4 admission 5 grammar
- 3 comprehensive 7 public 8 sixth-form college 9 higher education
- 1 I've got one more exam tomorrow. I hope I **pass**. I'm worried.
Really? What makes you think you won't **do well**?
Well, I've **skipped** a couple of classes this term.
Hm, if you **fail**, are you allowed to **resit** the exam?
Yes, but I don't want to. Next year I want to go to university, not **do/take my A levels** again!
- 3 The school **leaving** age is 18 in many countries.
I'm glad you **passed** your exam.
She has to **sit** a Biology exam next week.
Is school **compulsory** till 18 in your country?
No we have to **submit** our work to the teacher by Friday?
I've made a lot of **progress** in my English recently.
Thanks to the LMS, teachers can **monitor** their students' activities.

- 14.4** 2 grammar schools
3 public schools
4 distance learning

Unit 15

- 15.1** 2 master's (degree)
3 PhD
4 undergraduate
5 graduate
6 postgraduate

- 15.2** 2 credits
3 graduate
4 dissertation
5 research
6 field

- 15.3** 2 halls (of residence)
3 lecturers
4 tutorials
5 lecture theatre or lecture hall
6 lectures

- 15.4** 2 entry requirements
3 scholarships societies
4 admissions-office student union
5 student-loan entry requirements
6 tuition fees

Unit 16

- 16.1** 2 executive
3 director
4 unskilled worker
5 administrator
6 supervisor

- 16.2** 2 job
3 work
4 work
5 job

16.3 Suggested answers:

- 2 He's **taken early retirement**.
3 This is a person who **works shifts / does shiftwork**. (You can also say ... is a **shiftworker**.)
4 She's **been promoted**.
5 I **got the sack** (or I was **fired** or I was **dismissed** - more formal).
6 He/She works **nine-to-five** / He/She has a **nine-to-five job**.
7 You're a **workaholic**.

- 16.4** 2 judge - profession
3 electrician - trade
4 plumber - trade
5 lecturer - profession
6 carpenter - trade

- 16.5** 2 living
3 work
4 offered
5 take it on

Unit 17

- 17.1** 1 What did Ryan Archer put **forward** to his bank manager? He presented a **business plan**.
2 What is special about the computers his **firm** makes? They are **custom-built** (or custom-made/designed).

- 3 When did he **launch** his business? A year later.

- 4 What did he **roll out** two years later? An **expanded range** of computers.

- 5 How many computers does his firm **manufacture** now? About **200 a year**.

- 6 What was Ryan Archer's **priority** from the start? Personal service and **customer care**.

- 7 Why didn't he do any **market** research? He felt there were enough **potential** customers.

- 8 Why was he not sure if the machines would **sell**? There was a **recession** at the time.

- 9 Was it all worth the **risk**? Yes. His firm's **order books** were soon full.

- 10 **Going forward**, what are his plans? He's planning a new range of computers, which will **launch** next year.

The business didn't make a **profit** in its first year. There are a lot of **potential** customers for this product. These **order books** were full last month. It's sometimes difficult to **access** new markets if you don't have contacts. We should pay attention to the **feedback** our clients post on our website. Customer care is a **priority** for our company. We need to **expand** our business in Latin America. It's important to **build** contacts before you enter a new country.

The new range of products will **launch** next month. We hope it will **sell**! The firm specialises in **custom-built** laptops for business travellers. **Going forward**, we expect to increase our sales in Japan and China. It's important to get **feedback** from our clients. We're facing **competition** from American firms. We hope to do more **business** in North Africa in the future.

Possible sentences:

- 1 The order books were half-empty, so the company had to close down.
2 Market research showed that potential customers wanted a wider range of software.
3 Custom-built cars are much more expensive than ordinary ones.
4 The firm faced stiff competition from Chinese companies.

Unit 18

- 1 hang gliding
2 water skiing
3 show jumping
4 windsurfing
5 darts
6 snooker / billiards
7 paddle
8 cue
9 oar
10 snowboarding

- 1 low
2 racket
3 stick
4 bat
5 quality
6 made it to / reached
7 knocked out, round
8 competitive
9 spectators, referee
10 sprinters

- 1 long distance, trophies
2 set
3 marathon
4 hurdles
5 tennis player
6 golfer
7 sports equipment
8 need a fishing rod
9 archer
10 long-distance runner
11 favourite Olympic sports
12 fencing and the high jump

- 1 discus (throw)
2 javelin
3 art life
4 abstract
5 landscape

- 1 poetry
2 painting
3 architecture
4 literature, a novel
5 feedback

- 1 art of portrait painting
2 on Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

- 1 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art of** portrait painting.
2 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

- 1 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art of** portrait painting.
2 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

- 1 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art of** portrait painting.
2 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

- 1 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art of** portrait painting.
2 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

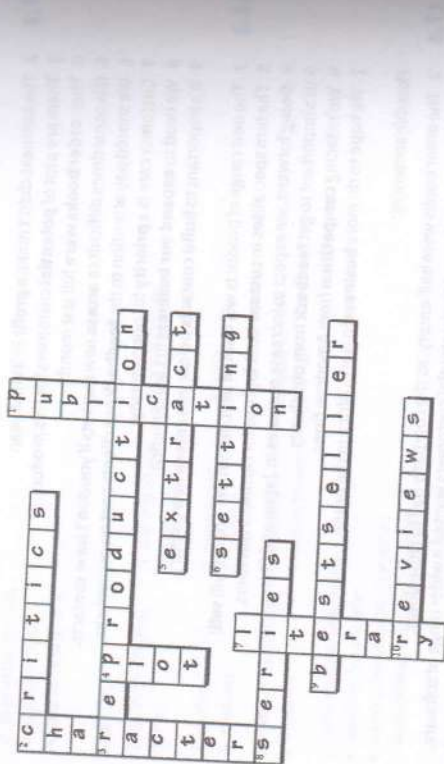
- 1 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art of** portrait painting.
2 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

- 1 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art of** portrait painting.
2 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

- 1 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art of** portrait painting.
2 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

- 1 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art of** portrait painting.
2 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

- 1 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art of** portrait painting.
2 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
3 Which would you rather be good at - **art or music**?
4 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.



Unit 20

- 20.1 2 comedian 3 directors 4 entertainers 5 productions 6 appearance
- 20.2 2 She's got a diploma in dance from the Performing Arts Academy.
3 I've got some tickets for **the** opera. Interested?
4 Shall we go to **the** cinema this evening? There are several good things on.
5 I much prefer **(the)** theatre to **(the)** ballet, don't you?

20.3

- ...measure w (me) ballet, don't you?

20.4 Possible questions: 10 reviews

- 2 Would you like a ticket for the Beethoven concert tonight?
- 3 What kind of films do you like best?
- 4 Was it a good production?
- 5 What are they showing at the Arts Cinema at the moment? / What's on at the cinema?

Unit 21

- 21.1** Henry: playlist, tracks
Anna: sync, stream, playlists
- 21.2**
- 2 the drummer
 - 3 the bass (player) (if it is obvious that you are talking about a band, you don't need to say *bass player*)
 - 4 the keyboard player
 - 5 the lead guitar / the lead guitarist

21.3

21.4 Do you have a good **ear** for music? Do you play a musical instrument **by** ear? Can you **pick** out a tune on an instrument you've never played before? We are looking for volunteers to take part in an experiment to investigate people's natural musical abilities. You don't need to be a **trained** musician and you don't need to be able to **read** music. If you just **make** music at home or with friends for fun, whatever kinds of **music** you are **into**, whether it's **classical** music, **jazz**, pop, we want to hear from you. We believe there are many **talented** musicians out there and we want to learn more about how you do it.

Unit 24

- 24.1**
- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 2 the ozone layer | 6 carbon dioxide | 10 an endangered species |
| 3 globalisation | 7 destruction of the rainforests | 11 water pollution |
| 4 hazardous waste | 8 smog | 12 global warming |
| 5 the polar ice caps | 9 acid rain | |

- 24.2**
- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 2 carbon footprint | 5 green party | 8 organic food |
| 3 climate change | 6 greenhouse effect | 9 ozone depletion |
| 4 fossil fuel | 7 nature reserve | 10 waste disposal |

- 24.3**
- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-----------|-------------------|
| 2 Disposable | 4 destroy | 6 global | 8 endanger |
| 3 reduction | 5 pollutant | 7 dispose | 9 environmentally |

Unit 25

Suggested answers:

- 25.1**
- It lies on an island between two channels of the River Lee.
 - It has a very complex one-way traffic system. Moreover, its buses are extremely crowded.
 - St Anne's Church was built on a site where another church stood previously. That church was destroyed during a siege of the city.
 - In the French Gothic style.
 - Probably not as they do not cater specifically for tourists.
 - The Crawford Gallery is worth visiting because it regularly puts on interesting exhibitions of modern art.
 - Well-off people live in fashionable residential areas overlooking the harbour, while others live in suburbs on the edge of the city.

- 25.2**
- | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------------|
| 2 population | 6 distance | 10 exhibitions |
| 3 area | 7 market | 11 facilities |
| 4 site | 8 trends | 12 outskirts |
| 5 overlook | 9 worth | |

25.3

Possible answers (for Cambridge):

All the items should be ticked except for skating rink and opera house.

25.4

Possible answers:

- leisure, shopping, city centre
- art, music, community college
- basketball, squash, royal court
- night, tennis, social club
- employment, accommodation, press agency

- 25.5**
- | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|
| 2 tennis court / sports centre | 5 estate agent | 8 take-away |
| 3 taxi rank | 6 art gallery | 9 adult education centre / college |
| 4 registry office | 7 library | |

- 25.6**
- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 2 pollution | 4 vandalism |
| 3 overcrowding | 5 traffic jams |

25.7

Possible answers (for Cambridge):

The most picturesque parts of Cambridge are beside the river. Cambridge is one of England's most historic towns. The town could hardly be called spacious as most of its streets are very narrow. Some of the eighteenth-century buildings are particularly elegant.

The most magnificent building in the town, in my opinion, is the Pepys Library. Cambridge is very lively at night because so many young people live there. When the university is on vacation the town can suddenly seem quite deserted. The market is particularly bustling on Saturdays.

The shopping centre always seems to be packed with people. We are lucky in that nowhere in the town is filthy; everywhere is quite clean. Some of the suburbs have become quite run-down in recent years.

Unit 26

- | | | | |
|----------|------------|----------|--------|
| 1 pollen | 3 whiskers | 4 petals | 5 hoof |
|----------|------------|----------|--------|

animal words: mane, fox, worm, horn, claw, owl
plant words: petal, oak, willow, thorn, bark, stem

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------|-------------------------------|
| 1 flies, hawk | 5 stems | 8 twigs (or perhaps branches) |
| 2 blossoms/flower | 6 bud | 9 Bats |
| 3 grass | 7 thorns | 10 Snails |

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 a | 3 f | 4 b | 5 c | 6 a |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

- | | | | | |
|---|---------|--------|--------|------------|
| 1 a crab because it has a shell (it is a shellfish) | 3 a cat | 4 laid | 5 both | 6 a pigeon |
|---|---------|--------|--------|------------|

Unit 27

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------|
| 1 feet, sales | 5 slippers | 8 pyjamas |
| 2 faces | 6 hem, buttons | 9 helmet |
| 3 cardigan / hood | 7 hood | 10 bikini |

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|---------|--------------------|
| 1 jeans | 3 shorts | 4 pairs | 5 pair (of tights) |
|---------|----------|---------|--------------------|

Possible answers:

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 baggy trousers, T-shirt | 5 suede shoes, bag |
| 2 checked shirt, trousers | 6 denim skirt, jacket |
| 3 wadded scarf, socks | |

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| 1 national costume | 4 a mask |
| 2 designer sunglasses | 5 inside out |

- | | | |
|-----------|---------|-------|
| 1 matches | 3 suits | 4 fit |
|-----------|---------|-------|

Unit 28

Possible answers:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1 a bruise | 5 sunburn |
| 2 a black eye | 6 possibly a pain in their side, or they might feel breathless |
| 3 sickness and/or diarrhoea | |

- | | | |
|--------|----------|-------|
| 1 Beth | 3 Casper | 4 Zoe |
|--------|----------|-------|

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 a | 3 b | 4 f | 5 a | 6 c |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 C | 3 A | 4 D | 5 B | 6 F |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

nearest sentence: They operated me immediately. (correct form) They operated on me immediately.

- | | | |
|-----|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 b | a He contracted AIDS in 2001. | b She suffered a stroke. |
| 2 | I picked up a bug but I got over it. | |

Unit 29

- 29.1**
- glasses, spectacles
 - X-rays (or X-ray machines)
 - they invented/used crutches
 - contact lenses
 - in a wheelchair
- 29.2**
- Glasses were invented to correct **difficulties with vision**.
 - Medical technology** has made **rapid advances** in the last **decade**.
 - There is now a **vast range of devices** that make life better for people with medical problems.
 - Artificial** hips are **highly efficient**.
 - Some disabled athletes can run as fast as able-bodied ones using **prosthetic** legs.
 - Scientists are working on **robotic** arms that can be controlled directly by the person's brain.
- 29.3**
- Suggested answers:*
- to help disabled people to move around
 - to help a disabled or injured person to walk
 - to measure someone's temperature
 - to help someone see better
 - to enable a doctor to see inside someone's body
- 29.4**
- Doctors will be able to **identify** diseases at an early **stage** in the future using sophisticated **scanners**.
 - Doctors will be able to **diagnose** a patient's illness from a distance. Patients will send information **automatically** to their doctor.
 - Keyhole surgery** means doctors no longer need to open a patient's body when they operate on them. (*missing preposition)
 - Information on large computer **databases** will help doctors **treat** diseases and give them new **tools** to cure illnesses.

Unit 30

- 30.1**
- Certain foods are **considered** by scientists to **be good** for our bodies.
 - Foods with a **high fat content** may cause health problems.
 - Some foods may cause **long-term** health problems.
- 30.2**
- Fizzy drinks
 - oily fish
 - Processed foods
 - mental health
- 30.3**
- c 3 a 4 b
- 30.4**
- b 3 a 4 d
- 30.5**
- Many fruits are a good **source** of vitamin C and provide **major** health benefits.
 - Oily **fish** should form part of a healthy diet.
 - Which do you prefer to eat as a snack if you're hungry, **fruit** or nuts?
 - A: There's a new Chinese restaurant in town. B: Good! I love Chinese **food**.
 - There has been a sharp **rise** in the number of people suffering from **depression**.
- 30.6**
- Children **who are obese** / **who suffer from obesity** need to exercise more.
 - Her job is **very stressful** / **causes her a lot of stress** and is very tiring.
 - How can we **keep fit** / **maintain a good level of fitness**? The answer is to **get regular exercise** / **to exercise regularly**.

Unit 31

31.1 31.2 31.3 31.4 31.5 31.6 31.7 31.8 31.9 31.10 31.11 31.12

land	air	sea
starting wheel	express	port
coach	coach	gangway
train	platform	liner
disaster	wing	deck
jet	ground staff	
cockpit		

Coach can refer to a type of bus or the individual carriages on a train.

31.1 31.2 31.3 31.4 31.5 31.6 31.7 31.8 31.9 31.10 31.11 31.12

31.1 The flight from Huacal to Puerto Amlugo was **severely** delayed (six hours!). I was worried I'd get stuck at the airport (and hoped that the airline would **put me up** in a nice hotel ☺) but anyway the flight wasn't **cancelled** and we finally took off. The weather was awful, and we experienced a lot of turbulence. In fact, the flight was so **bumpy** that I got **airsick** (very unpleasant). But the **cabin crew** were very friendly and helpful, which made me feel better. The **landing** was not so bad and soon we were at the **terminal** collecting our baggage. I slept well last night - I think I've got over the **jetlag** I had after my 12-hour flight from Europe.

I didn't have a reservation for the Eurostar train from Paris to London, but they put me on **standby** and I got a seat on a later train. It was a good journey, everything ran **smoothly** and it arrived on time. In London, I enquired if there was a **sleeping car** on the train to Scotland so I could travel overnight. The alternative was a hotel and the **early morning** train at 6.30 am (too early for me!). When I got to Scotland I want to go to some of the islands. I hope the sea is **calm**. I hate **rough** seas - I always get **seasick**!

Unit 32

noun	verb
fascinating	fascinate
delightful	delight
exhilarating	exhilarate
glamorous	glamorise
luxurious	luxuriate

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 32.10 32.11 32.12

Unit 33

33.1

- The software **interprets** your speech and **enables** you to turn it into text. Science: **voice technology**
- We're interested in workplaces and how people **interact** with their working environment. Science: **ergonomics**

- People are often worried. They feel that the **creation** of an exact copy of an animal is not morally right. Science: **cloning**
- We study how human **cells** can be used to rebuild our bodies and to repair them when they are injured. Science: **stem cell research**
- My work is concerned with the **structure** and **function** of the organic molecules **associated** with living organisms. Science: **molecular biology**
- Many people refuse to eat **genetically modified** foods. They consider GM foods to be unnatural. Science: **genetic engineering**
- By manipulating DNA, we can **alter** hereditary **features**. Science: **genetic engineering**

33.2

- a smartphone
- a digital photo frame
- a high-definition (HD) camcorder

- e 3 g 4 a 5 h 6 d 7 f 8 b

33.4

- Insert the disk to **install** the software.
- We can **combine** these chemicals.
- You should **utilise** the strongest material.
- We **analysed** the problem and **concluded** that it was a computer virus.

Unit 34

34.1

- spreadsheet
- memory stick
- laptop
- desktop computer
- cursor
- tablet
- microchip
- icon

34.2

- virus
- graphics
- laptops
- database
- hard disk
- cursor
- app (application)
- Word-processing
- (micro)chip

34.3

- Suggested answers:**
- Back it up.
 - Delete the repeated paragraph.
 - Click on the icon for that program.
 - Upgrading the computer.
 - You can undo what you just did.
 - You can download it.
 - That the new software won't run / That you can't run the new software.

Unit 35

35.1

- attachment
- password
- bookmark
- browser
- internet service provider / ISP
- search engine
- server
- navigate
- cloud

35.2

- blog
- access, down
- Skype
- subscribe
- links
- virtual
- interactive

Unit 36

- post
- request
- posts
- likes
- profile picture
- headline
- privacy
- public

- status
- subscribe
- share
- rate
- notification
- direct message
- tag
- direct

- follow
- views
- commented
- account
- default

Unit 37

- cartoon
- current affairs programme
- stream
- identities, dubbed
- podcast
- commercials
- satellite dish, receive
- stream

- soap (opera)
- weather forecast
- detective drama / detective series
- media (people usually just say *media* rather than *mass media*)
- means
- broadcasts
- stream

- The documentary **investigated** the food industry and **focused on** school meals.
- The programme **was shot / made (or filmed) on location** in Northern Finland.
- On** **the** **news** programmes around the world.
- They're **televising** the cup final next week.
- The drama **is set** in Paris in the 1880s.
- Do you ever **tweet** about news events?

Unit 38

- independence
- running
- polling
- elected
- coalitions
- Member of Parliament
- majority
- Prime Minister

- 6 coalition
- 7 election
- 4 majority
- 5 Prime Minister
- 6 the presidency
- 7 to represent

Unit 39

- 39.1** 1 Harry is accused of kidnapping. 4 Noah is accused of smuggling. 6 Mike is accused of fraud.
2 Ophelia is accused of murder. 5 Tom is accused of burglary / theft.

39.2

- 1 arrested
2 charged
3 crime scene
4 evidence
5 accomplice
6 witnessed

39.3

- 2 Many prisoners end up getting time off for good behaviour.
3 The police have charged the driver of the red sports car with speeding.
4 The two girls are suspected of taking sweets from the shop without paying.
5 Sam was found guilty today but the judge will decide on his sentence tomorrow.
6 The jury passed a verdict of guilty on the accused.

39.4

- 2 The police think Bert is guilty but they have no proof.
3 In court the accused pleaded not guilty.
4 The murder case is still under investigation (by the police).
5 Any victim of crime can join this support group.
6 The detective suspected the jealous lover of killing the woman / (that) the jealous lover killed the woman.
7 The bank robbers are currently on trial (at a court) in London.
8 Nathan is hoping to be released from prison soon.

Unit 40

- 40.1** 2 d 3 f 4 a 5 c 6 b
40.2 2 credit limit 4 deposit 6 raise, finance 8 mortgages, repayments
3 competitive 5 overdraft facility 7 combine, payment
40.3 2 a duty-free shop 4 inheritance tax 6 income tax
3 VAT (value added tax) 5 corporation tax

40.4 Answers with possible reasons:

- 2 If they want to build up the amount of money they have or they have money they don't need immediately.
3 Because Joel has been spending more than he can afford to spend and he will have to pay interest on the overdraft.
4 If they need their money immediately to pay for something.
5 You can transfer money into and out of your account online, pay bills, check your account, etc.
6 Using a cash machine is usually quicker than going into the bank, but there is a greater risk that someone may watch you and mug you and take your money, or the machine may take your card if you've forgotten your PIN (personal identification number).
7 Probably happy, because she has a positive amount in her account.
8 Probably insecure, because his income may go up and down and he may not be able to match his outgoings.
9 Less money - the bank has taken money from your account. If the bank puts money into your account, they credit your account.
10 You will find it easier to borrow money from banks, because they will feel confident that you will pay the money back.

Unit 41

- 1 silk 4 faulty 6 china
2 a bizarre design 5 a genuine Monet 7 rubber
3 A 3 C 4 A 5 C 6 B
1 pretty 3 half 4 nowhere 5 reasonably 6 unusually
1 It's easy to follow.
2 Yes, it is effective.
3 They are more likely to be tense rather than relaxed.
4 You'd be pleased because the teacher is saying that it is of a good standard.

Unit 42

- 1 a b 4 h 5 a / g / i 6 a 7 a / g / i 8 f 9 d
Many people believe in life after death.
1 I was in favour of the proposed changes.
2 What does she think of the new teacher?
3 This is absurd, in my opinion / from our point of view / to my mind.
4 He's quite wrong, in my opinion.
5 Well, that's just silly, in my opinion / from our point of view / to my mind.
6 I have my doubts about how honest he is.
7 It is also likely to be opposed to the plans for the new airport?

Possible answers:

- 1 firm / strong 4 obsessive 6 odd / weird / eccentric
2 middle of the road / moderate 5 conservative / traditional
1 I've always doubted that ghosts exist.
2 I have always held (the view) that people should rely on themselves more.
3 Claudia maintains that the teacher has been unfair to her.
4 I was convinced (that) I had been in that room before.
5 He feels we should have tried again.

Unit 43

what he / she / it feels ...	name	who feels ...	name
1 I feel up with something?	Max	5 miserable?	George
2 depressed?	Carlos	6 thankful?	Pilar
3 content?	Katie	7 confused?	Stefan
4 a robot?	Sara	8 delighted?	Agnes

- 1 I always get nervous just before an exam.
2 I was furious when they refused to give me my money back.
3 I was thrilled to see my old school friend again after so long.
4 The news about Tony's illness really upset me.
5 At first, I was enthusiastic about the course, but it's just not very good.

- positive contented, thrilled
negative sick and tired, anxious, frustrated, confused

- 1 I am quite / absolutely sick and tired of her selfish behaviour. I've had enough! (quite sounds more natural when it means the same as absolutely)
2 It's all so complicated. I feel a bit / quite confused. Can you help me?
3 I was absolutely thrilled when I heard the wonderful news!
4 It made me feel quite / a bit frustrated that I still couldn't play any songs after six weeks of guitar lessons.
5 You always seem so absolutely contented with life. How lucky you are!

Unit 44

- 44.1** 2 fond of 4 appeal to 6 fell for
3 keen on 5 fell in 8 passionate about, cares for
- 44.2** 2 I can't stand jazz.
3 Do you fancy Ethan?
4 She's keen on rowing and golf.
5 I can't bear very salty food.
6 His art appeals to me.
7 Gina fascinates me. / I find Gina fascinating.
8 He is totally captivated by her. / She has totally captivated him.
9 I'm not looking forward to the exam.

44.3

2 b 3 a 4 b

44.4

- 2 I can't bear selfish people. I **despise** anyone who never considers others.
3 Her manner **repelled** me at first and I **couldn't** stand being in the same room as her, but now I've begun to like her more.
4 I felt a strong desire to **find** out what had happened to my old school friends.
5 Are you looking forward to **starting** your new job?
6 I felt absolutely **disgusted** by his unkind remarks about Sylvia. (Remember, if something or someone is disgusting/fascinating/boring, you feel disgusted/fascinated/bored.)

Unit 45

- 45.1** 2 whispered 6 shrieked
3 shouted 7 screamed
4 stuttered / stammered 8 mumbling / muttering
5 muttered (or shouted, if he was very angry) 9 murmured / whispered
- 45.2** 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 c
- 45.3** 2 Andrew said happily.
3 Petra said / shouted / shrieked excitedly.
4 Leo said / muttered / murmured bitterly.
5 Lily said / murmured sadly.
6 Rory said anxiously.
7 Kallum said / shouted impatiently.
8 Anna said hopefully.

45.4

- 2 I **object** to having to sit on the floor. I paid for a seat.
3 Stop **grumbling** about your job all the time.
4 He **threatened** to refuse to pay and to **call** the police.
5 She **begged** us to help her.
6 He **confessed** that he had broken / He **confessed** to **breaking** the window.

45.5

- 1 miserably (N) cheerfully (P) desperately (N) gladly (P)
2 a object to b insist on c complain about
3 reluctantly 4 with 5 nervously / shyly

Unit 46

- 46.1** 2 peer 3 observe 4 glance 5 stare 6 glimpse
46.2 2 sweet 3 hot 4 sour 5 spicy 6 salty
46.3 Possible answers:
2 stinking 4 fragrant / sweet-smelling 6 scented / perfumed 8 stinking
3 foul-smelling / putrid 5 pungent 7 musty

- 3 tapped 4 pressed 6 stroked 8 handled
5 grasped 7 grabbed / snatched

Possible answers:

- 3 That smells wonderful.
4 Your hair looks great.
5 It sounds brilliant.
6 This tastes delicious.
7 I feel good, thanks.
8 You look upset. What's the matter?

Possible answers:

Did you **notice** anything different about Kate today? She seemed a little odd to me.
Nabeela is doing some research which involves **observing** a community of chimpanzees.
As she entered the concert hall, Sandra thought she **glimpsed** Jan going out through a door on the other side of the auditorium.
If people do not **see** very well, they can often be helped by glasses or contact lenses.
Jack **peered** through the keyhole trying to see what was happening in the room.
Every evening we sat on the hotel balcony **gazing** at the lake and the magnificent mountains around it.
Why are you **staring** at me like that? Is my face dirty?
Simona had to appear in court because she **witnessed** a traffic accident.

Unit 47

- 3 snore 3 sneeze 4 yawn 5 wink
3 sighed / was sighing 4 cough 6 take a deep breath 8 out of breath
3 snoring 5 sneezing 7 hold your breath
3 suck 3 bit 4 swallowed
3 chew 3 shake 4 blink 5 wink 6 lick
3 grinning 3 licked 4 swallow 5 shaking 6 trembling 7 perspiration

Unit 48

- 3 the cat's whiskers 3 on the ball 4 have green fingers 5 take the biscuit
3 Giovanni is **head and shoulders** above the other kids when it comes to doing hard sums.
3 Maria **has a way** with young children - they always love her.
4 You're **streets ahead** of me in understanding all this new technology; I'm impressed.
6 Hassan **plays chess brilliantly**.
6 Agata **has the gift of the gab**.
3 Tonya is **usually on the ball**.
3 Roger thinks **he's the cat's whiskers**.
4 March **has green fingers**.
5 Unfortunately, you **can't have your cake and eat it**.
3 He just wants you to give your opinion of it - good and/or bad.
3 He disapproves of it.
4 It's not at all flexible.
4 They're worried.
3 I don't understand why Sophie **thinks she's the cat's whiskers / the bee's knees**.
3 When it comes to sport, Andrew is **among the worst** in his school.
3 Greta was **to blame / at fault** for the error in the accounting figures.
5 He **has the gift of the gab**.

Unit 44

- 44.1** 2 fond of 4 appeal to 6 fell for 8 passionate about, cares for
3 keen on 5 fell in 7 affectionate towards

44.2

- 2 I can't stand jazz.
3 Do you fancy Ethan?
4 She's keen on rowing and golf.
5 I can't bear very salty food.
6 His art appeals to me.
7 Gina fascinates me. / I find Gina fascinating.
8 He is totally captivated by her. / She has totally captivated him.
9 I'm not looking forward to the exam.

44.3

- 2 b 3 a 4 b
2 I can't bear selfish people. I **despise** anyone who never considers others.
3 Her manner **repelled** me at first and I **couldn't** stand being in the same room as her, but now I've begun to like her more.

44.4

- 4 I felt a strong desire **to find** out what had happened to my old school friends.
5 Are you looking forward **to starting** your new job?
6 I felt absolutely **disgusted** by his unkind remarks about Sylvia. (Remember, if something or someone is **disgusting/fascinating/boring**, you feel **disgusted/fascinated/bored**.)

Unit 45

45.1

- 2 whispered 6 shrieked
3 shouted 7 screamed
4 stuttered / stammered 8 mumbling / muttering
5 muttered (or **shouted**, if he was very angry) 9 murmured / whispered

45.2

- 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 c

45.3

- 2 Andrew said happily.
3 Petra said / shouted / shrieked excitedly.
4 Leo said / muttered / murmured bitterly.
5 Lily said / murmured sadly.
6 Rory said anxiously.
7 Kallum said / shouted impatiently.
8 Anna said hopefully.

45.4

- 2 I **object** to having to sit on the floor. I paid for a seat.
3 Stop **grumbling** about your job all the time.
4 He **threatened** to refuse to pay and to call the police.
5 She **begged** us to help her.
6 He **confessed** that he had broken / He **confessed** to breaking the window.

45.5

- 1 miserably (N) cheerfully (P) desperately (N) gladly (P)
2 a object to b insist on c complain about
3 reluctantly 4 with 5 nervously / shyly

Unit 46

46.1

- 2 peer 3 observe 4 glance 5 stare 6 glimpse

46.2

- 2 sweet 3 hot 4 sour 5 spicy 6 salty

46.3

- Possible answers:
2 stinking 4 fragrant / sweet-smelling 6 scented / perfumed 8 stinking
3 foul-smelling / putrid 5 pungent 7 musty

- 3 tapped 4 pressed 6 stroked 8 handled
5 grasped 5 poke 7 grabbed / snatched

Possible answers:

- 3 That smells wonderful. 6 I feel good, thanks.
4 Your hair looks great. 7 That sounds fantastic.
5 It sounds brilliant. 8 You look upset. What's the matter?
6 This tastes delicious.

Possible answers:

- Did you **notice** anything different about Kate today? She seemed a little odd to me.
Believe it or not, she is doing some research which involves **observing** a community of chimpanzees.
As she entered the concert hall, Sandra thought she **glimpsed** Jan going out through a door on the other side of the auditorium.
If people do not **see** very well, they can often be helped by glasses or contact lenses.
Jack **peered** through the keyhole trying to see what was happening in the room.
Every evening we sat on the hotel balcony **gazing** at the lake and the magnificent mountains around it.

- Why are you **staring** at me like that? Is my face dirty?
Binoma had to appear in court because she **witnessed** a traffic accident.

Unit 47

- 3 stare 3 sneeze 4 yawn 5 wink
3 sighed / was sighing 4 cough 6 take a deep breath 8 out of breath
3 snoring 5 sneezing 7 hold your breath
3 suck 3 bit 4 swallowed
3 chew 3 shake 4 blink 5 wink 6 lick
3 grinning 3 licked 4 swallow 5 shaking 6 trembling 7 perspiration

Unit 48

- 3 the cat's whiskers 3 on the ball 4 have green fingers 5 take the biscuit
3 Giovanni is **head and shoulders** above the other kids when it comes to doing hard sums.
3 Maria has a way with young children - they always love her.
3 You're **streets ahead** of me in understanding all this new technology. I'm impressed.
3 Hassan **plays** chess **brilliantly**.
3 Again **has the gift of the gab**.

- 3 Tonya is usually **on the ball**.
3 Rajiv thinks **he's the cat's whiskers**.
3 March **has green fingers**.
3 Unfortunately, you **can't have your cake and eat it**.

- 3 No, she just wants you to give your opinion of it - good and/or bad.
3 He disapproves of it.
3 It's not at all flexible.
3 They're worried.

- 3 I don't understand why Sophie **thinks she's the cat's whiskers / the bee's knees**.
3 When it comes to sport, Andrei is **among the worst** in his school.
3 Lorea was **to blame / at fault** for the error in the accounting figures.
3 He **has the gift of the gab**.

- 6 Mick has a way with the secretaries; just look at how they react when he wants something done.
7 He often runs down his school.
8 She always picks holes in everything I say.

Unit 49

- 2 d 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 e
- 2 face 3 as Larry/as can be 4 bad mood 5 in the dumps
- 2 Karen 3 Mark 4 Lars 5 Andrea 6 Krishnan
- 2 I think you should **keep a cool head** and just be patient.
- 3 He **frightened the life out of me** when he came in wearing that ghost mask!
- 4 Everyone was **shaking in their boots/shoes** when they saw the door open all by itself.
- 5 I was **scared stiff/ scared out of my wits** before I did the bungee jump, but it was OK.
- 6 She **swelled with pride** as her daughter received the gold medal.
- 7 I think I got **carried away** by the ideas of joining a rock band. It's actually very hard work!
- 8 I try to just **take everything as it comes**.

Unit 50

- 50.1** 2 challenges 3 chaos 4 corner 5 dilemma 6 disaster
- 50.2** 2 bye 3 of 4 off 5 under 6 on 7 to 8 in
- 50.3** 2 I can't face (the thought of) driving home in all this traffic.
3 Keira seems to be lacking (in) confidence.
4 Unfortunately, the project seems to have come to a dead end (at the moment).
5 People who are deprived of / Being deprived of sleep can have health and other problems.
6 Paula's meeting with Angus had a profound effect on her.

50.4

- stir things up
 see the light at the end of the tunnel
 get to the bottom of things
 got your act together
 6 sit up and take notice
 7 get a grasp of
 8 take a back seat
 9 bury the hatchet

Unit 51

- 51.1
- | | |
|---|---|
| 2 | significant / substantial |
| 3 | minute |
| 4 | enormous / excessive |
| 5 | Vast |
| 6 | average |
| 7 | tiny |
| 8 | significant (substantial is also possible, but the emphasis here is on the fact that the difference was noticeable) |

- 51.2** 2 enormous 3 vast 4 substantial/considerable 5 excessive
- 51.3** 2 loads 3 was 4 loads/dozens 5 were

51.4 Possible answers:

2. The two novels were totally different.
3. His/Her behaviour was wholly unacceptable.
4. That way of working produced utter chaos.
5. I listened to the story in total disbelief.
6. There should be a total ban on using mobile phones in cinemas.

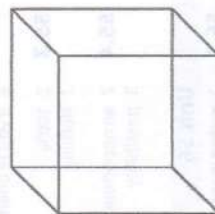
- 11018

- According to a UN study, two per cent of the world's population owns over half of all household wealth.
- Eighty degrees Celsius equals thirty-two degrees Fahrenheit.
- This article says that eight million, five hundred and fifty-six thousand, nine hundred and eighty-one people are currently living in London.

- 6 thirty-three
7 nine
8 sixty-four

description	name of shape	adjective
round shape	circle	circular
shape with three sides	triangle	triangular
shape with eight sides	octagon	octagonal
shaped a bit like an egg	oval	oval
three dimensional round shape	sphere	spherical
three dimensional square shape	cube	cubic

- 3 Oxygen accounts for forty-six **point six** per cent of the earth's crust.
- 4 Seven **nines** are sixty-three.
- 5 The temperature today is eighteen **degrees** Celsius.
- 6 My bedroom is three **multiples** by six metres.
- 7 What is six to the power of nine?
- 8 Therein **thirtenths** of the students passed the exam.
- 9 Seven **thins** five **cubed** is eighty-three and a third.



60 April 1987

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---|-----------------|---|----------------|---|-----------|---|-------|
| 3 | ago / era | 3 | stages / phases | 4 | stage (or era) | 5 | phase | 6 | spell |
| <i>Possible answers:</i> | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | went on / dragged on | 4 | fly | 6 | timeless | 8 | momentary | | |
| 2 | Age | 5 | elapsed | 7 | fleeting | | | | |

- Solutions answers

3. **Hit** you're just in time for tea/coffee.
4. **By** the time you get this card, I'll be in New York.
5. **Can** you please come one at a time? I'll speak to you one at a time.
6. **Can** you use the old computer for the time being, please?
7. **It** do my best to arrive/be on time.
8. **The** weather can be very hot at times in (city name).
9. **Enjoy** a game of tennis from time to time.

Unit 54

54.1 Suggested answers:

- 2 ... extremely tall
- 3 ... a shortcut
- 4 ... height
- 5 ... widened it / ... 've widened it
- 6 ... heightened the feeling

54.2

- 2 to lengthen
- 3 a very narrow range of goods
- 4 a long-distance call
- 5 shallow water
- 6 faraway/distant places
- 7 broad-minded
- 8 lower your hand

54.3

- 2 e
- 3 f
- 4 d
- 5 b
- 6 a

54.4

- 2 expanded, contracted
- 3 shrunk
- 4 stretches
- 5 extended

54.5

- 1 at, of
- 2 in
- 3 from (or possibly at)
- 4 from, to

Unit 55

55.1

- 2 c
- 3 f
- 4 d
- 5 b
- 6 a

55.2

Suggested answers:

- 2 You don't have to buy the travel insurance; it's an optional extra charge.
- 3 You can borrow the camcorder, but you will be liable for any damage to it.
- 4 We'll have to sell the house. I'm afraid we have no choice/alternative; otherwise we will be bankrupt.
- 5 He didn't want to give them the money, but they had guns; they forced him to hand it over.
- 6 No, he couldn't choose to pay a fine; a prison sentence is mandatory for dangerous driving.
- 7 I didn't want to do maths, but I had to. It's compulsory/obligatory in all secondary schools.
- 8 If you're unemployed, you're exempt from paying tax.

55.3

- 2 100%
- 3 Nothing
- 4 No, you can choose.
- 5 Yours

55.4

- 2 an opportunity
- 3 possibility
- 4 doubtful
- 5 an absolute certainty
- 6 It is probable that she will

Unit 56

56.1

- 2 racket is an ideal word here.
- 3 noises/sounds if you mean different sounds, but noise/sound is also possible here if you interpret 'some' to mean not a plural number, but one sound of 'a certain, unidentifiable type', e.g. 'Some animal must have come into the garden last night - look at these footprints.'
- 4 racket (dtn can also be used, often for discordant music)
- 5 noise is probably the best word since it means something negative and can be used uncountably (without a).

56.2

Suggested words:

- 2 clatter/crash
- 3 rustle
- 4 thud
- 5 bang
- 6 roar
- 7 rumble
- 8 screech

56.3

- 2 ringing
- 3 patterning
- 4 hum
- 5 chime/chiming
- 6 clanged

56.4

- 2 d
- 3 a
- 4 f
- 5 c
- 6 e

56.5

- 2 c
- 3 a
- 4 b

Unit 57

57.1

- 1 properties
- 2 belongings
- 3 allocated
- 4 left
- 4 estate
- 5 possessions
- 6 property

57.2

- 1 supplied
- 2 presented
- 3 catered
- 4 supported
- 5 inherited
- 6 property/properties
- 7 possessions
- 8 belongings

57.3

Suggested answers:

- 1 Did he inherit the house?
- 2 Will you sponsor me in a run/race for charity?
- 3 Are you a tenant?
- 4 Would you like to contribute/donate to cancer research?
- 5 Would you supply/provide us with pens and things?
- 6 Do you own/prophietor
- 7 possessions
- 8 belongings

57.4

- 1 landlords
- 2 tenants
- 3 owner/prophietor
- 4 estate
- 5 property/properties
- 6 possessions
- 7 belongings
- 8 belongings

Unit 58

58.1

- 1 a
- 2 b
- 3 c
- 4 d
- 5 d

58.2

Possible answers:

- 1 an insect crawls; a baby does too before it can walk; there is a fast over-arm swimming style called 'crawl'
- 2 anything moving extremely fast, e.g. a bird or animal can shoot by, a plane can shoot overhead, a fish can shoot through the water
- 3 a bird's or butterfly's wings; a piece of washing on the line in the wind; a person's eyelashes; a curtain in the wind
- 4 anything moving slowly on water, e.g. a boat, a piece of wood; a person can drift through life (moving without any sense of purpose or direction); your thoughts can drift to something or someone (it happens unintentionally); you can drift off to sleep (go to sleep slowly)
- 5 pace
- 6 velocity
- 7 speed
- 8 rate
- 9 at a very slow pace
- 10 swayed a little
- 11 stirred
- 12 at a much faster speed

58.3

Possible answers:

	usage	grammar
quick	something that takes a short time, e.g. quick snack; quick phone call	adjective only; can be used with 'to', e.g. She was quick to respond
rapid	more formal; used for things like 'rapid increase/decline'	adjective only
swift	more restricted generally; used for things like 'swift-flowing stream'; swift response/decision/reaction	adjective only; can be used with 'to', e.g. He was swift to point out how wrong I was

58.4

Possible situations:

1. if you are very late for something.
2. if you want to be late for something, e.g. something unpleasant.
3. if you aren't in a hurry. You can also say this about your studies, if you are not going either particularly fast or slowly.
4. if you were hiding from someone, e.g. under a bed or behind a door.
5. if you really don't want to meet them or talk to them, or don't want them to see you.
6. if it's late and everyone else is asleep.

Unit 59

- 59.1**
- coarse
 - rough
 - slippery
 - shiny / polished / smooth
 - prickly
 - furry
 - jagged
 - silky / smooth
 - rough / coarse

- 59.2**
- The cloth was rough **to the touch**.
 - We sat in a **shady** part of the garden.
 - Suddenly there was a **dazzling** light.
 - The ground was very wet **underfoot**.
 - My suitcase is as **light as a feather**.

- 59.3**
- a
 - d
 - f
 - 5
 - b
 - c

Suggested answers:

- change the colour to a brighter / more vivid colour
- wear sunglasses / shade your eyes / wear a cap
- polish them
- take things out or get a smaller rucksack

Unit 60

- 60.1**
- fulfilled
 - reach/attain/achieve
 - attain/realise/fulfil
 - reach
 - realise/fulfil
 - come

60.2

verb	noun	adjective
realise	realisation	realisable
target	difficulty	difficult
fail	target	targeted
trouble	failure	failed, failing
	trouble	troubling, troublesome, troubled

Comments:

difficult has no adverb in English; we say 'We did it **with difficulty**'.
targeted is used in sentences such as 'The government has decided to give the extra funds to **targeted** groups in society'. [specifically chosen]
failed: They have made three failed attempts to save the company.
unfailingly: 'failingly' doesn't exist, but 'unfailingly' does, e.g. She is **unfailingly** honest; you can trust her completely.

troubling: We have seen some very **troubling** developments recently. [worrying]

troublesome: They are a **troublesome** group of students. [cause trouble]

troubled: I've been feeling rather **troubled** lately about my daughter. [worried]

60.3

- She succeeded **in rising** to the top of her profession.
- Do you ever have any trouble **using** this photocopier? I always seem to.
- I've **managed** to work quite hard this last month. [**accomplish** usually has a direct object, e.g. 'I've accomplished a lot this month'.]
- I'm amazed that you can cope **with** all the work they give you.
- Did you have **much difficulty** finding the book in the library?
- Unfortunately, it seems as if all Johnny's plans have come to nothing.
- I'm afraid I haven't had any **success** in contacting Lara today.

Possible answers:

- Perhaps someone who invested £5,000 and lost it all.
- It could be about a business someone started, or about a project, or something that failed.
- It might be said to someone who is carrying a lot of heavy shopping bags.
- Perhaps it's about the successful realisation of someone's plan, e.g. for getting permission to do something where it seemed more likely that the result would not be successful.

Possible answers:

- I'd get it seen to / repaired.
- Perhaps try again, or abandon it.
- Perhaps ask for help and advice from the teacher.

Unit 61

- in the meantime
- Earlier on
- Following
- 8 moment
- subsequently
- Prior to
- during
- at some point
- 3 simultaneously
- 4 (at) the time (that)
- No
- 3 All summer
- 4 Hamburg
- 5 Three weeks
- 6 Probably just part of it

Unit 62

- in case of / in the event of (often seen in notices and regulations)
- unless
- on condition that would be very suitable since this is legal/official language, or **providing/provided** that, so long as is also possible, but **as long as** sounds just a little too informal
- supposing / What if (less tentative, more direct and informal) / if
- if anyone rings, I don't want to speak to them, **whoever it is**.
- Whatever I do, I always seem to do the wrong thing.
- It'll probably have meat in it, **no matter which dish you choose**. They don't cater for vegetarians here.
- However I do it, that recipe never seems to work.
- No matter how hard you try**, you'll never be able to do it all on your own.

Possible answers:

- You cannot enter unless you have a passport. / You can/may enter providing/provided (that) / on condition that you have a passport.
- You can/may go to university as long as you get 70% or more in the exam. / Unless you get (at least) 70%, you cannot go on to university.
- Children under 10 can't go on the roller coaster unless they are accompanied by an adult. / Children under 10 can go on the roller coaster provided they are accompanied by an adult.
- Visitors may enter the mosque on condition that they remove their shoes. / You can go in as long as you take off your shoes. (informal)
- You can't come in unless you're over 18. / You may enter the club providing/provided (that) you are over 18.

Unit 63

Suggested answers:

- The reason (why) I didn't contact you was that I'd lost your phone number.
- I will not sign on the grounds that this contract is illegal.
- The government passed a new law with the aim of controlling prices.
- I wonder what her motives were in sending flowers to everyone.
- The high salary prompted her to apply for the job.
- The announcement of higher taxes **provoked** / **generated** / **led to** a strong attack from the opposition.
- The new Act of Parliament **produced** / **brought about** / **gave rise to** great changes in industry.
- The train crash **was caused by** / **was due to** the failure of the electrical system.
- A violent storm **caused** the wall to collapse.
- Food shortages **led to** / **provoked** / **caused** / **sparked (off)** serious riots in several cities.
- The food shortages **arose from** / **stemmed from** bad economic policies.

63.3 2 of 3 with, of 4 in 5 from 6 with, to 7 to

63.4 Possible answers:

- Owing to the fact that the performance was cancelled, everyone got a refund.
- The service was terribly slow. As a result / Consequently (more formal), all the customers got angry.
- We missed the last bus. As a result, we had to walk home.

Unit 64

64.1 Possible answers and comments:

- I accept (or more formal: I acknowledge) that you weren't solely to blame, but you must take some responsibility. (**Accept** and **acknowledge** are most suitable here since the speaker is prepared to agree with one aspect but wants to go on to make another point to support his/her case.)
- OK, I admit I was wrong. You were right; he is a nice guy. (This seems to be a situation where somebody is accusing someone of trying to get them to say they were wrong. **Admit** is ideal in this case.)
- The company acknowledges that you have suffered some delay, but we do not accept liability. (**Acknowledge** is perhaps best here; it is often used in formal, legalistic situations like this because it simply says 'We understand your message, but we do not necessarily accept any liability/blame/responsibility'; **admit** might suggest the company does accept legal responsibility; **accept** is also possible though less formal.)
- She accepted/conceded that we had done all we could, but she was still not content. (**Concede** usually suggests an argument or debate where people might 'give' small points to one another while still holding on to their basic position, and would seem to be a likely choice here; **concede** here suggests she did not really want to say it.)

64.2 Suggested answers:

- After all
- for all that / after all
- It's all very well
- That's all very well / That's all well and good

64.3 Possible answers:

- There's a **huge discrepancy** between what she says and what she does.
- Toby and Catalina are **poles apart** when it comes to saving money / on the question of saving money.
- There's a **world of difference** between being a student and being a teacher.
- There's a **yawning gap** between the standard of living in the north and in the south.

64.4 Possible answers:

- The house itself is rather small.
- There is no sign that the government has solved the traffic problem.
- In most of the rest of Europe, you drive on the right.
- I'm not at all hungry, thanks.

- on the other hand (it's true that it's expensive, but if you look at it from another point of view, we need it)
- on the other hand (it's true that I'd like to leave my job but if I look at leaving from another point of view I realise I'd miss my colleagues)
- on the contrary (it's not true that he's lazy)
- on the contrary (it's not true she speaks Japanese well)
- on the other hand (it's true that it looks attractive but it's also true that it's expensive)

Unit 65

Suggested answers and comments:

- In addition to / As well as / Apart from / Besides
(The choice is quite wide, but, depending on which one she chooses for 2, the writer would probably then choose a different one for 4, to avoid repeating herself.)
- etc. / and so on
(etc. is slightly more formal than **and so on**, and the writer may want to avoid sounding too informal.)
- In addition to / as well as / apart from / besides
- Furthermore / Moreover / Likewise
(**furthermore/moreover** add her previous experience on to the rest; **likewise** not only adds the information but suggests it is of equal value to the other experience she has mentioned.)
- If she wanted to use **what's more**, the writer would probably write it in full as **what is more**, so as not to sound too informal. However, **what's more** / **what is more** can often sound a little abrupt and argumentative (as if you're trying very hard to convince the reader) and might sound just a bit too strong here.
- Equally would not be suitable here, as it is best used when arguing points and presenting opinions (trying to convince someone of the equal value of a point added on to other points).
- My cousin turned up **along with** some schoolmates of his.
- He owns a big chemical factory **as well as** running a massive oil business in the USA.
- In addition to **being** their scientific adviser, I act as a consultant to the Managing Director.
- It was raining and getting dark. **On top of (all) that**, we had very little petrol left in the tank. (It is not necessary to repeat *also*.)
- He's a very good singer. **What's more** / **What is more**, he has a degree in music.
- Besides** having a good job, my ambition is to meet someone nice to share my life with.
- Alongside** my many other responsibilities, I now have to be in charge of staff training.
- In addition to **having** / **In addition to** a degree, she also has a diploma.
- My father won't agree. **Likewise**, my mother's sure to find something to object to.
- He's a good footballer and a good athlete **to boot**.
- He said he'd have to first consider the organisation, then the system, then the finance **and so on and so forth**.

- into the bargain
- In addition
- on top of (all) that

Suggested answers:

To become a successful athlete you will need to be fit **plus** you will need to train hard every day.
Furthermore / **Moreover** / **What is more** / **Besides** / **In addition**, you will need a very special type of determination **as well as** stamina. **Additionally** / **In addition**, you will need support from friends and family, financial support **and so on** (and so forth) / **etc.** And a good coach will help a great deal, motivating you **as well as** setting goals for you. **Alongside** / **Apart from these things** / **On top of (all) that**, you will need that indefinable thing: talent.

Unit 66

- b
- d
- a
- f
- e

- Issues is best here because it is something everyone is debating and disagreeing on, but **question** and **problem** are also OK
- problem** / **matter** (or **crisis** if it is really serious)
- question** (**mystery** would also be possible)
- topic**
- approach** / **response** / **solution** / **answer**

- a
- c
- e
- d
- b

67.1

"Well, where shall I start? It was last summer and we were just sitting in the garden, **sort of** doing nothing much. **Anyway**, I looked up and ... **you see**, we have this, **kind of**, long wall at the end of the garden, and it's ... **like** ... a motorway for cats. That big fat black one you saw, **well**, that one wall, **you know**, daydreaming as usual, and all of a sudden there was this new cat I'd never seen before. It wasn't an ordinary cat at all. ... **I mean**, you'll never believe what it was."

67.2

Suggested answers:

- 2 A: I'll take care of these.
B: **Right / Good.** That's everything.
A: **Right / Good / Anyway,** see you next week.
B: **Right / Good.** That was a very useful meeting.
A: It was last Monday. I was coming home from work. I saw this funny old man approaching me. I stopped him ...
B: I bet it was Jim Dibble!
A: **Hang on!** Let me tell you what happened first.
A: Which number is yours?
B: **Let me see ...** it's that one there, yes, that one.

67.3

Suggested answers:

- 2 There are two reasons why I think he's wrong: **a**, people don't act like that, and **b**, Paul would certainly never act like that.
- Now**, I want you to pay attention, everyone.
- He loses his temper very quickly. **On the other hand**, he's got a great sense of humour. You seem a bit sad today. **Look**, let me buy lunch for you to cheer you up.
- A: So I'll pick you up at 6.30. B: **Great**. See you then.

Unit 68

- 68.1 2 f 3 a 4 e 5 d 6 b
- 68.2 2 In other words
3 For example/For instance
4 Next
5 as it were
6 Lastly
7 In summary/In sum/In conclusion

68.3

- 2 the following (introducing a list)
- 3 in summary, to sum up, in sum
- 4 further (as in *further details/information*)
- 5 overleaf (meaning turn the page)

240

English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

Unit 71

- 71.1** 2 inedible 3 illiterate 4 disorganised 5 irresponsible 6 irreplaceable
71.2 2 unwrapping 4 disprove 6 to unload 8 unfolded
 3 disagree 5 unveiled 7 disconnected
71.3 2 antiseptic 3 multinational 4 auto-pilot 5 postgraduate 6 subway
71.4 2 indiscreet 5 irrelevant 8 inefficient 11 disloyal
 3 insensitive 6 disobedient 9 unlocked 12 intolerant
 4 unconvincing 7 unemployed 10 ungrateful
71.5 2 mispronouncing 4 a pseudo-science 6 redo it
 3 are overworked but underpaid 5 her ex-husband

Unit 72

verb	person noun	abstract noun
convert		conversion
conduct	conductor	
impress		impression
support	supporter	support
compress		compression

Conduction exists as an abstract noun meaning the process by which heat or electricity goes through a substance. *Compressor* exists as a concrete noun for part of a machine which forces air or gas into less space.

72.2

- 2 deported 5 inspector 8 composed
 3 adverts/advertisements 6 diverted 9 depresses
 4 imposed 7 introducing 10 postpone

72.3 It isn't easy to find exact synonyms for these words; the meanings are as follows:

- 2 argue against 4 work out 6 hold back
 3 hold back 5 made public

72.4

postpone - put off, oppose - go against, inspect - look at, deposit - put down, divert - turn away
 In each case the word based on the Latin root is more formal than its two-part verb equivalent.

Unit 73

- 73.1** 2 amazement 6 strength 10 happiness 14 reason
 3 frustration 7 anger 11 popularity 15 width
 4 kindness 8 generosity 12 weakness
 5 hostility 9 politeness 13 wisdom
73.2 2 recede 6 bore 10 own
 3 believe 7 act 11 expect
 4 relate 8 see 12 adjust
 5 strengthen 9 produce
73.3 2 amazement 6 replacement 10 sight 14 motherhood
 3 curiosity 7 stardom 11 freedom 15 ownership
 4 brotherhood 8 reduction 12 rage
 5 chance 9 neighbourhood 13 prosperity
73.4 2 advice 3 injustice 4 darkness 5 kingdom

Here are some 'real' quotations about these abstract nouns:

- 1 Freedom is an indivisible word. If we want to enjoy it, and to fight for it, we must be prepared to defend it to everyone.
 2 Love is a universal migraine. [migraine = bad headache]
 3 Life is a foreign language; all men mispronounce it.
 4 Four be the things I'd be better without: love, curiosity, freckles and doubt.
 5 Where there is no imagination, there is no horror.

Unit 74

- 1 an open-necked, tight-fitting shirt 6 an easy-going, warm-hearted person
 2 a long-legged, brown-eyed girl 7 a curly-haired, quick-witted boy
 3 brand new, open-toed sandals 8 a far-fetched story
 4 a well-dressed, suntanned boy

Unit 75

- 1 blue 4 absent-minded 7 tight-
 green-eyed broad-minded loose-fitting
 brown narrow-
 2 hotel 5 hand- right-handed
 water* proof home-made
 fine man-
 3 second 6 sugar-
 business class duty-free

*usually written as *waterproof*, without a hyphen

74.3

1 It was an old, **run-down** hotel that needed modernising. None of the rooms were **air-conditioned** and the so-called restaurant was just a coffee bar. Our room had an old, **worn-out** carpet that was dirty.

2 It's a very **built-up** coast, with hotels and villas everywhere.

3 We managed to get a **last-minute** booking for a Mediterranean cruise.

4 **Off-peak** train travel is much cheaper than travelling at busy times, but **long-distance** travel by train can sometimes be more expensive than flying.

5 The route of the President's drive to Parliament was **top secret** and he was driven in a **bullet-proof** limousine.

6 The workers went on **all-out** strike over a **long-standing** pay dispute and the airport was closed for three days.

7 She used to be quite **well-off** but she lost a lot of money and now she has a **hard-up** look about her. She got a **part-time** job to help pay the bills.

8 She has to have a **sugar-free** diet but it's very **time-consuming** trying to make sure everything she buys has no sugar in it.

Unit 75

Here are some words which would fit appropriately into the bubble diagrams.

money	health	social issues
bank account credit card luxury goods mail order pocket money income tax	blood donor heart attack contact lens birth control blood pressure hay fever food poisoning junk food mineral water	race relations arms race welfare state death penalty generation gap climate change

75.2

- 2 An alarm in a house which goes off if burglars try to get into the house.
- 3 Being poisoned or being made ill by food that you have eaten.
- 4 A gap between different generations making it difficult for parents and children to understand each other's tastes and attitudes.
- 5 Changes in the climate of the world leading to phenomena like the polar caps reducing in size, glaciers melting and so on.
- 6 Scissors that are especially for use in a kitchen preparing food, etc.
- 7 Goods that are luxuries rather than necessities, e.g. cosmetics compared with basic foods.
- 8 Money that you carry in your pocket, i.e. small amounts of money that can be spent on what you wish. (It is usually used about money that parents give their children every week to spend on what they themselves decide.)
- 9 The part of the state that provides welfare for the members of society who need it, e.g. money for those out of work or pensioners or sick.
- 10 An electronic telephone answering system used particularly by organisations and mobile phone users.

75.3

- 2 climate change
- 5 air traffic control
- 8 package holiday
- 11 light bulbs
- 3 hay fever
- 6 contact lens
- 9 voice mail
- 12 food poisoning
- 4 the arms race
- 7 the death penalty
- 10 pedestrian crossing

75.4

Possible answers:

Here are some possible answers for this question. There are some other possibilities also. Check with a dictionary or a teacher if you are not sure whether your answers are correct or not.

- 2 soundbite
- 5 mother country
- 8 level crossing
- 3 blood ties
- 6 inheritance tax
- 9 fast food
- 4 teapot
- 7 word-processing
- 10 rat race

75.5

Possible sentences:

- 2 Leading politicians will always try to include one of these when they are making a speech. (sound bite)
- 3 They say these are thicker than water. (blood ties)
- 4 We were given a large silver one as a wedding present. (teapot)
- 5 José hasn't lived in Chile since he was six but he still considers it his mother country.
- 6 They had a huge amount to pay after their father died. (inheritance tax)
- 7 The software package for doing this on my computer means I can be very efficient. (word-processing)
- 8 We've got one at the end of our village and you often have to stop to let the trains pass. (level crossing)
- 9 Burgers and pizzas are popular types of this. (fast food)
- 10 He couldn't stand it any longer and moved to a Scottish island to be self-sufficient. (the rat race)

Unit 76

Possible answers:

- 2 nervous breakdown
- 6 sales outlet
- 3 computer printout
- 7 positive feedback / outcome
- 4 annual turnover
- 8 city bypass
- 5 final output / outcome

- 2 J
- 3 I
- 4 f
- 5 h
- 6 a
- 7 c
- 8 b
- 9 d
- 10 g

- 2 shake-up
- 4 crackdown
- 6 workout
- 8 Check-out
- 3 walkout
- 5 breakout
- 7 outbreak

76.4

- 3 burglaries (burglars break in to buildings)
- 3 attempt to conceal information (or cover it up)
- 4 obstacle in the way of progress (has set the speaker back)
- 8 delay to traffic (something has held up / delayed the traffic)
- 6 escape (to get away = to escape)
- 7 audience (people can be said to turn out to attend something)
- 8 stay in bed (to lie in = to stay in bed longer than usual)
- 8 papers accompanying a talk (to hand out = to distribute)
- 10 tidy (to clear out = to tidy a place by getting rid of things you don't need)

76.5

- 3 Set up means organisation, whereas **upset** means disturbance.
- 3 **outlet** means a place where something is released, whereas **let-out** means a way of escaping from a difficult situation.
- 4 **outlay** means an amount of money spent on something, whereas **layout** means the way something is arranged, e.g. the layout of a page or a room.

Unit 77

- 1 wine and dine
- 2 high and dry
- 3 part and parcel
- 4 rack and ruin
- 5 rough and ready

77.3

- 3 I was left **high and dry**, with no one to help me.
- 3 The room's a bit **rough and ready** but you're welcome to stay as long as you like.
- 4 She was in a bad temper and was **ranting and raving** at everybody.
- 6 My hosts **wined and dined** me at the best restaurants.
- 6 That old house in the country has gone to **rack and ruin**; nobody looks after it now.
- 7 Working hard and being very disciplined is **part and parcel** of training to be a top athlete.

77.5

- 3 **First and foremost**, I want to get a good, steady job.
- 3 I've bumped into Karen **on and off** / **off and on** but I don't meet her regularly.
- 3 Her violin playing seems to be progressing in **leaps and bounds**.
- 3 I've been running **to and fro** / **back and forth** all morning.
- 3 The doctor said I needed a few weeks of **rest and recreation** / **R and R**.
- 3 We'll have to stay in a cheap hotel. We can't afford to **pick and choose**.
- 3 There are some nice hotels **here and there** along the coast.
- 3 Mrs James was ill for a while, but now she's **out and about** again.
- 3 Rodin's office is on the next floor to mine, so we have to go **up and down** all day.

77.6

- 3 correct
- 3 wrong: black and white
- 4 wrong: Sooner or later
- 8 wrong: Ladies and gentlemen
- 6 correct

77.4

- 3 all or nothing
- 3 back to front
- 4 sink or swim
- 5 slowly but surely
- 6 give or take

Unit 78

- 3 e
- 3 h
- 4 g
- 5 a
- 6 b
- 7 f
- 8 d
- 3 GM, WHO, DNA, carbs
- 4 scuba
- 5 NATO, M16, CIA
- 3 AAA/aka
- 4 high-tech
- 5 satnav
- 3 laser
- 5 sonar

78.4

- 1 RSPV
- 2 PS
- 3 RIP
- 4 PTO

Unit 79

- 79.1**
- This printer isn't working again! It's a **pain in the neck**.
 - It's almost midnight! I'd better be **making a move**.
 - I spent too much money last month and now I'm **in the red**.
 - It's time to change my laptop. It's five years old and has **seen better days**.
 - She is the absolute limit! She really **takes the biscuit**.
 - Oh dear, Matthew completely misunderstood me. He always seems to **get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick**.
 - I'm sorry. I do some really stupid things. You must think I'm **as daft as a brush**.
 - I wonder what's wrong with Ursula? She looks **down in the dumps**.
 - I don't trust politicians. Most of them are **just on the make**.

- 79.2** barking up the wrong tree 3 poke your nose in (to) 4 as good as gold

- 79.3** 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 b 6 a

79.4 Suggested answers:

- very easy
- very fit physically
- treating me in a cold, unfriendly way
- very occasionally / very rarely
- learnt how to use it or to understand it

Unit 80

- 80.1**
- They sang a psalm to honour the memory of the world-famous psychologist as she was laid to rest in the family tomb. (Note that although the 'r' in 'world' is not really pronounced, in Standard British English, it affects the way the word is pronounced.)
 - The psychiatrist was knifed in the knee as she was walking home.
 - He should have whistled as he fastened his sword to his belt. (Note that the 'h' in 'have' is not really pronounced when following an auxiliary verb as in this sentence and the next one.)
 - You could have left me half the Christmas cake on Wednesday.

80.2 The odd one out appears first.

- word /wɜːd/, sword, cord /ɔːd/ 6 cough /kɒ/, rough, tough /ʌ/
- come /ʌ/, come, some /ʌ/ 7 wand /wɒ/, land, sand /æ/
- plead /iː/, head, tread /eɪ/ 8 root /ruː/, soot, foot /ʊ/
- could /ʊ/, doubt, shout /aʊ/

80.3 Possible answers:

- now 3 who 4 off 5 go

80.4 The stressed syllables are underlined below.

- transfer, transfer 5 increased, decrease
- suspected, suspect 6 permit, permits
- conflicting, conflict 7 record, record
- upset, upset 8 conduct, conducting

- 80.5**
- catastrophe 4 chemical 6 receipt 8 recipe
 - handkerchief 5 subtle 7 height

- 80.6**
- zoology, zoologist, zoological
 - arithmetic, arithmetical, arithmetician (Note that suffixes like -ian and -ion work as if they are two syllables with this 'third syllable from the end' stress rule, even though they are only pronounced as one syllable nowadays.)
 - psychology, psychologist, psychological
 - psychiatry, psychiatric, psychiatrist

- 80.7**
- cool 3 sword 4 apostrophe 5 climb 6 calm

Unit 81

- 81.1**
- g 3 h 4 f 5 b 6 c 7 e 8 a
 - whizzing 4 whizzed 6 dashed 8 bashed
 - clap clapping 5 grumbling 7 spurted

- 81.2**
- poured 3 groaned 5 mash
 - cluck 4 crashed 6 gash

81.3 Possible answers:

- a piece of metal
- angry

- when feeling cheerful (Some people just can't whistle, but people who can often whistle because they're happy, or because they like a particular melody, or to attract someone's attention or to call a dog.)
- buses, planes and trains which are late, people who behave rudely!
- split it out (but that may not be possible in polite company!)

Unit 82

82.1 *Notes:* These sentences do not sound natural. They are only used for the exercise.

- The main **house** (mouse) **houses** (browse) a collection of rare stamps.
- It's no **use** (juice). I can't **use** (snooze) this gadget.
- You **saw** (go) the seeds while I **feed** the **sow**. (cow)
- The violinist (so) **tle** made a **bow**. (now)
- He's the **lead** (deed) singer in the group 'Lead (head) piping'.
- What a **row** (plough) from the last house in the **row**! (though)
- Does he still suffer from his war **wound**? (tuned)
- I **would** (round) the rope around the tree to strengthen it against the **gale**.
- It's hard to **wind** (find) in the sails in this **wind**. (tinned)

- 82.2**
- waste 3 sole 4 pane 5 heir 6 allowed 7 sail 8 through, phase 9 peel

82.3 Possible sentences:

82.4 *Notes:* Most sentences in 'real' English avoid using pairs of homophones as they may be confusing and often don't sound natural.

- whether** we have a picnic tomorrow or not will depend on the **weather**.
- Let's **practise** with these grammar exercises first and then do some vocabulary **practice**.
- It's **great** to see such a lovely fire burning in the **grate**.
- I don't **whine** so much just because the **wine**'s finished.
- break** now or you'll **break** that toy in the road.
- The archaeological **site** was a marvellous **sight** at sunset.
- Let us **pray** that we may never be **prey** to evil thoughts.
- Although she was a little **hoarse** it did not put her off **horse**-riding in the snow.
- The beautiful **sight** of the moon's **rays** reflected in the lake did a great deal to **raise** her spirits.

- 82.5**
- This is a play on words on the two meanings of **draughts**. One is the game played with round counters and a chess board and the other is a current of air as in 'There's a terrible draught coming from under the door!'
 - If this is a play on words on two meanings of **draw**. The first means make a picture and the second means pull.
 - This is a play on words on the meanings of **dates**. One refers to years such as 1966; the other to a sweet fruit from a kind of palm tree or to an evening spent together by two people (usually romantic).
 - This is a play on words on two meanings of **beating**. A drummer beats a drum. There is also the expression 'takes a lot of beating' which means 'is hard to improve on'.

- 82.6**
- gear and pair 3 waste and waist 4 toe and tow

Unit 83

Possible answers:

- 2 a job (or jobs) / homework (or some homework)
- 3 research into / a study of
- 4 (some) rice / (some) noodles
- 5 (some) news / a surprise
- 6 textiles / cloth

83.2 The words are paired up in this table.

uncountables	countables
money	coin
bread	loaf
information	fact
advice	recommendation
travel	trip
work	job
baggage	case

83.3 2 In the south of England, most houses are made of **stone**, but in the north, **brick** is more common.

3 I love antique **furniture**, but I would need (some) advice from a specialist before I bought any. My **knowledge** in that area is very poor.

4 Her **research** is definitely making great **progress** these days. She has done a lot of original **work** recently.

5 What **equipment** do you need to go skiing? If you can give me any **information**, I would be grateful.

6 Oil exports have produced a great deal of **wealth** for the country.

7 Package holidays often include **transport** from the airport to your **accommodation**.

8 I don't have any **experience** of working in education, but I would like to do some voluntary **work** in a school.

9 **Poverty** is the biggest problem in many countries.

10 I bought (some) new software that shows you the kind of **weather** every country has each month of the year.

83.4 Possible items:

For making clothes, furniture, etc.: wool, cotton, rubber, plastic

For buildings: cement, metal, wood/timber, glass

For energy: gas, electricity, steam, solar power, petrol

Unit 84

84.1 In addition to those on the left-hand page, subjects and areas of study that are plural might include: arts/humanities, natural sciences, genetics, politics, ethics.

84.2 2 glasses/spectacles 4 braces 6 binoculars 8 handcuffs
3 scissors 5 overalls 7 pliers

84.3 2 socks 3 trousers ✓ 4 dungarees ✓ 5 underpants/pants ✓ 6 tights ✓ 7 jeans ✓

84.4 2 proceeds 4 whereabouts 6 authorities, goods
3 acoustics 5 headphones, earphones (either order) 7 graphics

84.5 2 billiards 3 scissors 4 dungarees

84.6 I decided that I wanted to be a pop star! I'd have to move to London. I finally got a room, but it was on the **outskirts** of the city. The owner didn't live on the **premises**, so I could make as much noise as I liked. The **acoustics** in the bathroom **were** fantastic, so I practised there. I made so much noise I almost shook the **foundations**! I went to the **headquarters** of the Musicians' Union, but a guy there said I just didn't have the right looks to be famous. Oh well, never mind!

Unit 85

Possible answers:

- 3 a cloth. Yes, most people have a cloth somewhere in the kitchen to wipe things with. If the person likes making their own clothes, they may have some cloth in the house too.
- 3 a fish. If you have an aquarium, you may have a fish or several fish. If you are going to cook fish for dinner, you may have some in your kitchen or refrigerator or freezer.
- 4 glass. Most people would not keep the material (glass) in their house, but their windows are probably made of glass. Most people have glasses in their house to drink out of.
- 5 a wood. It's not likely that people will have a wood (a small forest) in their house, but they might keep some wood to use to make things or to repair things.
- 6 pepper. Most people probably have pepper (and salt) in their kitchen to put on their food. They may also have a green or red pepper, or several peppers in their kitchen or refrigerator.
- 7 paper. Yes, most people keep paper to write or print things on. Many people will have a paper or several papers in order to read the latest news.

- 3 Could I borrow an iron, please?
- 3 Could I have some pepper, please?
- 4 Could I have a chocolate, please?
- 5 Could I borrow some paper, please?
- 6 Could I borrow your/a rubber, please?
- 7 Could I have a glass, please?

Suggested answers:

- 3 I drove over some broken glass.
- 3 They're made of rubber.
- 4 Yes, I don't have any experience of working in a primary school.
- 5 We could buy a paper and find out.
- 6 It's a work of art by a famous Italian artist called Leonardo Da Vinci.
- 7 My favourite flavour's chocolate.

- 1 b Art here means painting, drawing and sculpture.
- 2 a Plant here means machines and large-scale industrial equipment.
- 3 a Plant here means a botanical item (e.g. a plant with flowers).
- 3 a Damage here means that something is broken or destroyed in some way.
- 3 a Damages here means money awarded to someone by a court of law for some harm that has been caused by someone or something (e.g. destroying someone's reputation, or injuring them).
- 4 a Times here means experiences.
- 5 Times here means occasions.

Unit 86

3 e 3 d 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 f 8 g

- 3 My mother gave me a **piece of advice** that I have always remembered.
- 3 Suddenly a **gust of wind** almost blew him off his feet.
- 4 We had a **spell of terribly windy weather** last winter.
- 4 Would you like **another slice of toast**?
- 6 He never does a **stroke of work** in the house.
- 7 Let's go to the park - I need a **breath of fresh air**.
- 8 I can give you an **important piece/bit of information** about that.
- 9 We could see a **cloud of smoke** hovering over the city from a long way away.
- 10 I need to get **some pieces of furniture** for my flat.

1 f i 2 u x
n
3 c h a o e
e
4 d i e r e p a i r
t
5 h o a i t h
i
6 p o v e r y
n
y

86.4 Possible sentence clues:

- 1 Did you see that of lightning?
- 2 She sells old of clothing at the market.
- 3 Have you ever seen him do even a of work?
- 4 What a loud of thunder. It sounded almost overhead.
- 5 Let's go and get a of fresh air. It's so stuffy indoors.

Unit 87

- 87.1 2 shoal 4 pack 6 pair
3 gang 5 team 7 couple

87.2 Incorrect words:

- 2 a book 4 cats 6 fish
3 a hospital 5 pigs

- 87.3 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 h 7 d 8 e

- 87.4 2 There is/are a crowd of people waiting outside.
3 The staff are very well paid.
4 A flock of sheep had escaped from a field.
5 She gave me a set of glasses.
6 She gave me a bunch of beautiful roses / a beautiful bunch of roses.

87.5 THE journalists raised a host of difficult questions about the actions of the police during the demonstration. There had been a barrage of complaints about police violence. The Chief of Police replied that he was not prepared to listen to a string of wild accusations without any evidence. In the end, he just gave a series of short answers that left everyone dissatisfied.

Unit 88

- 88.1 2 two bottles/cartons of milk 6 a pot of yoghurt
3 four cans of cola 7 a large box of matches
4 a tin of tuna 8 a jar of honey
5 a packet/box (or tin) of chocolate biscuits 9 six packets of crisps

- 88.2 2 barrel, bottle, sack (of coal/potatoes)
3 can, bottle, pack, crate, case (possibly also a barrel)
4 any of these: bottle/carton (of milk or juice), jug (of milk), mug (of tea or coffee), packet (of cereal), jar (of jam/marmalade/honey), glass (of milk or juice), bowl (of sugar)

- 8 8.3 bag and, sometimes, a sack - a sack is bigger and is more likely to be used when collecting post from a post office or letter box, while a bag may be used by the postman delivering mail

- 8 8.3 bag and basket
9 a packet of washing powder
10 a carton of cream
11 a tube of hand cream
12 a tin of sardines
13 a tin of beans
14 a bag of apples
15 a box of tissues
16 a packet of butter
17 a pack of 6 cans of beer
18 a bottle of washing-up liquid
19 a box of matches

Possible answers:

- 1 chocolate/toot/match box
2 wine/milk/water bottle
3 carrier/shopping/mail bag
4 milk/cream/water jug
5 wine/whisky/liqueur
6 flower/tea/coffee pot

Unit 89

- 8 9.1 manage to see
2 consists of (make up with this meaning is usually used in the passive)
3 tied up in a bundle
4 understand (with this meaning make out is usually combined with 'can' or 'could')

- 5 making something more numerous or complete
6 claimed/pretended (make out implies that what is being claimed may well not be true)
7 renovate
8 away with 3 up 4 out 5 up

- 8 9.2 This weekend we are planning to make for the seaside.
3 vast amounts of money do not always make for happiness.
4 Your shoes are untied. Do them up or you'll trip over.
5 They like to make out that they are very important people.
6 Thieves robbed the bank and made off with £1,000,000.

- 8 9.4 your best 6 an impression / a good impression
2 profit 7 business
3 (the) housework 8 exercise
4 allowances for

Unit 90

- 8 9.5 3 on 4 about 5 round 6 up

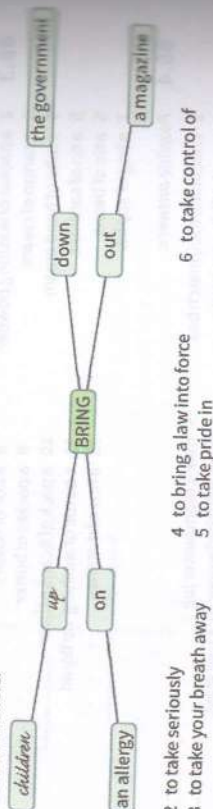
Possible answers:



- 8 9.6 1 Today's newspaper has brought to light some fascinating information about the President.
2 The situation was brought to a head when the union called for a strike.
3 You need to take account of the historical context of the novel in your essay.
4 The view from the top of the hill took my breath away.

- 6 He **took advantage** of her weakness at the time and she gave it to him.
 7 If you're going to succeed in business you must be prepared to **take risks**.
 8 You shouldn't **take anyone or anything for granted**.

90.4 Possible answers:



90.5

- 2 to take seriously
 3 to take your breath away
 4 to bring a law into force
 5 to take pride in
 6 to take control of

Unit 91

Suggested answers:

I don't often **receive** interesting junk mail. However, an unusual item came this morning. It was headed 'Are things **depressing** you? Do you feel you'll just never **manage to do** / **achieve** all those things you dream of?' And it went on, 'If so, **buy/order** this great new book today: *Manage Your World* by Simon Triksta. It will teach you how to **deal with** / **recover from** those daily upsets, and will ensure that you **achieve** the contentment in your work that you long for and that you fulfil your dreams. Send €25 today to **receive** *Manage Your World* and your key to success within ten days.' Maybe I should **buy** it!

91.2

- 2 through
 3 down to
 4 round to
 5 up to
 6 through
 7 across
 8 behind, into
 9 together
 10 on

91.3

- 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 a

Unit 92

92.1

- 2 We try to reserve some money for our holiday every week.
 3 Ignore all your negative feelings and listen with an open mind.
 4 If we hadn't left home so late, we would have arrived on time.
 5 The government's unpopular proposals caused a wave of protests.

92.2

- 2 put forward an idea / a proposal / a suggestion
 3 put off a football match / an appointment / customers
 4 put across your feelings / ideas / opinions
 5 put up an umbrella / prices / a picture
 6 put on a concert / an accent / clothes
 7 put away papers / books / files
 8 put up with someone's temper / behaviour / bad manners

92.3

Possible answers:

- 2 I haven't had time to **put things away** yet.
 3 We'd better **set out/off** at 7 am.
 4 Yes, of course, I can **put you up**.
 5 The cost of it all has **put me off**.
 6 He is hoping to **set up** a business of his own.
 7 Let's **put up** some posters.
 8 I'll help you **put it together**.

93.4 Possible answers:

- 1 He's bound to **put two and two together** if you keep on behaving like that.
 2 She has **set her sights on becoming** Prime Minister.
 3 She really **puts my back up**.
 4 If you **put pressure on her** to change her mind it'll make her even more determined.
 5 Please **put your mind to** the problem in hand.
 6 She has **set her heart on getting** a seat in Parliament.
 7 She threw petrol on the rubbish and **set fire** to it.
 8 It's time the teacher **put a stop** to the noise.
 9 The man has **set a record for eating** the most burgers in one hour.
 10 This is the first time I've ever **set foot** in the southern hemisphere.
 11 We spent most of our evenings **setting/putting the world to rights** rather than studying.
 12 You really should **put your foot down (with him)** or there'll be trouble later.
 13 If the teacher doesn't **set a good example**, the children certainly won't behave properly.
 14 He has **set himself the target of running** the Athens marathon next year.

Unit 93

- 1 check
 2 attached
 3 happened / took place
 4 found by chance
 5 When his grandmother dies, he'll **come into a fortune** / **a lot of money**.
 6 After four years of fighting, the civil war finally **came to an end**.
 7 Halfway up the steep hill, the bus **came to a standstill**.
 8 They say that long skirts are **coming into fashion** again.
 9 The telephone first **came into existence** nearly 150 years ago.
 10 I found it very difficult to **come to terms** with my failure.
 11 As we drove round the corner the house **came into sight/view**.
 12 They **went to great lengths** to avoid meeting each other.
 13 I've been **on the go** all day and I'm longing for a shower now and to relax.
 14 I do hope he will **make a go** of his new business.
 15 The story **goes that** they were together that night.
 16 The film is good **as far as it goes** but it doesn't tackle the problem deeply enough.

93.3

- 1 They **went to great lengths** to avoid meeting each other.
 2 I've been **on the go** all day and I'm longing for a shower now and to relax.
 3 I do hope he will **make a go** of his new business.
 4 The story **goes that** they were together that night.
 5 The film is good **as far as it goes** but it doesn't tackle the problem deeply enough.

93.4

- 3 d 3 e 4 b 5 b 6 a 7 f

Unit 94

- 1 to 3 promise(s) 4 up 5 down
 1 I ran into Julia at the station yesterday.
 2 He **broke her promise** to tidy her room.
 3 I thought I was **seeing things** when I saw a monkey in the garden.
 4 The police **let the boy off** with a warning.
 5 Suddenly, I **let it all** that Sabrina was planning to move abroad.
 6 An enormous crowd **turned up** to hear the President speak.
 7 My aunt **looks down** on people who don't have a good job.
 8 Dan has promised to **turn over a new leaf**.
 9 Natalie has always **looked up** to her older cousin.

Possible answers:

- 1 It can be hard to see through someone's lies if they have a lot of charm.
 2 Halfway up the mountain he let go of the rope and fell into a crevasse.
 3 He'll be better in the long run if you tell him now exactly how you feel.

- 5 He felt terribly let down when she refused to help him.
 6 She didn't turn up until the party was nearly over.
 7 I'm afraid we've run out of sugar.
 8 In my last year at school I decided to look into the possibility of spending a year abroad.
 9 I agreed to see about booking our holiday flights.
 10 It's your turn to load the dishwasher.

Unit 95

- 95.1** 2 wrong 3 house/home 4 Bye-bye 5 children
95.2 2 seeking 3 utilise 6 fundamental 7 occurs
 4 frequently 8 provided the patient with
95.3 2 particular 3 in, of 4 in, to 5 account
95.4 2 to allight 3 a) to regret b) to purchase c) to address d) board 4 persons 5 stairway
95.5 2 a friend 6 intelligent 7 unpleasant / disgusting
 4 study hard (e.g. for an exam) 8 uncertain / doubtful or not good, not honest
 5 thank you / thanks

Unit 96

- 96.1** JIM: Annie, can you lend me ten quid?
 ANNIE: What for?
 JIM: I've got to go and see my parents, and my **bike's** not working, so I'll have to get a **cab**.
 ANNIE: Can't you **phone** them and say you can't come?
 JIM: Well, I could, but my **mobile's** not working, and I want to go because they always have lots of **grub/nosh**, and the **fridge** at our flat is empty, as usual.
 ANNIE: Can't you go by **tube**? Anyway, you're in luck, I've got some **dosh/readies/bread**, so here you are.

- 96.2** 2 doctor 4 police 6 celebrity / famous person 8 money
 3 prison 5 food 7 cup of tea
96.3 2 (exam essay) The Internet and **television** are probably the biggest influences on young people today
 3 (recipe in a cookery book) Next, slice the **potatoes** and place them on top of the meat.
 4 (exam essay) **Newspapers** face stiff competition these days from TV and internet news.
 5 (formal university publicity) The Faculty offers courses in **veterinary** science. **Laboratory** facilities are available 24 hours a day.

- 96.4** 2 barbeque 4 husband 6 vegetarian
 3 biscuit 5 pictures / photographs

Unit 97

- 97.1** 2 rake 3 mouse 4 post 5 bat
97.2 2 falling 3 dog 4 parrot 5 snow 6 sheet
97.3 1 c 2 d 3 e 4 a 5 b
 1 as quick as a flash 2 as red as a beetroot 3 as flat as a pancake [very flat]
 4 as fresh as a daisy [used about how people feel or look, not about e.g. bread or other foods]
 5 as strong as an ox

- 97.4** Across 1 brass 3 hatter 6 sheet 7 daisy 9 bone 10 mouse
 Down 1 bat 2 feather 3 hard 4 easy 5 cucumber 8 ice
97.5 1 Our plan worked like a dream.
 3 He/she eats like a horse and drinks like a fish.
 4 He/she has a mind/head like a sieve.
 5 He/she has been as busy as a bee all day.

Unit 98

- 98.1** 1 Many hands make light work.
 3 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
98.2 1 Too many cooks spoil the broth.
 4 Too many cooks spoil the broth.
 5 We'll cross that bridge when we come to it.
 3 *Too many cooks spoil the broth*, which suggests that problems can be caused if a lot of people are involved in a job, whereas *Many hands make light work* suggests that if there are more helpers then the job will be completed more easily.
 3 *When the cat's away, the mice will play*. *Absence makes the heart grow fonder* says that if you cannot live with someone or something you will love them/it more, whereas *When the cat's away, the mice will play* suggests that others may take advantage of someone's absence to behave in a way they would not otherwise do.
 4 *We'll cross that bridge when we come to it* and *Don't count your chickens before they hatch*. The first one warns against anticipating future problems (they may never happen) and the second one warns against assuming you will get something good (that may never happen either).
 5 *Never look a gift horse in the mouth*. Both proverbs advise you to take advantage of good fortune when you have it in front of you.

- 98.3** 1 When the cat's away, the mice will play.
 3 When there's smoke, there's fire.
 4 Take care of the pennies and the pounds will take care of themselves.

- 98.4** 1 Never look a gift horse in the mouth.
 3 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
 4 You can lead a horse to water but you can't make it drink.

Unit 99

- Possible answers:
 1 at the entrance to private land (e.g. a farm, a forest)
 2 in a theatre or hall
 3 in a park, on a beach
 4 outside or in the window of a café or restaurant
 5 outside a nightclub (possibly a gym or swimming pool)
 6 at a zoo or park
 7 by a dead-end street / cul-de-sac
 8 on a floor
 9 at a supermarket check-out
 10 on a packet of cigarettes
 11 on a road or motorway
 12 at a car park or near parking bays on a street
 13 at a dangerous place or a place where pedestrians only are allowed
 14 at a river or lake

- 99.1** 1 a 3 h 4 k 5 d 6 l 7 e 8 j 9 b 10 a 11 f
99.2 Suggested answers:
 1 In a shop or restaurant: the staff can speak English
 2 at the customs for people who do not have goods that require them to pay duty

Phonemic symbols

Vowel sounds		Consonant sounds	
Symbol		Symbol	Examples
/ɪ/	sleep me	/p/	put
/e/	happy recipe	/b/	book
/æ/	pin dinner	/t/	take
/ʌ/	foot could put	/d/	dog
/ɜ:/	casual	/k/	car kick
/ɔ:/	do show through	/g/	go guarantee
/ɑ:/	red head said	/tʃ/	catch church
/ɪ/	arrive father colour	/dʒ/	age lounge
/u:/	turn bird work	/f/	for cough photograph
/ʊ/	sort thought walk	/v/	love vehicle
/eɪ/	cat back	/θ/	thick path
/ə/	sun enough wonder	/ð/	this mother
/ə/	get watch such	/s/	since rice
/ɪ/	past heart laugh	/z/	zoo surprise
/eɪ/	name late aim	/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/aɪ/	my idea time	/tʃ/	pleasure usual vision
/ɪ/	long notice	/h/	hear hotel
/eɪ/	pair where hear	/m/	make
/i:/	beer sheets	/n/	name now know
/ɪ/	go home show	/ŋ/	bring
/ə/	not cow	/l/	look while
/ɪ/	pure fewer	/r/	road
/w/		/j/	young
/w/		/w/	wear

This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

- at a shop: the shop is probably closing down and wants to sell all its goods
- at a sports event or cultural place or event: you must have a ticket to come in
- at a hotel or guesthouse: the hotel/guesthouse is full, or at a shop, restaurant or factory meaning 'no jobs are available'
- at a river or lake: you must not fish here
- at a bicycle shop: you can buy or hire/rent a bicycle here
- outside a house or at an estate agent's: there is a flat which you can rent
- for example, at an escalator: if you have a dog with you, you must carry it
- on a train or bus: if there is an elderly, disabled or pregnant person, please give them this seat

99.4 Suggested answers:

- Spanish spoken here
- No admission to unaccompanied minors
- No entry to unauthorised personnel
- Shoplifters/Thieves will be prosecuted
- Please refrain from handling food/goods

Unit 100

100.1 2 f 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 c

100.2 Suggested answers:

- Steps are being taken with the aim of providing more work for people.
- Approval has been given to a plan to place restrictions on people's use of water.
- A woman resigned from her job after undergoing some kind of unpleasant experience there.
- A public opinion survey has looked into how people spend their money.
- An attempt has been made to remove the Prime Minister from his/her position.
- The Princess has promised to give support to her family or to family values, in general.

- makes a connection between 4 explodes in 6 leads/is a major figure in
- reduces 5 promises

- A hammer is a tool which hits nails into wood. The headline is a play on the businessman's name and the headline use of *hit* to mean *affect*.
- A dramatic pause is a phrase used to refer to a pause in speech made for dramatic effect. Cats have paws, a homophone of *pause*.
- Hot air means a lot of talk with little meaning. The prince is talking about climate change, i.e. global warming. *Heir* is a homophone of *air* and the prince in the story is presumably the heir to the throne.

Unit 101

- British (-re, not -er) 4 American (-er, not -re) 6 American (not jewellery)
- American (-z, not -s-) 5 British (-our, not -or)

- elevator, lift 4 flashlight, torch 6 drapes, curtains 8 truck, lorry
- undershirt, vest 5 diaper, nappy 7 Scotch tape, Sellotape

- Pass me the biscuits.
- It's in the wardrobe.
- Open the curtains.
- We've run out of petrol.
- Our bags are in the boot.

- 2 (a) one (b) two 3 (a) a bank (b) a café 4 (a) under (b) over

- eraser/rubber 4 elevator/lift 6 hood/bonnet
- trash/garbage/rubbish 5 crosswalk/zebra crossing

Index

The numbers in the index are unit numbers, not page numbers.
The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

- 3D /'θri:di/ 33
60s music /'sɪks'ti: 'mju:zɪk/ 21
a) ... b) /eɪ ... bi/ 57
abduct /əb'dʌkt/ 39
able /ə'beɪl/ 8
abode /ə'boʊd/ 95
above /ə'boʊv/ 68
abrupt ə'brʌpt 8
absent-minded /əb'sent'maɪndɪd/ 74
absolute /əb'səlu:t/ 55
absolutely /əb'səlu:tli/ 43
absorbing /əb'zɔ:bɪŋ/ 3
abstract /əb'strækt/ 19
absurd /əb'sɜ:d/ 48
academic /ə'kæd'mɪk/ 15
accept /ək'sept/ 10, 64
access /'ækses/ 17, 35
accident /'æksɪdənt/ 13
acclaim /ə'kleɪm/ 48
acclaimed /ə'kleɪmd/ 48
accommodation /ə'kɒmə'deɪʃən/ 83
accomplice /ə'kɒmplɪs/ 39
accomplish /ə'kɒmplɪʃ/ 60
accomplished ə'kɒmplɪʃt 60
accomplishment
/ə'kɒmplɪʃmənt/ 60
account /ə'kaʊnt/ 36
accuse /ə'kju:z/ 39
ache /eɪk/ 28
achievable /ə'tʃɪvəbəl/ 60
achieve /ə'tʃi:v/ 60
achievement /ə'tʃi:vmənt/ 60, 73
ack rain /'æsd 'reɪn/ 24
acknowledge /ək'nɒlɪdʒ/ 64
acoustics /ə'kɒstɪks/ 84
acquaintance /ə'kwæntəns/ 10
acquit /ə'kwɪt/ 39
action /'æktʃən/ 20
active /'æktɪv/ 23
activity /æktɪvəti/ 73
ad /æd/ 96
addition /ə'dɪʃən/ 52
additionally /ə'dɪʃənəli/ 65
address /ə'dres/ 95
addressee /ə'dres'i:/ 70
adjustment /ə'dʒʌstmənt/ 73
administrator /əd'mɪnɪstreɪtə/ 16
admire /əd'maɪə/ 10
admission /əd'mɪʃən/ 14, 15, 70, 92
admit /əd'mɪt/ 64
admittedly /əd'mɪtɪdli/ 64
adore /ə'dɔ:/ 10
adult education centre
/əd'alt, edʒu'keɪʃən 'sentə/ 25
adulthood /ə'dʌlthʊd/ 73
advance /əd'vɑ:ns/ 29
adventure holiday
/əd'ventʃə 'hɒlədeɪ/ 32
adventurous /əd'ventʃərəs/ 25, 32
advert /'ədvt/ 96
advertise /'ədvaɪz/ 72
advertisement /əd'veɪtɪsmənt/ 72
advertiser /'ədvaɪzəz/ 72
advice /əd'vaɪs/ 73, 83
affect /ə'fekt/ 66
affection /ə'fekʃən/ 73
affectionate /ə'fekʃənət/ 44
African /ə'frɪkən/ 5
African-Caribbean /ə'frɪkən
'kæɪbɪən/ 5
after all /'ɑ:ftə'ɹɔ:l/ 64
afters /'ɑ:ftəz/ 22
against /ə'ɡenst/ 42
age /eɪdʒ/ 53
ageing /'eɪdʒɪŋ/ 30
aggressive /ə'ɡresɪv/ 8
agitation /ə'dʒɪ'teɪʃən/ 86
agreement /ə'ɡri:mənt/ 60, 85, 93
aid /eɪd/ 100
AIDS /eɪdz/ 13
aim /eɪm/ 60
air /eə/ 82
aircon /'eə kən/ 78
air pollution /eə pə'lju:ʃən/ 24
air traffic control /eə 'treɪfɪk
kən'trɒl/ 75
air-conditioned /eə'kən.dɪʃənd/ 74
airport /'eəpɔ:t/ 31
aisle /eɪsl/ 31
ailiness /eɪ'si:nes/ 31
AKA /eɪ'keɪ'ɑ:/ 78
à-la-carte /ə'lə'kɑ:t/ 22
alarm clock /ə'lɑ:m klɒk/ 75
album /'elbəm/ 21
alight adj. v /ə'laɪt/ 95, 99
alive /ə'laɪv/ 80
all or nothing /ɔ:l'ɔ: nʌθɪŋ/ 71
allocate /ə'leɪkət/ 57
all-out /ɔ:l'au:t/ 74
allowance /ə'laʊəns/ 89
along with /ə'lɒŋ wɪð/ 65
alongside /ə'lɒŋ'saɪd/ 65
aloud /ə'laʊd/ 82
alter /'ɔ:l'tə/ 33
alteration /ə'lɪ'teɪʃən/ 70
alternative /ə'lɪ'teɪnətiʋ/ 55
although /ə'lðəʊ/ 64
amazement /ə'meɪzmənt/ 73
ambassador /em'bæsədə/ 16
ambition /em'bɪʃən/ 60
ambitious /em'bɪʃəs/ 8
among (the best etc.) /ə'mʌŋ/ 40
amount /ə'maʊnt/ 51
analyse /'ænaləz/ 33
anger /'æŋɡə/ 73
angry /'æŋɡri/ 45
ankle /'æŋkl/ 28
annoyance /ə'nɔɪəns/ 50
anorak /'enə'rek/ 96
anorexic /ə'nɔ:re'ektɪk/ 7
answer /'ɑ:nsə/ 66
Antarctica /æn'tʌktɪkə/ 5
antibiotic /æn'tɪbɪə'ɒtɪk/ 71
antiseptic /æn'tɪ'septɪk/ 71
antisocial /æn'tɪ'səʊʃəl/ 71
anti-war /æn'tɪ'wɔ:/ 71
anxious /æŋ'kʃəs/ 43
anxiously /æŋ'kʃəsli/ 45
anyway /'eniweɪ/ 67
apart from /ə'pɑ:t frəm/ 65
apartment /ə'pɑ:tmənt/ 32, 101
apostrophe /ə'pɒstrəfi/ 80
app /æp/ 34
appal /ə'pɔ:l/ 44
appeal /ə'pi:l/ 44
appear in /ə'piə/ 20
application /æplɪ'keɪʃən/ 15, 34
apply for /ə'pli faɪ/ 16
appoint /ə'pɔɪnt/ 38
apprenticeship /ə'prentɪʃɪp/ 73
approach /ə'prəʊtʃ/ 66
Arab /'ærəb/ 5
Arabic /'ærəbɪk/ 5
archer /'ɑ:tʃə/ 18

- blonde /blɒnd/ 1
blood donor /'blʌd,dəʊn/ 75
blood pressure /'blʌd,presʃə/ 28
28, 75
blossom /'blɒsəm/ 26
blue-eyed /'blu:'aɪd/ 74
blunt /blʌnt/ 8
blush /blʌʃ/ 47
board /bɔ:d/ 95
boast /boʊst/ 45
boiling /'bɔɪlɪŋ/ 5
boom /'bu:m/ 101
book (a table) /'bʊk/ 22
booking /'bʊkɪŋ/ 22
bookmark /'bʊkmɑ:k/ 35
boost /bu:st/ 30, 100
boot /bu:t/ 101
boredom /'bɔ:dəm/ 73
boss /bɒs/ 100
bossy /'bɒsi/ 8
brother /'brʌðə/ 60
bottle /'bɒtl/ 88
bough /baʊ/ 26
bow /baʊ/ 18
bowl /bɔ:l/ 83
bowls /'bəʊls/ 84
box /bɒks/ 89
bra /brə/ 27
braces /'breɪsɪz/ 84
brainless /'breɪnsləs/ 8
brainless /'breɪnsləs/ 8
brainless /'breɪnsləs/ 8
brake /breɪk/ 82
branch /brʌntʃ/ 26, 28, 38
brand-new /brænd'nju:/ 74
breath /breɪð/ 54, 73
break /breɪk/ 28, 50, 82
break (the news) /breɪk/ 94
break down /breɪk'daʊn/ 12
break off /breɪk'ɒf/ 94
break out /breɪk'ɔ:t/ 13
breakdown /breɪkdaʊn/ 76
breakout /breɪkaʊt/ 76
breakthrough /'breɪkθru:/ 76
break up /breɪk'ʌp/ 76
breath /breɪð/ 47, 86
breathe /bri:ð/ 47
breathless /'breɪθləs/ 28
breath-taking /'breɪθ'teɪkɪŋ/ 32
breed /bri:d/ 26
breeze /bri:z/ 6
brick /brɪk/ 83
briefly /bri:flɪ/ 68
bright /braɪt/ 8, 52
brightness /'braɪtnəs/ 50
brilliantly /'brɪljəntli/ 48
bring about /brɪŋ ə'baʊt/ 63, 90
bring back /brɪŋ 'bæk/ 90
bring down /brɪŋ 'daʊn/ 90
bring into force /brɪŋ 'ɪntə'fɔ:s/ 90
bring into the open /brɪŋ 'ɪntə'ðə
'əʊpən/ 90
bring off /brɪŋ 'ɒf/ 90
bring on /brɪŋ 'ɒn/ 90
bring out /brɪŋ 'aʊt/ 90
bring out the best /brɪŋ 'aʊt ðə
'best/ 90
bring round /brɪŋ 'raʊnd/ 90
bring to a head /brɪŋ tu: ə'hed/ 90
bring to light /brɪŋ tu: laɪt/ 90
bring up /brɪŋ 'ʌp/ 90
Briton /'brɪtən/ 5
broad /brɔ:d/ 54
broadband /'brɔ:d'bænd/ 35
broadcast /'brɔ:d'kɑ:st/ 37
broaden /'brɔ:dən/ 54
broadminded /'brɔ:d'maɪndɪd/ 8,
54
broad-shouldered
'brɔ:d'ʃəʊldəd/ 74
brotherhood /'brʌðəhʊd/ 70, 73
brownish /'braʊnɪʃ/ 1
browse /braʊz/ 35
browser /'braʊzə/ 35
bruise /bru:z/ 12, 28
brusque /'bru:sk/ 8
brutal /'brʊtəl/ 70
bucket /'bʌkt/ 88
buckle /'bʌkl/ 27
bud /bʌd/ 26
Buddhism /'bʊdɪzəm/ 70
bug /bʌg/ 28
build /bɪld/ 17
building 19
built-up /bɪlt'ʌp/ 74
bulky /'bʌlki/ 59
bullet-proof /'bʊlɪtpʊʊt/ 74
bump /bʌmp/ 12
bumpy /'bʌmpi/ 31
bunch /bʌntʃ/ 87
bungalow /'bʌŋɡələʊ/ 11
bunk bed /'bʌŋk'bed/ 32
burglar alarm /'bɜ:glə'ɑ:lərm/ 75
burglary /'bɜ:gləri/ 39
burn /bɜ:n/ 12, 80
bury the hatchet /'beri ðə
'hætʃɪt/ 50
bury your head in the sand 9
bus service 25
bus stop /'bʌs'stɒp/ 75
business /'biznɪs/ 17, 31
business plan /'biznɪs'plæn/ 17
business-class /'biznɪs'klɑ:s/ 74
bustling /'bʌstlɪŋ/ 25
button /'bʌtən/ 27, 33
buzz /bʌz/ 81
bypass /'baɪpɑ:s/ 76
cab /kæb/ 96
cabinet /'kæbɪnət/ 38
Cabinet of Ministers 38
cable /'keɪbl/ 35
calm /kɑ:m/ 31, 73, 80
camcorder /'kæmkərdə/ 33
campsite /'kæmpsaɪt/ 32
campus /'kæmpəs/ 15
can /kæn/ 88
cancel (a reservation) /'kænsəl/ 22
candidate /'kændɪdət/ 38
candy /'kændi/ 101
canned music /kænd'nju:zɪk/ 21
caneist /kə'neɪst/ 18
can't bear /kɑ:nt'beə/ 44
can't face the thought of /kɑ:nt
fets ðə θɔ:t nɒ/ 50
can't stand /kɑ:nt'stænd/ 10, 44
capacity /kə'pæsəti/ 95
cape /keɪp/ 23
capital /'keɪpəl/ 23
captive /'keɪptɪv/ 44
captivating /'keɪptɪvɪŋ/ 3
capture /'kæptʃə/ 20
car hire /'kɑ: 'haɪə/ 25
car park /kɑ:p'pɑ:k/ 25, 75, 101
caravan /'kærəvən/ 32
carbon footprint /'kɑ:bən
'fʊtprɪnt/ 24
carbs /kɑ:bz/ 76
card /kɑ:d/ 80
cards /kɑ:dz/ 84
cards on the table 80
care for /'keə'fɔ:/ 44
carelessness /'keəlsnəs/ 73
caring /'keərɪŋ/ 44
carpenter /'kɑ:pəntə/ 16
carton /'kɑ:tən/ 85, 88
cartoon /kɑ:'tu:n/ 37
case /keɪs/ 39, 88
cash machine /'kæʃ'mə'ʃɪn/ 40
cast /kɑ:st/ 20, 87
cast (a vote) /kɑ:st/ 38
castle /'kɑ:sl/ 80
casual /'keɪʃʊəl/ 10
casually /'keɪʃʊəli/ 27
casualty /'keɪʃʊəlti/ 13
Catalan /'kætələn/ 5
catastrophe /kə'tæstrəfi/ 80
citizens' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down /kəm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /kəm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /kəm 'ɒf/ 12, 80, 93
come out /kəm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /kəm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /kəm 'tu:/ 93
contents /'kɒntents/ 84
contents' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz
əd'vaɪs'bjʊərəu/ 25
city /sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti'hɔ:l/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl'sɜ:vənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl'wɔ:/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /kleɪŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /kleɪp/ 86
clash /kleɪʃ/ 100
classical /'kleɪsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'kleɪsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klaʊ/ 26
clever /'kleɪvə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət
'tʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklop/ 81
clone /klaʊn/ 33
close-fitting /klaʊs'fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'kloʊzət/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /'kloʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 75
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊ'liʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔ:s/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊ'haŋɡə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'leɪps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliɡ/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 15, 25
collocation /kə'ləʃi'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlə/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kəm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kəm bɪ'twi:n/ 93
come by /kəm baɪ/ 93
come down

contest n /'kɒntest/ 80	crash /kraʃ/ 12	decision /dɪ'siʒən/ 89, 93	derivative /dɪ'veɪtɪv/ 37	disrepair /dɪ'stɪrpeɪ/ 86	drums /drʌmz/ 21
contest v /kɒntest/ 80	crutches /'krʌtʃɪz/ 29	declare /dɪ'kleɪ/ 92	determined /dɪ'tɜːmɪnd/ 8	disrupt /dɪ'srʌpt/ 50	dub /dʌb/ 37
contract v /kɒn'trækt/ 28, 52	cube /kjuːb/ 52	decorative /'deɪkəreɪtɪv/ 39	delect /dɪ'lekt/ 44	disruption /dɪ'srʌpʃən/ 50	due to /dʒuː tuː/ 63
contribute /kɒn'trɪbjʊt/ 57	cubic /'kjuːbɪk/ 52	decrease n /'dɪkriːs/ 80	development /dɪ'veləpmənt/ 29	dissect /dɪ'sekt/ 33	dull /dʌl/ 59
conventional /kən'venʃənəl/ 41	cue /kjuː/ 18	decrease v /dɪ'kriːs/ 80	device /dɪ'vaɪs/ 29, 34	dissertation /dɪ'sɜːteɪʃən/ 15	dumb /dʌm/ 8, 80
conversion /kən'veɪʃən/ 11	cuff /kʌf/ 27	dedicated /'dedɪkeɪtɪd/ 42	devoted /dɪ'vəʊtɪd/ 44	dissimilar /dɪ'sɪmɪlə/ 71	dungreos /'dʌŋgeɪz/ 84
convert v /kən'veɪt/ 72	cumbrous /'kʌmbəsəm/ 59	deep /diːp/ 54	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	distance /'dɪstəns/ 54	during /dʒʊərɪŋ/ 61
convict /kən'vɪkt/ 39	cunning /'kʌnɪŋ/ 8	deepen /'diːpən/ 54	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	distance learning /'dɪstəns 'lɜːnɪŋ/ 14	dustpan and brush /'dʌstpæn ən 'brʌʃ/ 11
conviction /kən'vɪkʃən/ 42	cupboard /'kʌpbəd/ 80	deer /diː/ 26	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	distant /'dɪstənt/ 54	Dutch /dʌtʃ/ 5
convince /kən'vɪns/ 42	cupid /'kjuːpɪd/ 80	default /dɪ'fɔlt/ 36	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	divert /dɪ'veɪt/ 72	duty /'dʒuːti/ 40
cookie /'kʊki/ 101	cuppa /'kʌpə/ 96	defend /dɪ'fend/ 39	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	divide /dɪ'vaɪd/ 64	duty-free /'dʒuːti'fri/ 40, 74
cool /kuːl/ 80	curb /kɜːb/ 101	defendant /dɪ'fendənt/ 10	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	division /dɪ'vɪʒən/ 52	eagerness /'iɡənəs/ 73
co-opt /kəʊ'ɒpt/ 80	curiosity /kjuːrɪ'ɒsəti/ 73	degree /dɪ'ɡriː/ 14	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	dizzy /'dɪzi/ 28	earache /'ɪərəʊk/ 28
cop /kɒp/ 96	curly-haired /'kɜːli 'heəd/ 74	déjà vu /deɪˌʒəˈvuː/ 46	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	DNA /'diːnə/ 39, 78	earlier /'ɪəliə/ 68
cope /kəʊp/ 60	currency /'kʌrənsi/ 83	delay /dɪ'leɪ/ 31	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	do an exam /dʊ ən ɪɡəm/ 14	earlier on /'ɪəliə ɒn/ 61
copy /kɒpi/ 19	current account /'kʌrənt ə'kaʊnt/ 40	delete /dɪ'liːt/ 34	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	do business /dʊ bɪznəs/ 17, 89	early morning /'ɜːli 'mɔːnɪŋ/ 31
corkscrew /'kɔːkskruː/ 11	current affairs /'kʌrənt ə'feɪz/ 37	deliberations /dɪ'lɪbə'reɪʃənz/ 39	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	do for a living /dʊ fɔː ə 'lɪvɪŋ/ 16	early stage /'ɜːli steɪdʒ/ 29
corporation /kɔːpə'reɪʃən/ 17	cursor /'kʌzə/ 34	delicate /'delɪkət/ 41	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	do housework /dʊ haʊsweɪk/ 11	earn /ɜːn/ 2
corporation tax /kɔːpə'reɪʃən 'tæks/ 40	curt /kɜːt/ 8	delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ 70	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	do the ironing /dʊ ðə 'aɪənɪŋ/ 11	earphones /'ɪəfəʊnz/ 84
costume /'kɒstjʊm/ 20	curtains /'kɜːtənz/ 101	delighted /dɪ'laɪtɪd/ 43	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	do the washing-up /dʊ ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ-ʌp/ 11	earthquake /'ɜːθkweɪk/ 13
cottage /'kɒtɪdʒ/ 11	custom-built /'kʌstəm bɪlt/ 17	delightful /dɪ'laɪtfl/ 32	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	do well /dʊ wel/ 14	East Asia /'iːst 'eɪʃə/ 5
cotton wool /'kɒtən wʊl/ 75	customer /'kʌstəmə/ 9	delta /'delta/ 23	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	do without /dʊ wɪðaʊt/ 55, 89	easy-going /'iːziːɡəʊɪŋ/ 8, 74
cough /kɒf/ 47	customer care /'kʌstəmə 'keə/ 17	democracy /dɪ'mɒkrəsi/ 38	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	do your best /dʊ jɔː best/ 89	look /'lʊk/ 19
could /kʊd/ 80	customs /'kʌstəmz/ 40	dense /dens/ 59	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	documentary /'dɒkjə'mentəri/ 37	ard /'ɪkən/ 35
couple /'kʌpl/ 87	cutback /'kʌtbæk/ 76	density /'densəti/ 59	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	dominoes /'dɒmɪnoʊz/ 84	eccentric /'ek'sentɪk/ 8, 42
court /kɔːt/ 39	cut-price /'kʌtpraɪs/ 74	dent /dent/ 12	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	donate /'dɒneɪt/ 57	ecological /'iːkə'lɒdʒɪkəl/ 24
crab /kræb/ 26	Cyprus /'kaɪprəs/ 74	deny /dɪ'naɪ/ 3	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	done in /'dʌn ɪn/ 49	ecologically sound /'iːkə'lɒdʒɪkəl 'saʊnd/ 24
crack /kræk/ 12	daft /dɔːft/ 8	department store /dɪ'pɑːtmənt 'stɔː/ 25	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	donor /'dɒnə/ 70	economical /'iːkə'nɒmɪkəl/ 8
crackdown /'krækdəʊn/ 76	daft as a brush /dɔːt əs ə brʊʃ/ 29	dependent /dɪ'pendənt/ 51	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	dosh /'dɒʃ/ 95	economics /'iːkə'nɒmɪks/ 84
crafty /'krɒfti/ 8	damage n, v /'dæmɪdʒ/ 13	deport /dɪ'pɔːt/ 12	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	doubtful /'daʊtfl/ 55	economist /'iːkənəmɪst/ 16
crash /kræʃ/ 12, 24, 83	damp /dæmp/ 8	deportation /dɪ'pɔːtəɪʃən/ 72	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	down /daʊn/ 35	economy /'iːkənəmi/ 21
crate /kreɪt/ 88	dance /dæns/ 20	deposited /dɪ'pɔːzɪt/ 72	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	download /'daʊnləʊd/ 2, 24	edible /'edɪbəl/ 70
crawl /kroʊl/ 58	Dane /deɪn/ 5	deposit /dɪ'pɔːzɪt/ 72	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	down in the dumps /daʊn ɪn ðə 'dʌmps/ 49, 79	educate /'edʒukeɪt/ 72
create an account /kreɪt ən ə'kaʊnt/ 36	dark /dɜːk/ 1, 56	depress /dɪ'pres/ 72	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	download /'daʊnləʊd/ 2, 24	effect /ɪ'fekt/ 50
creativity /kri'eɪtɪvəti/ 33	darkness /'dɜːknəs/ 56	depressed /dɪ'presd/ 43	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	downpour /'daʊnpəʊ/ 6	effort /'ɛfət/ 89
crèche /kreʃ/ 14	darts /dɜːts/ 84	depression /dɪ'preʃən/ 30	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	down-to-earth /daʊn-tuː-ɜːθ/ 8	egg /eg/ 26
credit /kredit/ 15	Darwinist /'dɜːrwɪnɪst/ 42	deprivation /dɪ'prɪ'veɪʃən/ 50	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	dozen /'dɒzn/ 51	elapse /ɪ'læps/ 53
credit card /'kredit 'kɑːd/ 75	dash /dæʃ/ 81	deprive s.o. of sth /dɪ'praɪv sə'mwʌn ɒv stʌf/ 50	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drag on /'dræg ɒn/ 53	electric /ɪ'lektrɪk/ 38
credit limit /'kredit 'lɪmɪt/ 50	database /'deɪtəbeɪs/ 29, 34	depth /depθ/ 54, 73	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drama /'dræmə/ 37, 100	electrician /ɪ'lektrɪʃən/ 16
credit rating /kredit 'reɪtɪŋ/ 40	dawdle /'dɔːdl/ 58	desert n /'dezət/ 80	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drapes /'dreɪps/ 101	elegant /ɪ'elɪɡənt/ 2, 25, 27
creep along /kriːp ə'lɒŋ/ 58	daytime /'deɪtaɪm/ 5	deserted /dɪ'zɜːtɪd/ 25	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	droughts /'draʊts/ 84	elevator /ɪ'leɪvətə/ 101
crew /kruː/ 31, 87	dazzling /'dæzəlɪŋ/ 59	design /dɪ'zaɪn/ 19	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drawback /'draʊbæk/ 76	email /'iːmeɪl/ 2
crew-cut /'kruːkʌt/ 7	dead /ded/ 12, 13	designer /dɪ'zaɪnə/ 16, 27	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	dream /driːm/ 60	employee /ɪm'plɔɪi/ 70
crime /kraɪm/ 39	dead end /dɛd ɛnd/ 50	desire n, v /dɪ'zaɪə/ 44	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	dress up /dres ʌp/ 27	enable /ɪn'əbeɪl/ 33
crisis /kraɪsɪs/ 66	deafening /'defɪnɪŋ/ 46	desktop computer /'deskɒp kəm'pjʊtə/ 34	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drift /drɪft/ 58	enchanting /ɪn'tʃæntɪŋ/ 3
critic /'kɪtɪk/ 19	death's door /deθs dɔː/ 49	desperately /'despərətli/ 45	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drinkable /'drɪŋkəbəl/ 70	end /end/ 93
critical /'kɪtɪkəl/ 48	death penalty /'deθ 'penəlti/ 75	desperately /'despərətli/ 45	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drive /draɪv/ 11, 58, 100	end-of-year exam /ɪnd-əv-ɪəz 'eksəm/ 14
criticise /'kɪtɪsaɪz/ 48	debt /det/ 40, 80	desperately /'despərətli/ 45	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drop /drɒp/ 51	endangered /ɪn'dæŋdʒəd/ 24
crop n /kɒp/ 23	debtor /'debɪtə/ 80	desperately /'despərətli/ 45	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drought /'draʊt/ 76	enemy /'enəmi/ 3
crowd /kraʊd/ 87	decade /'dekəd/ 29	desperately /'despərətli/ 45	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drought /'draʊt/ 76	engrossing /ɪn'grɒsɪŋ/ 3
cruel /kruːl/ 8	decent /'diːsənt/ 41	desperately /'despərətli/ 45	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29	drummer /'drʌmə/ 21	enjoyment /ɪn'dʒɔɪmənt/ 70
cruise /kruːz/ 32		desperately /'despərətli/ 45	diagnose /'daɪənoʊz/ 29		

enormous /i'no:məs/ 51	expand /ik'spænd/ 17, 54	federation /'fedə'reiʃən/ 30	fulfilment /fʊl'fɪlmənt/ 60	get down /get daʊn/ 91
enquiring /ɪn'kwærɪŋ/ 8	expect /ɪk'spekt/ 6	feedback /'fi:dbæk/ 17, 76	full of yourself 8	get off to a good start /get ɒf tuː
ensue /ɪn'sjuː/ 53	expectation /ɪk'spekt'eɪʃən/ 73	feel /fiːl/ 28, 42, 46, 58	a good start/ 91	
enter /entə/ 35	expenses /ɪk'spensɪz/ 40	fencing /'fentʃɪŋ/ 18	get on /get ɒn/ 91	get on sb's nerves 2
entertainer /entə'teɪnə/ 20	experience /ɪk'spəriəns/ 83, 85	field /fi:ld/ 15	get on well (with someone) /get ɒn	
enthralling /ɪn'throʊlɪŋ/ 3	experiment 33	fiend /fi:nd/ 80	well 30	
enthusiastic /ɪn'θju:zɪ'stɪk/ 43	explosion /ɪk'spləʊʒən/ 13	filthy /'fɪlθi/ 26		get your act together 50
entire /ɪn'taɪə/ 41	export n /'eksɔ:pt/	finance /'fɪnəns/ 40		get out of /get aʊt ɒv/ 91
entrance exam / 14	export v /ɪk'spɔ:t/ 72, 80	find work 16		get over /get ɔ:və/ 28, 91
entrancing /ɪn'trænsɪŋ/ 3	express /ɪk'spres/ 72	fine n, adj /faɪn/ 39, 59, 67		get rid of /get rɪd ɒv/ 91
entry /entri/ 92	extend /ɪk'stend/ 54	fine art(s) /faɪn a:t/ 19		get round /get raʊnd/ 91
envious /ɪn'vi:əs/ 8	extinct /ɪk'stɪŋkt/ 24	fingerprint /'fɪŋgəprɪnt/ 39		get round to /get raʊnd tuː/ 91
environment /ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/ 24	extract n 19	Finn /fɪn/ 5		get through /get θruː/ 91
environmentally friendly	extract v /ɪk'strækt/ 33, 71	fire /faɪə/ 16		get to know /get tuː nəʊ/ 91
/ɪn, vaɪə'n, məntəl/ 'frendli/ 24	extravagant /ɪk'strævəɡənt/ 8	firefighter /'faɪə faɪtə/ 16		get to the bottom of things 50
epidemic /ɪpi'demɪk/ 13	extreme /ɪk'stri:m/ 42	firm /fɜ:m/ 3, 17, 42		get to the point 69
episode /'epɪsəʊd/ 37	extroverted /'ekstrəvɜ:tɪd/ 8	first /fɜ:st/ 58		get up to /get ʌp tuː/ 91
equally /'i:kwəli/ 65	ex-wife /eks waɪf/ 71	first and foremost /'fɜ:st ən		get work 16
equipment /ɪk'wɪpmənt/ 83	face n, v /feɪs/ 7, 48	'fɜ:məʊnt/ 71		get together n /get tə'geðə/ 91
era /'ɪərə/ 53	facility /fə'sɪləti/ 40	first floor /'fɜ:st flɔː/ 101		get together v /get tə'geðə/ 10
eraser /'ɪreɪzə/ 101	fact /fækt/ 56	first impression /'fɜ:st ɪm'preʃən/ 7		geyser /'gi:zəl/ 23
ergonomics /,ɜ:ɡə'nɒmɪks/ 33	fail /feɪl/ 14	first of all /'fɜ:st ɒv 'ɔ:l/ 58		gift of the gab 48
erupt /ɪ'rʌpt/ 13	fair /feɪə/ 2, 82	first language /'fɜ:st 'læŋɡwɪdʒ/ 8		gifted /'ɡɪftɪd/ 8
establish /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ 33, 95	faith /feɪθ/ 73	first-born /'fɜ:st'bɔ:n/ 74		gig /gɪɡ/ 78
estate /ɪ'steɪt/ 57	fake /feɪk/ 41	first-class /'fɜ:st klɑ:s/ 74		gigabyte /'ɡɪɡəbaɪt/ 34
estate agent /ɪ'steɪt 'eɪdʒənt/ 25	fall /fɔ:l/ 101	first-hand /'fɜ:st'hænd/ 74		ginger-haired /'dʒɪŋɡə'haɪd/ 7
estuary /'estʃuəri/ 23	fall down /fɔ:l daʊn/ 12	first-rate /'fɜ:st'reɪt/ 48		give and take /gɪv ənd teɪk/ 77
etc /et'setərə/ 65	fall for /fɔ:l fɔː/ 44	fish /fɪʃ/ 85		give away /gɪv əweɪ/ 57
ethnic group /'etnɪk grʊp/ 5	fall in love /fɔ:l ɪn lʌv/ 44	fishing line /'fɪʃɪŋ laɪn/ 18		give or take /gɪv ə teɪk/ 77
Europe /'jʊərəp/ 5	fall off /fɔ:l ɒf/ 12	fit /fɪt/ 27, 30, 56		give rise to /gɪv raɪz tuː/ 63
evaluation /iːvəlu'eɪʃən/ 56	fall out with /fɔ:l aʊt wɪð/ 10	fitness /'fɪtnəs/ 30		give sb a talking to 60
even-tempered /,ɪvən'tempəd/ 8	fallout /'fɔ:lɔ:t/ 76	(in a) fix 50		glacier /'ɡleɪsɪə/ 23
evidence /'eɪvɪdəns/ 39	falter /'fɔ:lta/ 60	flazy /'fleɪzi/ 30		gladly /'ɡleɪdli/ 45
ex /eks/ 10	famine /'fæmɪn/ 13	flash /flæʃ/ 33		glamorous /'ɡləməərəs/ 32
exaggeration /ɪɡ,zædʒə'reɪʃən/ 49	fanatical /fə'netɪkəl/ 42	flashlight /'fleɪʃlaɪt/ 101		glance /'ɡlɑ:ns/ 46
exam /ɪɡ'zæm/ 14	fancy /'fænsɪ/ 10, 44	flat /flæt/ 11, 12, 32		glare /'ɡleɪə/ 59
exceptional /ɪk'sepʃənəl/ 32	FAQ /'færkjuː/ 35, 76	flaw /flɔː/ 33		glass /ɡlɑ:s/ 85, 88
excessive /ɪk'sesɪv/ 51	far /fɑː/ 54	fleeing /'fli:ɪŋ/ 53		glasses /'ɡlɑ:sɪz/ 84, 85
excise /ɪk'saɪz/ 40	faraway /'fɑ:əweɪ/ 54	flexibility /'fleksə'bɪləti/ 70		glitter /'ɡlɪtə/ 56
excitement /ɪk'saɪtmənt/ 70	fare /fɛə/ 82	flexible /'fleksɪbəl/ 41, 70		global warming /'ɡləʊəl
exclusive /ɪk'sklusɪv/ 32	far-fetched /,fɑː'fetʃt/ 74	flexi-time /'fleksɪtɪm/ 16		'wɜ:mɪŋ/ 24
excommunicate	fascinate /'fæsɪneɪt/ 44	flock /flɒk/ 87		globalisation /'ɡləʊəlaɪz'eɪʃən/ 24
/ɪk'skə'mju:nɪkeɪt/ 71	fascinating /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ 3, 32	flood /flʌd/ 6, 12, 13		gloosely /'ɡləʊsli/ 45
excursion /ɪk'skɜ:ʃən/ 22	fashion /'fæʃən/ 93	flour /flaʊə/ 83		glommy /'ɡləʊmi/ 56
excuse n /ɪk'skju:s/ 89	fast /fɑ:st/ 12	flow /flɔː/ 58		glow /ɡləʊ/ 58
executive /ɪg'zekjʊtɪv/ 16	fasten /'fɑ:sn/ 80	flower /flaʊə/ 26		glut /ɡlʌt/ 23, 76
exempt /ɪg'zempt/ 55	faze /'feɪz/ 41	flowery /'flaʊəri/ 27		go amok /ɡəʊ ə'mɒk/ 85
exercise n, v /'eksəsaɪz/ 30, 89	fear /fɛə/ 13, 73	flu /fluː/ 82		go bankrupt /ɡəʊ 'bæŋkrʌpt/ 93
exhale /ɪk'sheɪl/ 71	feather /'feðə/ 26	flux /flʌks/ 86		go for /ɡəʊ fɔː/ 93
exhilarating /ɪg'zɪləreɪtɪŋ/ 32	feature /'fi:tʃə/ 7, 33	fly /flaɪ/ 53		go off /ɡəʊ ɒf/ 22
existence /ɪg'zɪstəns/ 93	fed up /'fedʌp/ 43			
exotic /ɪg'zɒtɪk/ 32				

go on /'gəʊ n/ 33, 93
go pear-shaped /'gəʊ 'piəʃəpt/ 95
go through /'gəʊ θruː/ 83
go under /'gəʊ 'ʌndə/ 60
go wrong /'gəʊ rɒŋ/ 60
go-ahead /'gəʊəhed/ 100
goal /'gəʊl/ 80
goggles /'gɒɡlz/ 84
going forward /'gəʊnɪ 'fɔːwəd/ 17
golf course /'gɒlf 'kɔːrs/ 25
good /'gʊd/ 57
good as gold /'gʊd əz 'gəʊld/ 9,
73, 97
good ear 21
good for 30
good friend 10
good-looking /'gʊd'lʊkɪŋ/ 7
goodness /'gʊdnəs/ 70
goods /'gʊdz/ 84
good tempered /'gʊd'tem্পəd/ 74
google /'gʊɡəl/ 35
gorge /'gɔːdʒ/ 23
govern /'gʌvərn/ 38
GPS /'dʒiːps/ 33
grab /'græb/ 46
graduate n /'ɡrædʒuət/ 15
graduate v /'ɡrædʒueɪt/ 15
gymnastics school /'ɡɪmnə'skʊl/ 14
giant /'ɡraɪnt/ 14
graphics /'ɡræfiks/ 34
grasp /'ɡræsp/ 46, 50
grass roots /'ɡrɑːs'ruːts/ 75
grate /'ɡreɪt/ 82
grateful /'ɡreɪtəfl/ 43
grater /'ɡreɪtə/ 11, 70
graze /'ɡreɪz/ 12
great /'ɡreɪt/ 41, 82
Greek /'ɡriːk/ 5
green /'ɡriːn/ 24
green fingers 48
greenhouse effect /'ɡriːnhəʊs
'ɪfekt/ 24
gregarious /'ɡreɪ'ɡeɪʃəs/ 8
grey /'ɡreɪ/ 7
grim /'ɡrɪm/ 47
gripping /'ɡrɪpɪŋ/ 3
groan /'ɡrəʊn/ 45, 81, 82
ground floor /'ɡraʊnd, 'flɔː/ 101
group /'ɡrʊp/ 87
grow /'ɡrəʊ/ 26
grow out of /'ɡrəʊ ʌʊt/ 27
grub /'ɡrʌb/ 96
grumble /'ɡrʌmbəl/ 45, 81

intelligent /in'telɪdʒənt/ 8
intensity (nə'mɪ) /in'tensɪti/ 50
intention (in'tenʃən/ 73
interact /ɪn'tər'ekt/ 10, 33
interactive /ɪn'tər'ektɪv/ 35
interest /ɪn'terɪst/ 40
interest rate /'ɪntrə'steɪt/ 40
interest-free /'ɪntrə'sfri/ 74
internal /ɪn'tərnəl/ 71
interpret /ɪn'tərprɪt/ 33
intestate /ɪn'te'steɪt/ 101
intestine /ɪn'testɪn/ 1
into the bargain / 65
introduce /ɪn'trə'dʒʊs/ 72
introduction /ɪn'trə'dʌkʃən/ 72
introverted /ɪn'trə'veɪtɪd/ 8
intuition /ɪn'tjuɪʃən/ 46
investigate /ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/ 37
investigation /ɪn'vestɪ'geɪʃən/ 37
investment /ɪn'vestmənt/ 73
invite /ɪn'vaɪt/ 10
IOU /aɪəu/ 78
Irish /aɪrɪʃ/ 5
iron /aɪən/ 95
ironing board /'aʊnɪŋ boʊd/ 11
irregular /ɪ'regjələ/ 71
irrelevant /ɪrɪ'ləvnt/ 50
irritation /ɪrɪ'teɪʃən/ 50
ise 101
isp /'aʊsp/ 35
issue /ɪʃu/ 66
Italian /ɪ'tæliən/ 5
itch /ɪtʃ/ 28
item /aɪtəm/ 66
ise 101
jagged /'dʒæɡd/ 53
jet /dʒet/ 30
jet /dʒet/ 68
jet /dʒet/ 68
jetlin /'dʒetlɪn/ 11
jewellery 101
jewelry 101
job /dʒəb/ 16, 2
job centre /'dʒəb 'sentə/ 25
jockey /'dʒɒki/ 18
journalism /'dʒʌrnəlɪzəm/ 37, 70
journey /'dʒʊni/ 31
judge /dʒʌdʒ/ 10, 30
judgment /'dʒʌdʒmənt/ 66
jug /dʒʌp/ 68
jump out of your skin 48

improbable /ɪm'prəbəbəl/ 71
improvement /ɪm'pru:vnmənt/ 73
in a bad mood 49
in addition /ɪn ə'dɪʃən/ 65
in case /ɪn 'keɪs/ 62
in conclusion /ɪn kən'klu:ʒən/ 68
in contrast /ɪn kən'trɑ:st/ 64
in credit /ɪn 'kredɪt/ 40
in high spirits 48
in his/her/your/thirds 7
in other words /ɪn 'əðə 'wɜ:dz/ 68
in particular /ɪn pə'tɪkjələ/ 68
in particular /ɪn pə'tɪkjələ/ 65
in season 22
in sum /ɪn 'sʌm/ 68
in summary /ɪn 'sʌməri/ 68
in the long run /ɪn ðə lɒŋ rʌn/ 64
in the meantime /ɪn ðə
 'mi:tə'taɪm/ 63
in the red 40, 73
incident /ɪn'sɪdənt/ 13
income /ɪn'kʌm/ 40, 71
income tax /ɪn'kʌmtæks/ 40, 73
income/expense /ɪn'kʌm/ 32
increase /ɪn'kri:z/ 10
increasing /ɪn'kri:zɪŋ/ 10
independently /ɪn'dɪpən'dənt/ 38
in depth /ɪn 'depθ/ 37
indagation /ɪn'dʒə'geɪʃən/ 48
industrial estate /ɪn'dʌstriəl
 'steɪt/ 68
industrialize /ɪn'dʌstriəlaɪz/ 70
industrial /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ 71
inhabitable /ɪn'hæbɪtəbəl/ 35
inhabitant /ɪn'hæbɪtənt/ 71
information /ɪnfə'meɪʃən/ 63
injury /ɪn'juəri/ 37
intelligent /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/ 8
intensity (nə'mɪ) /in'tensɪti/ 50
intention (in'tenʃən/ 73
interact /ɪn'tər'ekt/ 10, 33
interactive /ɪn'tər'ektɪv/ 35
interest /ɪn'terɪst/ 40
interest rate /'ɪntrə'steɪt/ 40
interest-free /'ɪntrə'sfri/ 74
internal /ɪn'tərnəl/ 71
interpret /ɪn'tərprɪt/ 33
intestate /ɪn'te'steɪt/ 101
intestine /ɪn'testɪn/ 1
into the bargain / 65
introduce /ɪn'trə'dʒʊs/ 72
introduction /ɪn'trə'dʌkʃən/ 72
introverted /ɪn'trə'veɪtɪd/ 8
intuition /ɪn'tjuɪʃən/ 46
investigate /ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/ 37
investigation /ɪn'vestɪ'geɪʃən/ 37
investment /ɪn'vestmənt/ 73
invite /ɪn'vaɪt/ 10
IOU /aɪəu/ 78
Irish /aɪrɪʃ/ 5
iron /aɪən/ 95
ironing board /'aʊnɪŋ boʊd/ 11
irregular /ɪ'regjələ/ 71
irrelevant /ɪrɪ'ləvnt/ 50
irritation /ɪrɪ'teɪʃən/ 50
ise 101
isp /'aʊsp/ 35
issue /ɪʃu/ 66
Italian /ɪ'tæliən/ 5
itch /ɪtʃ/ 28
item /aɪtəm/ 66
ise 101
jagged /'dʒæɡd/ 53
jet /dʒet/ 30
jet /dʒet/ 68
jet /dʒet/ 68
jetlin /'dʒetlɪn/ 11
jewellery 101
jewelry 101
job /dʒəb/ 16, 2
job centre /'dʒəb 'sentə/ 25
jockey /'dʒɒki/ 18
journalism /'dʒʌrnəlɪzəm/ 37, 70
journey /'dʒʊni/ 31
judge /dʒʌdʒ/ 10, 30
judgment /'dʒʌdʒmənt/ 66
jug /dʒʌp/ 68
jump out of your skin 48

microscopic /maɪkro'skɒpɪk/ 71
microwave /'maɪkraʊweɪv/ 71
Middle Ages /'mɪdl̩ 'eɪdʒz/ 53
middle-of-the-road /'mɪdl̩ 'əv ðə rəʊd/ 50
mug /mʌɡ/ 88
muggy /'mʌɡɪ/ 6
multilingual /mʌltɪ'lɪŋɡwəl/ 5
multimedia /mʌltɪ'mɪdiə/ 71
multinational /mʌltɪ'næʃənəl/ 71
multiplication /mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən/ 52
multiplied by 52
multipurpose /mʌltɪ'pʊrps/ 71
mumble /'mʌmbəl/ 45
murder /'mɜːdər/ 39
murmur /'mɜːmər/ 45
muscle /'mʌsəl/ 80
muscular /'mʌskjələ/ 7
museum /mjuː'ziəm/ 25
musician /mjuː'zɪʃən/ 21
Muslim /'mʊzlm/ 42
musty /'mʌstɪ/ 46
mutter /'mʌtər/ 45
naïve /neɪ'v/ 8
napkin /'næpkɪn/ 21
nappy /'næpi/ 101
narrow-minded /'nærəʊ'maɪndɪd/ 54
nasty piece of work 9
national costume /'næʃənəl
'kɒstjʊm/ 27
native language /'neɪtɪv 'læŋɡwɪdʒ/ 5
NATO /'neɪtəv/ 78
natural /'nætʃərəl/ 13, 41
natural disaster /'nætʃərəl
dɪ'zɑːstər/ 11
navigate /'nævɪɡeɪt/ 35
necessarily /nə'sesərɪ/ 55
need (for) /niːd/ 55
neighbourhood /'neɪbəhʊd/ 73
nerd /nɜːd/ 96
nervous /'nɜːvəs/ 43
nervously /'nɜːvəsli/ 45
nest /nest/ 38
net /net/ 33, 80
network /'netwɜːk/ 33, 39
never ending /'nevər'endɪŋ/ 74
nevertheless /'nevərðə'les/ 64
new leaf /njuː 'liːf/ 34
news paper /njuːz 'peɪpər/ 37, 96
newspaper /'njuːspəpeɪpər/ 37, 96
nice figure 7
risk factor 88
risk factor 88
risk factor 88

mouth 23
move /muːv/ 58
MP /em'pi/ 38
MP3 /em'pi'ti/ 21
muddle /'mʌdl̩/ 50
mug /mʌɡ/ 88
muggy /'mʌɡɪ/ 6
multilingual /mʌltɪ'lɪŋɡwəl/ 5
multimedia /mʌltɪ'mɪdiə/ 71
multinational /mʌltɪ'næʃənəl/ 71
multiplication /mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən/ 52
multiplied by 52
multipurpose /mʌltɪ'pʊrps/ 71
mumble /'mʌmbəl/ 45
murder /'mɜːdər/ 39
murmur /'mɜːmər/ 45
muscle /'mʌsəl/ 80
muscular /'mʌskjələ/ 7
museum /mjuː'ziəm/ 25
musician /mjuː'zɪʃən/ 21
Muslim /'mʊzlm/ 42
musty /'mʌstɪ/ 46
mutter /'mʌtər/ 45
naïve /neɪ'v/ 8
napkin /'næpkɪn/ 21
nappy /'næpi/ 101
narrow-minded /'nærəʊ'maɪndɪd/ 54
nasty piece of work 9
national costume /'næʃənəl
'kɒstjʊm/ 27
native language /'neɪtɪv 'læŋɡwɪdʒ/ 5
NATO /'neɪtəv/ 78
natural /'nætʃərəl/ 13, 41
natural disaster /'nætʃərəl
dɪ'zɑːstər/ 11
navigate /'nævɪɡeɪt/ 35
necessarily /nə'sesərɪ/ 55
need (for) /niːd/ 55
neighbourhood /'neɪbəhʊd/ 73
nerd /nɜːd/ 96
nervous /'nɜːvəs/ 43
nervously /'nɜːvəsli/ 45
nest /nest/ 38
net /net/ 33, 80
network /'netwɜːk/ 33, 39
never ending /'nevər'endɪŋ/ 74
nevertheless /'nevərðə'les/ 64
new leaf /njuː 'liːf/ 34
news paper /njuːz 'peɪpər/ 37, 96
newspaper /'njuːspəpeɪpər/ 37, 96
nice figure 7
risk factor 88
risk factor 88
risk factor 88

loathe /leɪð/ 10, 44
location /ləʊ'keɪʃən/ 37
lock out /lɒk'aʊt/ 12
lockings /'lɒkɪŋz/ 84
loft /lɒft/ 11
log in /lɒɡ ɪn/ 35
log off /lɒɡ ɒf/ 35
log on /lɒɡ ɒn/ 35
log out /lɒɡ aʊt/ 35
long /lɒŋ/ 1, 54
long face 49
long for /lɒŋ fɔː/ 44
long jump /'lɒŋ ʒʌmp/ 18
long-distance /lɒŋ'dɪstəns/ 18,
54, 74
long-haired /lɒŋ 'heəd/ 74
long-legged /lɒŋ 'legd/ 74
long-sleeved /lɒŋ 'sliːvd/ 27
long-standing /lɒŋ'stændɪŋ/ 74
long-term /lɒŋ'tɜːm/ 30
long-winded /lɒŋ'wɪndɪd/ 69
loo /luː/ 96
look /lʊk/ 46
look at /lʊk ət/ 94
look down on /lʊk daʊn ɒn/ 10
look for /lʊk fɔː/ 94
look forward to /lʊk 'fɔːwəd
tuː/ 44, 94
look into /lʊk ɪn'tuː/ 94
look up to /lʊk ʌp tuː/ 10, 94
looks /lʊks/ 84
lose appetite 28
lose voice 28
loss /lɒs/ 53, 89
lots /lɒts/ 51
loud /laʊd/ 46
love /lʌv/ 73, 80
loving /lʌvɪŋ/ 44
low /ləʊ/ 54
lower /ləʊər/ 30, 54
luck /lʌk/ 73
luggage /'lʌɡɪdʒ/ 83, 101
lump /lʌmp/ 28, 96
lung /lʌŋ/ 1
luxurious /lʌɡʒʊəriəs/ 32
luxury goods /'lʌkʃəri'ɡʊdz/ 73
mag /mæg/ 96
magnificent /mæg'nɪfɪkənt/ 25
mail /meɪl/ 82
mail order /'meɪl'ɔːdə/ 75
main bedroom 11
maintain /meɪn'teɪn/ 30, 42, 45
major /'meɪdʒər/ 13, 30
majority /mə'dʒɪərɪti/ 38
make a living /'meɪk ə 'lɪvɪŋ/ 16

laze /leɪz/ 82
laziness /'leɪznəs/ 73
lazy-bones /'leɪzi baʊnz/ 9
lead (pipe) /led/ 82
lead guitar /led ɡɪ'tɑː/ 21
lead singer /'liːd 'sɪŋər/ 21, 82
lead to /led tuː/ 63
leaf /liːf/ 26
leak /liːk/ 12
leaps and bounds 77
leather /'leðər/ 83
leave /liːv/ 57
leave cold 10
lecture /'lektʃər/ 15
lecture hall 35
lecture theatre 15
lecturer /'lektʃərə/ 15, 16
left-handed /'left'hændɪd/ 74
left-wing /'left'wɪŋ/ 42
legal /'liːɡəl/ 70
leggings /'legɪŋz/ 84
legislature /'ledʒɪsleɪʃən/ 38
length /leŋθ/ 54, 73
lengthen /'leŋθən/ 54
lengthy /'leŋθi/ 54
let down /let 'daʊn/ 27, 94
let go of 57
let out /let aʊt/ 27
level /'leɪvəl/ 30
lever /'liːvər/ 33
liable /'laɪəbəl/ 55
library /'laɪbrəri/ 25
lick /lɪk/ 47
lift /lɪft/ 101
light /laɪt/ 22, 23
light as a feather 59
light at the end of the tunnel 50
light bulb /'laɪt 'bʌlb/ 75
like /laɪk/ 36, 44, 67, 97
like a bear with a sore head 49, 97
likewise /'liːkwɪz/ 55
limit /'lɪmɪt/ 40
limitation /lɪmə'teɪʃən/ 73
line /laɪn/ 101
link /lɪŋk/ 2, 35, 36, 100
list /lɪst/ 30, 35
listen /'lɪsn/ 67, 80
literary /'lɪtərəri/ 19
litter /'lɪtər/ 99
live /laɪv/ 82
lively /'laɪvli/ 25
liver /'lɪvər/ 1
LMS /'elɪmɪs/ 14
loads /laʊdz/ 51
loaf /ləʊf/ 96

noiseless /'naɪzəslə/ 46
noisy /'naɪzli/ 46
nominate /'nɒmɪneɪt/ 38
non-meat-eater 22
North Africa /nɔːθə'æfrɪkə/ 5
North America /nɔːθə'æmərɪkə/ 5
nosh /nɒʃ/ 96
nosy /'nɔːzi/ 8
not do anything for sb 10
not see eye to eye 10
note /nəʊt/ 101
notice /'nɒtɪs/ 46
notification 36
novelist /'nɒvəlɪst/ 19
now /naʊ/ 57
numb /nʌm/ 80
number /'nʌmbə/ 51
nursery school /'nɜːsəri skuːl/ 14
nuts /nʌts/ 30
oar /ɔː/ 18
obese /ə'biːs/ 1, 30
obesity /ə'biːsɪti/ 30
object v /əb'dʒekt/ 45
obligation /ə'bliɡə'teɪʃən/ 55, 60
obligatory /ə'bliɡə'tɔːri/ 55
oblige /ə'blɪdʒ/ 55
observe /əb'zɜːv/ 46
obsessive /əb'esiʊv/ 44
obstinate /'ɒbstɪnət/ 8
octagon 52
octagonal /ɒk'tæɡənəl/ 52
odd /ɒd/ 8, 42
odd-ball /'ɒd.bəl/ 9
odds and ends /ɒdz ən enɪz/ 77
offence /ə'fents/ 39
offender /ə'tendə/ 39
off-peak /ɒf'piːk/ 74
offspring /ɒf'sprɪŋ/ 95
oil /ɔːl/ 83
(the) old bill 95
on board /ɒn'bɔːd/ 31
on campus 15
on cloud nine 43
on demand 37
on strike /ɒn'straɪk/ 16
on the ball 48
on the other hand /ɒn ðə 'ʌðə
'haend/ 64, 67
on time /ɒn 'taɪm/ 31
on top form 49
on top of the world 49
onion /ə'nʃən/ 85
online banking /ɒn'laɪn 'bæŋkɪŋ/ 40
online gaming /ɒn'laɪn 'ɡeɪmɪŋ/ 35

opaque /əu'peɪk/ 31
open /əu'pən/ 8, 40
open-necked /əu'pən nek't/ 74
open-toed /əu'pən təu'd/ 74
opera /ə'pɛrə/ 20
opera house /ə'pɛrə haʊs/ 25
operate on /ə'pɛrɛɪt ən/ 28, 29
operation /ə'pɛrɛɪʃən/ 28, 93
operator /ə'pɛrɛɪtə/ 70
oppress /ə'pres/ 72
oppression /ə'presjən/ 72
oppressor /ə'pres/ 72
optimistic /'ɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/ 8
optional /'ɒpʃənəl/ 55
ordinal /ə'dɪnəl/ 100
order book /'ɔ:də bu:k/ 17
organ /'ɔ:gən/ 33
organic /ə'ɡenɪk/ 22, 24
original /ə'rɪdʒənəl/ 8, 19
ought /ɔ:t/ 80
our /aʊə/ 80, 82
oust /aʊst/ 100
out and about /aʊt ən ə'baʊt/ 77
out of breath /aʊt əv breθ/ 47
out of this world /aʊt əv ðɪs
wɜ:ld/ 48
out of touch /aʊt əv tʌtʃ/ 2
outbreak /'aʊtbreɪk/ 76
outcome /'aʊtkʌm/ 63, 76
outgoings /'aʊt'ɡoʊnz/ 40
outlet /'aʊtlet/ 76
outlook /'aʊtlʊk/ 76
outrageous /'aʊtrɛɪdʒəs/ 70
outset /'aʊtset/ 76
outskirts /'aʊtskaɪts/ 25, 84
oval /'aʊvəl/ 52
over the moon /əʊvə ðə 'mu:n/ 79
over the top /əʊvə ðə'tɒp/ 9
overalls /'əʊvərs/ 84
overcast /'əʊvəksɪst/ 6
overcooked /əʊvə'kʊkt/ 22
overcrowding /əʊvə'kraʊdɪŋ/ 24
overdo /əʊvə'du:/ 71
overdone /əʊvə'dʌn/ 22
overdraft /əʊvə'draʊt/ 40
overdrawn /əʊvə'draʊn/ 40
overeat /əʊvə'ɪt/ 71
overfishing /əʊvə'fɪʃɪŋ/ 24
overleaf /əʊvə'li:f/ 68
overpopulated
/əʊvə'pɒpjəleɪtɪd/ 24
overpopulation
/əʊvə'pɒpjə'leɪʃən/ 24
oversleep /əʊvə'sli:p/ 71
overtone /əʊvə'taʊn/ 71

overweight /'əuvəwəit/ 7
 owing to (the fact that)
 /əʊŋ 'tu:/ 53
 owl /aʊl/ 26
 owner /'aʊnə/ 57
 ownership /'aʊnəʃɪp/ 73
 ozone depletion /'əʊzəm
 dɪ'pliːn/ 24
 pace /'peɪs/ 58
 pacemaker /'peɪk meɪkə/ 29
 pacifist /'pæsɪfɪst/ 42
 pack /'pæk/ 87, 88
 package holiday /'pækɪdʒ
 'hɒlədeɪ/ 32, 75
 packed /'pækt/ 25
 packet /'pækt/ 88
 paddle /'pædəl/ 18
 page /'peɪdʒ/ 35
 pain /'peɪn/ 82
 pain /'peɪn/ 28, 82
 pain in the neck 9, 79
 pain /'peɪn/ 27, 82, 87
 pale /'peɪl/ 82
 palm /'pɔːlm/ 80
 pan /'pæn/ 88
 pane /'peɪn/ 82
 pants /'pænts/ 84, 101
 pantyhose /'pæntɪ'hoʊz/ 101
 paper /'peɪpə/ 85, 86
 pare /'peə/ 82
 parents-in-law /'peərənts ɪn lɔː/ 10
 park /'pɑːk/ 80
 parking lot /'pɑːkɪŋ 'lɒt/ 101
 parking meter /'pɑːkɪŋ meɪtə/ 26
 Parliament /'pɑːləmənt/ 38
 parliamentary /'pɑːlə'mentəri/ 38
 part and parcel 77
 partner /'pɑːtnə/ 10
 partnership /'pɑːtnəʃɪp/ 70, 73
 part-time /'pɑːt'taɪm/ 74
 party /'pɑːtɪ/ 38
 pass (an exam) /'pɑːs/ 14
 pass (a verdict) 39
 passage /'pæsɪdʒ/ 19
 passionate /'pæʃənət/ 44
 passive /'pæsvɪv/ 70
 password /'pɑːswɜːd/ 2, 35
 patrol /'peɪtəl/ 46
 paternity leave /'pɑː'tɜːnəti liːv/ 16
 patio /'peɪtɪo/ 11
 patter /'pætə/ 56
 pavement /'peɪvəmənt/ 101
 paw /'pɔː/ 26
 pay (a fine) /'peɪ/ 39
 pay (a subscription) 37

[illegible]

portrait /'pɔ:trɪt/ 19
 position /pə'zi:ʃən/ 56
 possession /pə'ze:ʃən/ 57
 possibility /pə'sɪ'bɪlɪti/ 55
 post /'pəʊst/ 2, 35
 postgraduate
 / 'pəʊst'grædʒuət/ 15, 71
 post-impressionist
 / 'pəʊsɪtʃənɪzəm/ 71
 postpone /pə'stəʊn/ 72
 postwar /'pəʊst'wɔ: / 71
 pot /'pɒt/ 19, 88
 potato /pə'tetəʊ/ 85
 potential /pə'tential/ 17
 potter /'pɒtə / 13
 pottery /'pɒtəri / 19
 pour down /pɔ: 'daʊn/ 6
 pour oil on troubled waters 59
 poverty /'pɒvəti/ 83, 86
 power cut /'paʊə kʌt/ 12
 practice /'præktɪs/ 2, 82
 praise /preɪz/ 48
 pray /preɪ/ 82
 precise /pre'si:z/ 41
 preconceived /'pri:kən'si:v/ 71
 pre-judge /'pri:dʒʌdʒ/ 71
 premises /'premɪsɪz/ 84
 prevention /'premə'nʃən/ 46
 present with 57
 presenter /'prezenteɪ / 37
 President 38
 presidential /'prezɪ'dentʃəl/ 38
 press /pres/ 33, 48
 pretty (thick) /'pri:tlɪ / 41
 pretty as a picture 32
 previously /'pri:vɪəslɪ / 61
 price war /'pri:s'wɔ: / 71
 prize /preɪz/ 82
 probably /'prɒbəblɪ / 59
 profit and proper /'prɒfɪt ənd 'prɒpə / 77
 prime minister /'prɪmɪnɪ'stə / 38
 principle /'prɪnsəpl/ 73
 prior to /'pri:ə tu: / 61
 priority /'pri:ə'riti / 17
 prison /'prɪzən/ 39
 privacy settings 36
 private /'praɪvət/ 46
 probably /'prɒbəblɪ / 35
 prime funds 109
 problem /'prɒbləm/ 33, 46
 provide /'prəvɪd/ 84
 process /'prɒses/ 38
 process /'prɒses/ 33, 39
 push for change 172

set menu /'set 'menju:/ 22

set off /'set 'ɒf/ 92

set up /'set 'ʌp/ 92

setting /'setɪŋ/ 19

set-up /'setʌp/ 76

severe /sɪ'ver/ 5, 41

severely /sɪ'verli/ 31

sew /səʊ/ 82

shady /'ʃeɪdi/ 59

shake /ʃeɪk/ 13, 47

shake in your boots/shoes 49

shake-up /'ʃeɪkʌp/ 76

shallow /'ʃæləʊ/ 54

share /ʃeə/ 10, 36

shark /ʃɑːk/ 26

sharp /ʃɑːp/ 8, 30

shears /ʃɪəz/ 84

shed /ʃed/ 11

shiftwork /'ʃɪftwɜːk/ 16

shine /ʃaɪn/ 56

shiny /'ʃaɪni/ 59

shiver /'ʃɪvə/ 28, 47

shoal /ʃəʊl/ 87

shoot /ʃuːt/ 37

shoplift /'ʃɒplɪft/ 39

short /ʃɔːt/ 23

short story /'ʃɔːt 'stɔːri/ 19

shortage /'ʃɔːtɪdʒ/ 55

shortcut /'ʃɔːtkʌt/ 54

shorten /'ʃɔːtn/ 54

shots /ʃɒts/ 84

short-term /'ʃɔːt'tɜːm/ 30

should /ʃʊd/ 80

shoulder /'ʃəʊldə/ 28

shout /ʃaʊt/ 45

show /ʃəʊ/ 20, 37, 95

shower /'ʃəʊə/ 6, 86

showjumping /'ʃəʊdʒʌmpɪŋ/ 19

shrewd /'ʃruːd/ 8

shriek /'ʃriːk/ 45

shrink n /'ʃrɪŋk/ 96

sick and tired /sɪk ən taɪəd/ 43

sick leave /'sɪk liːv/ 16

sickly /'sɪkli/ 22

sickness /'sɪkɪnəs/ 28

side dish /saɪd dɪʃ/ 52

side walk /saɪd wɜːk/ 22

sidewalk /'saɪdwɜːk/ 101

sigh /saɪ/ 47

sight /saɪt/ 46, 73, 82, 93

sign up /saɪn ʌp/ 2

significant /sɪɡ'nɪfɪkənt/ 51

silent /saɪlənt/ 46

silky /'sɪlki/ 59

silly /'sɪli/ 8

simile /'sɪmili/ 97

simple /'sɪmpəl/ 8

simultaneously /sɪ'mʌltənɪəsli/ 61

since /sɪns/ 63

sincere /sɪn'sɪə/ 8

singer /'sɪŋə/ 21

single /'sɪŋɡl/ 101

shirk or swim 77

sit an exam /sɪt ən ɪɡ'zæm/ 14

sit up /sɪt ʌp/ 50

sitcom /'sɪtkɒm/ 37

site /saɪt/ 82

situation /sɪ'tɪʃən/ 66

sixth form college 14

skating rink /'sketɪŋ rɪŋk/ 25

skilled worker /'skɪld 'wɜːkə/ 16

skin /skɪn/ 7

skinny /'skɪni/ 7

skip /skɪp/ 14

sky-blue /'skaɪ'bluː/ 74

Skype /'skaɪp/ 36

sleek /sliːk/ 59

sleeve /sliːv/ 27

sleeveless /sliːvələs/ 27

slice /slaɪs/ 86

slim /slɪm/ 7

slippers /'slɪpəz/ 27

slippery /'slɪpəri/ 59

slow /sləʊ/ 12, 30

slowly but surely 77

slum /slʌm/ 24

sly /slaɪ/ 8

small talk /smɔːl tɔːk/ 69

smart /smɜːt/ 7

smartphone /'smɜːtfaʊn/ 33

smash /smæʃ/ 12, 81

smell /smel/ 46

snog /smɒɡ/ 24

smooth /smuːð/ 59

smoothly 31

snuggle /'snʌɡl/ 39

snail /sneɪl/ 26

snatch /snætʃ/ 46

sneeze /sniːz/ 47

snooker /'nuːkə/ 18

snore /snɔː/ 47

snowboarding /'snəʊbɔːdɪŋ/ 18

so /səʊ/ 82

so on /səʊ ɒn/ 65

soap /səʊp/ 37

so-called /səʊ'kɔːld/ 74

social /səʊʃəl/ 8

social network /'səʊʃəl 'netwɜːk/ 2

social networking site /'səʊʃəl

'netwɜːkɪŋ saɪt/ 35

socialist /'səʊʃəlɪst/ 42

socket /'sɒkɪt/ 11

soften /'sɒfən/ 80

software /'sɒftweɪ/ 33, 83

soil /sɔɪl/ 33

sole /səʊl/ 27, 82

solid /sɒlɪd/ 41, 59

solidify /sə'lɪdaɪ/ 41

solution /sə'ljuːʃən/ 66

sombre /'sɒmbə/ 31, 56

sonar /'səʊnə/ 78

sooner or later 77

sophisticated /sə'fɪstɪkətɪd/ 29

sore throat /sɔː 'θrəʊt/ 28

sorry /'sɒri/ 80

sort of /sɔːt ɒv/ 67

soul /saʊl/ 82

sound /saʊnd/ 46, 56

sound barrier /saʊnd 'bæriə/ 75

soundtrack /'saʊndtrek/ 21

sour /saʊə/ 22, 46

source /sɔːs/ 23, 30

South America /saʊθ ə'merɪkə/ 5

Southern Africa /'sʌðən 'æfrɪkə/ 5

Southern African /'sʌðən 'æfrɪkən/ 5

sow /saʊ/ 82

spacious /'speɪʃəs/ 25

spaghetti /'spæɡetɪ/ 83, 84

spam /spæm/ 2

Spaniard /'spænjəd/ 5

spark off /spɜːk ɒf/ 63

sparkle /'spɜːkl/ 56

sparse /spɜːs/ 59

speak your mind 69

special /'speʃəl/ 22

species /'spiːʃiːz/ 24

spectacles /'spektəklz/ 29, 84

spectator /'spektə'tetə/ 18

speed /spiːd/ 58, 73

spell /spel/ 53, 86

sphere /sfiə/ 52

spherical /'sfɪərɪkəl/ 52

spicy /'speɪsi/ 22, 46

spill /spɪl/ 12

spiral /'spɪərəl/ 52

spit out /spɪt aʊt/ 81

splash /splæʃ/ 81

sponsor /'spɒnsə/ 57

sports /spɔːts/ 18, 37

sports centre /spɔːts 'sentə/ 25

spot /spɒt/ 28, 86

sprinted /'spɪntɪd/ 27

sprain /spreɪn/ 28

spray /spreɪ/ 81

sprawl /sprɔːl/ 13, 54

spreadsheet /'spredʃiːt/ 34

sprinkle /'sprɪŋkl/ 81

sprinkler /'sprɪŋklə/ 18

squad /skwɒd/ 96

squadron /'skwɒdrən/ 96

square /skweɪ/ 52

squash player 18

stock /stɒk/ 87

stock /stɒk/ 87

staff /stɜːf/ 15, 87

stage /steɪdʒ/ 20, 53

stain /steɪn/ 12

stairs /steəz/ 84

stake /steɪk/ 82

stammer /'stæmə/ 45

stand /stænd/ 38

standstill /'stændstɪl/ 83

stapler /'steɪplə/ 70

stadium /'stædiəm/ 73

stare /steə/ 46

start /stɑːt/ 12

start the ball rolling 69

starter /'stɑːtə/ 22

stave /steɪv/ 13

stale /steɪl/ 86

stationary /'steɪʃənəri/ 95

statue /'stætʃuː/ 19

status /'steɪtəs/ 36

steady /'stiːdi/ 10, 40

steak /steɪk/ 82

steal /stiːl/ 37

steering wheel /'stiːərɪŋ wiːl/ 75

stem /stem/ 26

stem cell research /'stem sel

'riːsɜː/ 33

stem from /stem frɒm/ 63

stick /stɪk/ 18

stiff /stɪf/ 17, 41

stifling /'stɪflɪŋ/ 8

still /stɪl/ 67

still life /stɪl laɪf/ 19

stingy /'stɪndʒi/ 8

stinking /'stɪŋkɪŋ/ 46

stir /staɪ/ 58

stir things up 50

stocky /'stɒki/ 7

stodgy /'stɒdʒi/ 22

stomach /'stɒmək/ 1

stone /stəʊn/ 83

Stone Age /'stəʊn eɪdʒ/ 53

stop /stɒp/ 12, 93

sum /sʌm/ 82

sum up /sʌm ʌp/ 68

summit /'sʌmɪt/ 23

sunburn /'sʌnbɜːn/ 28

sunbunt /'sʌn.bʌnd/ 7

sunglasses /'sʌn glɑːsɪz/ 75

suntanned /'sʌntænd/ 74

superfood /'suːpəfuːd/ 30

supervisor /'sʌpəvaɪzə/ 16, 70

supply /sʌ'plaɪ/ 3, 57

support /sə'pɔːt/ 57, 72

supposing /sə'pəʊzɪ/ 62

surf the Internet /sɜːf ðɪ

'ɪntənət/ 2, 35

surface /'sɜːfɪs/ 59

surrounding /sə'saʊndɪŋ/ 32

survivor /sə'vaɪvə/ 13

suspect v /sə'spekt/ 39, 80

swallow /swə'ləʊ/ 47

swarm /swɜːm/ 87

sway /sweɪ/ 58

sweat /swet/ 5

Sweden /swede/ 5

sweep /swiːp/ 13

sweep under the carpet 50

sweet /swiːt/ 22, 46

sweets /swiːts/ 101

sweet-smelling /'swiːt 'smelɪŋ/ 46

swell with pride 48

swerve /swɜːv/ 58

swimmer /'swɪmə/ 18

swimming pool /'swɪmɪŋ puːl/ 25

swimming trunks /'swɪmɪŋ

'trʌŋks/ 84

Swiss /swɪs/ 5

sword /sɔːd/ 80

sync /sɪŋk/ 21

synchronise /'sɪŋkronaɪz/ 21

table mat /'teɪbəl mat/ 11

tablet /'teɪbəl/ 28

tablet (computer) /'teɪbəl/ 33, 34

tabloid /'teɪblɔɪd/ 37

tag /teɪɡ/ 10, 36

tail /teɪl/ 26

take a back seat 50

take a deep breath /teɪk ə dɪp

'breɪθ/ 47

take a risk /teɪk ə rɪsk/ 90

take advantage of /teɪk

take everything as it comes 49

take in /teɪk ɪn/ 27, 90
take it or leave it /teɪkɪt ɔːr liːvɪt/ 77

take notice 50

take off /teɪk ɒf/ 90

take on /teɪk ɒn/ 16, 90

take over /teɪk əʊvər/ 90

take place /teɪk pleɪs/ 90

take so/sth for granted
/teɪk sʌmweɪs/əns ɪn/ 50

granted/ 90

take the biscuit 48, 79

take the bull by the horns 50

take up /teɪk ʌp/ 27, 90

take-away /teɪk əweɪ/ 25

takeover /teɪk əʊvər/ 76

talented /ˈtæləntɪd/ 8, 21

talk /tɔːk/ 80

talk at cross-purposes 93

talk behind sb's back 62

talk down to s.o. /tɔːk daʊn tə/

'sʌmwʌn/ 69

talk rubbish 69

talk sense 69

talk shop 69

talk show /tɔːk ʃəʊ/ 37

talking point /ˈtɔːkɪŋ pɔɪnt/ 62

talks /tɔːks/ 100

tallish /ˈtɔːlɪʃ/ 1

tan /tæn/ 1

top /tɒp/ 46

target /tɑːɡɪt/ 60, 92

tart /tɔːt/ 80

tartan /ˈtɑːtən/ 27

taste /teɪst/ 21, 46

tasteful /ˈteɪstfəl/ 46

tasteless /ˈteɪstləs/ 22, 46

tasty /teɪsti/ 22, 46

taxi rank /ˈteɪksɪ ræŋk/ 25

tea /ti/ 65

tea bag /ˈti beɪɡ/ 75

teacher /ˈtiːtʃər/ 80

teacher's pet /ˈtiːtʃəz pet/ 9

teacher-training college /ˈtiːtʃər

'triːnɪŋ kɒlɪdʒ/ 14

team /tiːm/ 80, 87

teaspoonful /ˈtiːspuːnfʊl/ 28

tech /tek/ 96

tee /ti/ 82

telepathy /ˈteliːpəθi/ 46

telephone /ˈtelɪfəʊn/ 80

telephony /ˈteliːfəni/ 80

televise /ˈtelɪvaɪz/ 37

telly /ˈteli/ 96

temperature /ˈtemprətʃə/ 28

temptation /ˈtemp'teɪʃən/ 73

tenant /ˈtenənt/ 57

tennis courts /ˈtenɪs kɔːts/ 25

tennis player /ˈtenɪs ˈpleɪər/ 18

ten-pin bowling /ˈten pɪn 'bɔːlɪŋ/ 18

tense /tens/ 8

tension /ˈtenʃən/ 86

tent /tent/ 31

term /tɜːm/ 38

terminal /ˈtɜːmɪnəl/ 30

terrace /ˈterəs/ 11

terrify /ˈterɪfaɪ/ 70

terrifying /ˈterɪfaɪɪŋ/ 32

terrorism /ˈterərɪzəm/ 39

terrorist /ˈterərɪst/ 70

texture /ˈtekʃtʃə/ 52

Thai /taɪ/ 5

thankful /ˈθæŋkfʊl/ 43

thaw /θɔː/ 6

The Antarctic /ði ˌænˈtɜːktɪk/ 5

The Arctic /ði ˈɜːktɪk/ 5

The Atlantic /ði ˌætˈlæntɪk/ 5

the BBC /ðə biːbiːsiː/ 78

The Caribbean /ðə ˌkærɪˈbiːən/ 5

the CIA /ði ˌsiːəˈtiː/ 78

The Commonwealth

/ðə ˌkɒmənwelθ/ 5

The EU /ði ˌiːˈjuː/ 5, 78

The European Union

/ðə ˌjʊərəˈpiːən ˌjuːnɪən/ 5

The Far East /ðə ˌfɑː ˈiːst/ 5

the FBI 78

The Indian Ocean /ði ˌɪndiən

'oʊʃən/ 5

the media 37

The Mediterranean

/ðə ˌmedɪtəˈreɪniən/ 5

The Middle East /ðə ˌmɪdəl ˈiːst/ 5

The Netherlands /ðə ˌneðələndz/ 5

The Pacific /ðə ˌpəˈsɪfɪk/ 5

The Philippines /ðə ˌfɪlɪˈpiːnz/ 5

The UAE /ðə ˌjuːˈeɪ/ 5

The UK /ðə ˌjuːˈkeɪ/ 5

The United Arab Emirates

/ðə ˌjuːˈnaɪtɪd ˌerəb ˈemɪreɪts/ 5

The United Kingdom /ðə ˌjuːˈnaɪtɪd

'kɪŋdəm/ 5

The United States /ðə ˌjuːˈnaɪtɪd

'steɪts/ 5

The USA /ðə ˌjuːˈseɪ/ 5

theatre /ˈθiːətə/ 20, 25

theft /θeft/ 37

their /ðeə/ 92

theory /ˈθiəri/ 33

lash /læʃ/ 101

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

lens /lens/ 13

update n.v. /ʌpˈdeɪt/ 36

upgrade /ʌpˈɡreɪd/ 34

upload /ʌpˈlɔːd/ 2, 36

upset adj. v. /ʌpˈset/ 8, 43, 80

upset n. /ʌpˈset/ 80

upshot /ˈʌpʃɒt/ 63

urban /ˈɜːbən/ 2

urge /ɜːdʒ/ 45

use /juːz/ 82, 95

use /juːz/ 82

used to have 1

useful /ˈjuːsfʊl/ 70

useless /ˈjuːsləs/ 70

username /ˈjuːzənəɪm/ 35

utilise /ˈjuːtɪlaɪz/ 33, 95

utility room /ˌjuːˈtɪləti ˈruːm/ 11

utter /ʌtər/ 51

utterly /ˈʌtəli/ 51

vacation /vəˈkeɪʃən/ 101

valley /ˈvæli/ 23

vast /væst/ 29, 51

VAT /ˈvæts/ 40

vegan /ˈveɡən/ 22

vegetables /ˈvedʒɪbəlz/ 80

vegetarian /ˌvedʒɪˈtɜːriən/ 42

vehicle /ˈviːkəl/ 59

velocity /vəˈləsɪti/ 20

verdict /ˈvɜːdɪkt/ 33

very (time/moment) 61

vest /vest/ 101

vet /vet/ 96

victim /ˈvɪktɪm/ 13, 39

view /vjuː/ 36, 42, 66, 93

viewer /ˈvjuːər/ 20

villa /ˈvɪlə/ 11

violinist /vaɪəˈlɪnɪst/ 70

virtual reality /ˈvɜːtʃʊəl rɪˈæləti/ 35

virus /ˈvaɪərəs/ 28, 34

vision /ˈvɪʒən/ 29

vitamin /ˈvɪtəmɪn/ 30

vivid /ˈvɪvɪd/ 41, 59

VLE 14

V-neck /ˈviːnek/ 27

voice mail /ˈvɔɪs meɪl/ 75

voice technology /ˈvɔɪs

tekˈnɒlədʒi/ 33

volcano /ˈvɒlˌkeɪnəʊ/ 13, 23

vote /voʊt/ 38

vow /vaʊ/ 100

voyage /ˈvɔɪdʒ/ 31

waist /weɪst/ 82

wait /weɪt/ 82

walkout /ˈwɔːkəʊt/ 76

there /ðeə/ 82

thereafter /ðeəˈɑːftər/ 61

thermal /ˈθɜːməl/ 23

thermometer /ðəˈmɒmɪtər/ 29

thesis /ˈθeɪsɪs/ 15

they're /ðeɪz/ 82

thick /θɪk/ 8, 59

thin /θɪn/ 59

thin-faced /θɪn ˈfeɪst/ 1

thin-lipped /θɪn ˈlɪpt/ 74

things are looking up 49

third language 5

thirdly /ˈθɜːdli/ 68

thirtyish /ˈθɜːtɪʃ/ 1

thorn /θɔːn/ 26

thought /θɔːt/ 73

threat /θreɪt/ 100

threaten /ˈθreɪn/ 45

threw /θruː/ 82

thrifty /ˈθrɪfti/ 8

thrilled /θrɪld/ 43

through /θruː/ 82

throughout /θruːˈaʊt/ 61

throw (a pot) /θrəʊ/ 19

throw a wobbly 49

thud /θʌd/ 56

tide /taɪd/ 50

tight corner 50

tight-fisted /ˈtaɪt ˈfɪstɪd/ 8

tight-fitting /ˈtaɪt ˈfɪtɪŋ/ 74

tights /taɪts/ 84, 101

time /taɪm/ 53, 85

time off /taɪm ɒf/ 39

time-consuming

ˈtaɪmˌkɒnˌsjuːmɪŋ/ 74

timeless /ˈtaɪmləs/ 53

timeline 36

times /taɪmz/ 52

tin /tɪn/ 88

tin opener /tɪn ˈəʊpənər/ 75

tiny /tɪni/ 51

tire /taɪər/ 82

to and fro /tə ˈænd frəʊ/ 2, 77

to boot 65

toe /toʊ/ 82

toilet /ˈtɔɪlət/ 101

toilet roll /ˈtɔɪlət rəʊl/ 11

tomb /tʊm/ 80

